

LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY  
OF ILLINOIS

947  
R14hEl  
1916, v.1

~~UNDERGRADUATE LIBRARY~~  
~~ROOM 101~~

**Return this book on or before the  
Latest Date stamped below.**

Theft, mutilation, and underlining of books  
are reasons for disciplinary action and may  
result in dismissal from the University.

University of Illinois Library

OCT 31 1987

L161—O-1096



# HISTORY OF RUSSIA

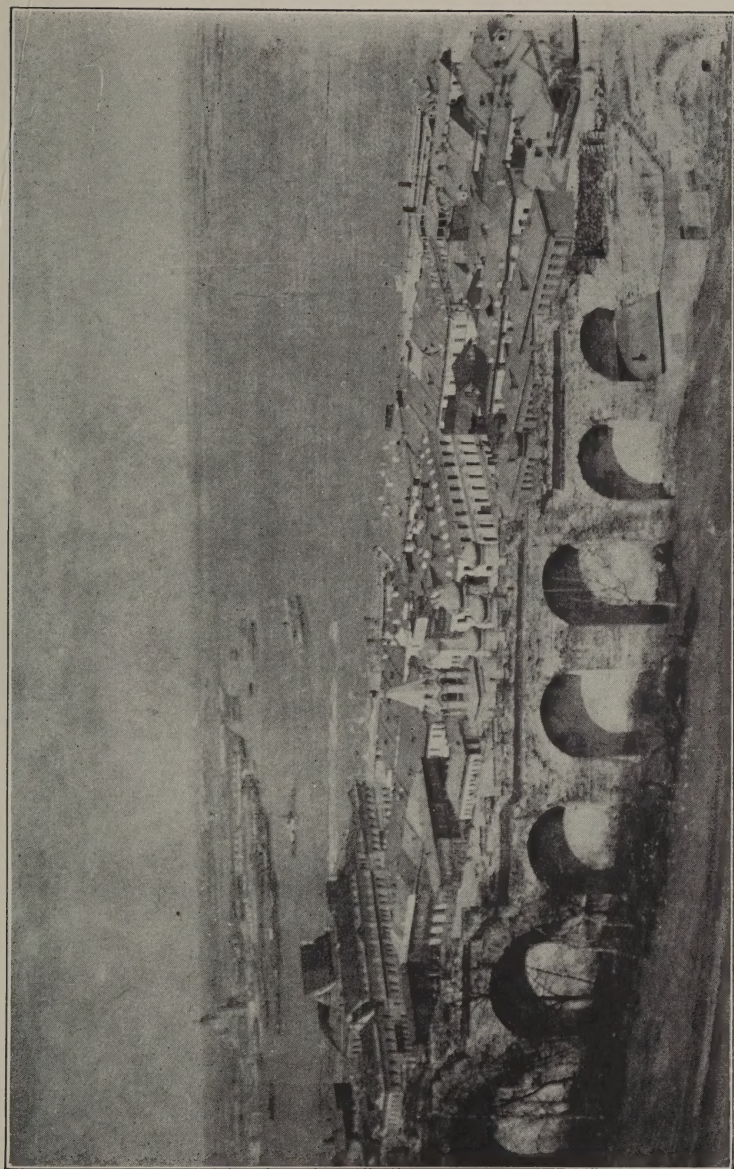
From the Earliest Times to 1882

Volume I



LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS  
URBANA





NIJNI-NOVGOROD AND THE VOLGA



# HISTORY of RUSSIA

From the Earliest Times to 1882

BY

ALFRED RAMBAUD

Chief of the Cabinet of the Minister of Public Instruction and  
Fine Arts, at Paris; Corresponding Member of the  
Academy of Sciences of Petrograd, etc., etc.

Translated by L. B. LANG

Edited and Enlarged by NATHAN HASKELL DOLE

IN THREE VOLUMES

Volume I

*This work has been crowned by the  
French Academy*



THE PAGE COMPANY  
PUBLISHERS ——— BOSTON

*Copyright, 1879*

BY ESTES & LAURIAT

COLONIAL PRESS

C. H. SIMONDS COMPANY, BOSTON, U. S. A.

947  
R14152  
1716  
v.1

## P R E F A C E .

---

THE field of Russian history has not hitherto seemed to offer great attraction for the student. This is partly due to the lack of interesting and reliable works upon the subject. It is now nearly a quarter of a century since any history of Russia pretending to completeness has appeared in the English language, and Kelly's Compilation in the Bohn Collection, published immediately after the Crimean War, is full of prejudice and error. The abundance of materials which throw new light on the development of the Empire, the labors of the faithful and conscientious modern Russian historians, have been almost entirely neglected. It has not been felt to be essential for the well-educated man to add to his other accomplishments a complete knowledge of Russian history, and a few items of general information have completely satisfied him. The name of Ivan the Terrible has seemed to him typical of the early Tsars, and by its very sound conjured up a phantom of something indefinitely cruel and barbaric. An acquaintance with Peter the Great, "the giant, the wonder-worker," he has perhaps made through the medium of Voltaire. But however brilliant Voltaire's style may be, it does not suffice to cover its superficial and untrustworthy character. And the study of modern European history has led to more or less familiarity with Napoleon's campaign against Moscow and the details of the Crimean War. But the prominence of the Eastern Question and the portentous growth in all directions of the vast

1162432

Empire of the Russias, threatening the Turk in his sunny home on the Bosphorus, the Englishman in his Indian domain, the Celestial in his flowery kingdom, have attracted universal attention, and a knowledge of general Russian history is almost indispensable if one would understand the complicated relations of Russia with Europe. The influence of the Tatar invasion, the growth of autocracy, the reforms effected by Peter the Great and his successors, the policy of emancipation and of the protection of Christians in Turkish dominions, must all be considered, not as isolated facts, but as legitimate consequences of more or less patent causes.

It has not been easy to find authentic material in anything but the Russian language for such study. Mr. Ralston has published some excellent lectures on early times, and M. Prosper Mérimée wrote a thorough monograph on the Epoch of the False Dmitri; various sketches of Russian history can be found in travels and other works on Russia; the industrious seeker might be rewarded by studying the ponderous volumes of Levesque or Esneaux, or Bernhardt's "*Geschichte Russlands*"; but it is safe to say that there has hitherto existed no trustworthy, unprejudiced, and complete history of Russia in either English or French.

When the "*Histoire de la Russie*," by M. Alfred Rambaud, made its appearance, it was immediately welcomed by the press of both countries with the most flattering approval, and it was also crowned by the French Academy. The London Athenæum says of it:—

"We have the '*Histoire de la Russie*,' by M. Alfred Rambaud, who, by his '*Russie Épique*' and other publications, has already shown himself a competent scholar. In this book we have the results of the researches of all the latest Russian historiographers summarized; he has especially laid under contribution the voluminous labors of Solovief and Oustrialov, and the less ambitious productions of Kostomarov and Bestuzhev-Rioumin.

"The various theories on the origin of Rurik and his companions are clearly set forth, and a wise discretion is exercised in abridging the tedious story of the struggles between the early Russian principalities. Any one who has read the classical Slavonic histories on those times must remember how hopelessly dreary they seem. The chapters on the Republics of Novgorod, Pskov, and Viatka, and the Lithuanian Principality are very well done; without an examination of their relations to early Russian history it becomes unintelligible, and probably few Western students have realized how slender was the tie which bound the latter country to Poland. The culmination at Moscow of a centralized despotism is fully brought out, and the reign of Ivan the Terrible is necessarily made a very prominent feature in the book. At this point Russian history becomes especially interesting to Englishmen, owing to our commercial dealings with the tyrant, and monographs on the subject have been written by Kostomarov and Youri Tolstoi. The pages of Hakluyt teem with quaint stories of the adventures of our enterprising countrymen. As M. Rambaud is quite familiar with Russian literature, he occasionally stops in the course of his narrative to summarize its progress, and illustrates historical events by reference to contemporary *bylinas*.\* . . . .

"A great deal of new light has been thrown upon the period of Catherine's reign; so wide and careful has been M. Rambaud's reading, that he has laid under contribution the valuable memoirs and other papers recently published in the Russian reviews and journals. . . . The narrative is carried down to the latest period. . . .

"A mass of useful information is condensed in this work; it is beyond question the best complete history of Russia which has appeared in the West. In the author's power of seizing upon salient traits of character, and selecting picturesque incidents, the book reminds us very much of Mr. Green's English History. We will venture to prophesy that it will become *the* work on the subject for readers in our part of Europe.

"It reflects great credit upon its author, and well deserves to be studied by all who care to instruct themselves in Russian history."

The Saturday Review declares that "M. Rambaud is never too enthusiastic to be fair," and goes on to say: "The value

\* Historical Ballads.

of a work like this, which gives us in an unbroken chain events from the time of legend and almost of myth, when truth is hard to be reached, from the scanty amount of information, to the present day, when multiplicity of sources makes truth equally obscure, cannot be overrated."

Mr. Ralston, who is considered one of the most thorough Russian scholars in England, adds his testimony as follows: "We gladly recognize in the present volume a trustworthy history of Russia, and one based not merely on what foreigners have written about it, but compiled by a scholar who is competent to deal with the works which Russian historians have recently produced. M. Rambaud has long been known as a sound authority upon all subjects connected with the great Empire of which he has now written the history." And finally, we select from many other flattering notices the opinion of Turgenief, the great Russian novelist, that, "in spite of some minor faults, this is far superior to any other history accessible to Western Europe."

M. Rambaud, though a comparatively young man, having been born in eighteen hundred and forty-two, has proved himself worthy to treat the difficult subject of Russian history by his other historical works, by his frequent visits to Russia, and his knowledge of the Russian language and literature.

His development of the early and complicated periods of the appanaged princes could hardly be excelled; it is when he reaches modern times that excessive condensation sometimes injures the style of the book, and in the American edition the translation has been supplemented with frequent additions taken from the original works of Ustrialof and Solovief whenever perspicuity and interest could be thus served. Hermann and Von Bernhardi have also been found useful in expanding or explaining incomplete or doubtful passages.

The American edition also includes a continuation of the history through the last war with Turkey and the relations

with Afghanistan and the East. Lack of historical perspective makes it difficult satisfactorily to deal with events so near at hand, but it is hoped that accuracy and fairness will be found in the treatment of the events of the last few years. The best possible authorities have been studied, and as information has already been largely collected and classified, the danger of erroneous judgment and important omissions is greatly lessened.

Throughout the whole work the Russian words scattered freely in the original French have been translated, so far as was practicable, and the simplest possible mode of spelling both Polish and Russian names has been adopted, so as to facilitate the proper pronunciation. In many cases Russian plurals have been substituted for English plurals of Russian words, and in accordance with the best modern English usage the letters *ui* have taken the place of the meaningless *y* in such words as *Kruilof*. The terminations *vitch* and *vna* indicate the relation of son and daughter: *Peter Alexiévitch*, Peter son of Alexis; *Elisabeth Péetrovna*, Elisabeth daughter of Peter.

The Russian calendar has not adopted the Gregorian reform; for every date, therefore, it is necessary to indicate whether it is after the old or new style. For important dates, both styles are generally given. In the eighteenth century the Russian style is eleven days behind ours; in the nineteenth century it is twelve days. Thus the date of the death of Catherine the Second is given as the sixth or seventeenth of November, — a difference of eleven days, since the event happened in the eighteenth century. But we say the revolution of the fourteenth or twenty-sixth of December, eighteen hundred and twenty-five, as we are speaking of the nineteenth century.

The greatest pains have been taken to render the text free from errors, a complete index has been prepared, illustrations have been freely used, and it is hoped that it will prove to be in reality a Popular History of Russia.



# CONTENTS.

---

## VOLUME I.

### CHAPTER I.

#### GEOGRAPHY OF RUSSIA.

Eastern and Western Europe compared: Seas, Mountains, Climate. — Russian Rivers and History. — The Four Zones: Geographical Unity of Russia . . . 17-31

### CHAPTER II.

#### ETHNOGRAPHY OF RUSSIA.

Greek Colonies and the Scythia of Herodotus. — The Russian Slavs of Nestor. — Lithuanian, Finnish, and Turkish Hordes in the Ninth Century. — Division of the Russians proper into three Branches. — How Russia was colonized . 32-50

### CHAPTER III.

#### PRIMITIVE RUSSIA: THE SLAVS.

Religion of the Slavs. — Funeral Rites. — Domestic and Political Customs: the Family; the Mir, or Commune; the Volost, or Canton; the Tribe. — Towns. — Industry. — Agriculture . . . . . 51-59

### CHAPTER IV.

#### THE VARIAGI: FORMATION OF RUSSIA; THE FIRST EXPEDITIONS AGAINST CONSTANTINOPLE.

The Northmen in Russia: Origin and Customs of the Variagi. — The First Russian Princes: Rurik, Oleg, Igor. — Expeditions against Constantinople. — Olga: Christianity in Russia. — Sviatoslaf. — The Danube disputed between the Russians and Greeks . . . . . 60-76

### CHAPTER V.

#### THE CLOVIS AND CHARLEMAGNE OF THE RUSSIANS, SAINT VLADIMIR AND IAROSLAF THE GREAT.

##### 972-1054.

Vladimir (972-1015). — Conversion of the Russians. — Iaroslaf the Great (1016-1054). — Union of Russia. — Splendor of Kief. — Variag-Russian Society at the Time of Iaroslaf. — Progress of Christianity. — Social, Political, Literary, and Artistic Results . . . . . 77-95

## CHAPTER VI.

RUSSIA DIVIDED INTO PRINCIPALITIES. — SUPREMACY AND FALL OF KIEF.  
1054-1169.

Distribution of Russia into Principalities. — Unity in Division. — The Successors of Iaroslaf the Great. — Wars about the Right of Headship of the Royal Family, and the Throne of Kief. — Vladimir Monomakh. — Wars between the Heirs of Vladimir Monomakh. — Fall of Kief . . . . . 96-112

## CHAPTER VII.

RUSSIA AFTER THE FALL OF KIEF. — POWER OF SUZDAL AND GALLICIA.  
1169-1264.

Andrei Bogoliubski of Suzdal (1157-1174) and the First Attempt at Autocracy. — Iuri the Second (1212-1238). — Wars with Novgorod. — Battle of Lipetsk (1216). — Foundation of Nijni-Novgorod (1220). — Roman (1188-1205) and his Son Daniel (1205-1264) in Galicia . . . . . 113-126

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE RUSSIAN REPUBLICS: NOVGOROD, PSKOF, AND VIATKA.  
Until 1224.

Novgorod the Great. — Struggles with the Princes. — Novgorodian Institutions. — Commerce. — The National Church. — Literature. — Pskof and Viatka . 127-142

## CHAPTER IX.

THE LIVONIAN KNIGHTS. — CONQUEST OF THE BALTIC PROVINCES BY THE  
GERMANS.  
1187-1237.

Conversion of Livonia. — Rise of the Livonian Knights. — Union with the Teutonic Knights . . . . . 143-148

## CHAPTER X.

THE TATAR MONGOLS. — ENSLAVEMENT OF RUSSIA.  
1224-1264.

Origin and Customs of the Mongols. — Battles of the Kalka, of Riazan, of Kolomna, and of the Sit. — Conquest of Russia. — Alexander Nevski. — The Mongol Yoke. — Influence of the Tatars on Russian Development . . . . . 149-173

## CHAPTER XI.

THE LITHUANIANS: CONQUEST OF WESTERN RUSSIA  
1240-1430.

The Lithuanians. — Conquests of Mindvog (1240-1263), of Gedimin (1315-1340), and of Olgerd (1345-1377). — Iagello. — Union of Lithuania with Poland (1386). — The Grand Prince Vitovt (1392-1430). — Battles of the Vorskla (1399) and of Taunenberg (1410) . . . . . 174-184

## CHAPTER XII.

## THE GRAND PRINCES OF MOSCOW: ORGANIZATION OF EASTERN RUSSIA.

1303-1462.

Origin of Moscow. — Daniel. — Iuri Danielovitch (1303-1325) and Ivan Kalita (1328-1341). — Contest with the House of Tver. — Simeon the Proud and Ivan the Débonair (1341-1359). — Dmitri Donskoi (1363-1389). — Battle of Kulikovo. — Vasili Dmitriévitch and Vasili the Blind (1389-1462) . . . 185-215

## CHAPTER XIII.

## IVAN THE GREAT, THE AUTHOR OF RUSSIAN UNITY.

1462-1505.

Submission of Novgorod. — Reunion of Tver, Rostof, and Iaroslavl. — Wars with the Great Horde and Kazan. — End of the Tatar Yoke. — Wars with Lithuania. — Western Russia as far as the Soja reconquered. — Marriage with Sophia Palaeologus. — Greeks and Italians at the Court of Moscow . . . 216-234

## CHAPTER XIV.

## VASILI IVANOVITCH.

1505-1533.

Reunion of Pskof, Riazan, and Novgorod-Severski. — Wars with Lithuania. — Acquisition of Smolensk. — Wars with the Tatars. — Diplomatic Relations with Europe . . . 235-243

## CHAPTER XV.

## IVAN THE TERRIBLE.

1533-1584.

Minority of Ivan the Fourth. — He takes the Title of Tsar (1547). — Conquest of Kazan (1552) and of Astrakhan (1554). — Contests with the Livonian Order, Poland, the Tatars, Sweden, and the Russian Aristocracy. — The English in Russia. — Conquest of Siberia . . . 244-280

## CHAPTER XVI.

## MUSCOVITE RUSSIA AND THE RENAISSANCE.

1533-1584.

The Muscovite Government. — The Kin and the Men of the Tsar. — The Prikazui. — Rural Classes. — Citizens. — Commerce. — Domestic Slavery. — Seclusion of Women. — The Renaissance: Literature, Popular Songs, and Cathedrals. — Moscow in the Sixteenth Century . . . 281-310

## CHAPTER XVII.

## THE SUCCESSORS OF IVAN THE TERRIBLE: FEODOR IVANOVITCH AND BORIS GODUNOF.

1584-1605.

Feodor Ivanovitch (1584-1598). — The Peasant attached to the Glebe. — The Patriarchate. — Boris Godunof (1598-1605). — Appearance of the False Dmitri 311-326

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## THE TIME OF THE TROUBLES.

1605-1613.

Murder of the False Dmitri. — Vasili Shuiski. — The Brigand of Tushino. — Vladislav of Poland. — The Poles at the Kreml. — National Rising. — Minin and Pojarski. — Election of Mikhail Romanof . . . . . 327-344

## CHAPTER XIX.

## THE ROMANOFFS: MIKHAIL FEODOROVITCH AND THE PATRIARCH PHILARET.

1613-1645.

Restorative Measures. — End of the Polish War. — Relations with Europe. — The States-General . . . . . 345-356

## CHAPTER XX.

## WESTERN RUSSIA IN THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

1569-1645.

The Political Union of Lublin (1569) and the Religious Union (1595). — Complaints of White Russia. — Risings in Little Russia . . . . . 357-369

## CHAPTER XXI.

## ALEXIS MIKHAILOVITCH AND HIS SON FEODOR.

1645-1682.

Early Years of Alexis. — Seditions. — Khmelnitski. — Conquest of Smolensk and Eastern Ukraina. — Stenko Razin. — Ecclesiastical Reforms of Nikon. — The Precursors of Peter the Great. — Reign of Feodor Alexiévitch (1676-1682) 370-400

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

## VOLUME I

	PAGE
RURIK ( <i>See page 65</i> ) . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
NIJNI-NOVGOROD AND THE VOLGA . . . . .	27
THE LOWER TOWN, NIJNI-NOVGOROD. THE KREMLIN, NIJNI-NOVGOROD . . . . .	121
THE WAWEL, CRACOW . . . . .	179
IVAN THE GREAT . . . . .	218
HENRI DE VALOIS . . . . .	270
TSAR KOLOKOL . . . . .	310
TSAR FEODOR . . . . .	312
TSAR ALEXIS . . . . .	370



## NOTE.

THE perfect simplicity of the metric system of weights and measures, and its immense superiority to all others, make its universal adoption a mere matter of time. It is already used by upwards of twenty-seven different nations, and in the majority the system is obligatory. It is legalized in the United States, and the action of Congress, of the various State legislatures, of national and State scientific and educational associations, is so rapidly spreading a knowledge of it that even in the opinion of its few opponents its adoption is inevitable. Consequently in the American edition of the History of Russia the metric system has been retained, and a simple table of equivalents is added.

### TABLE OF THE METRIC SYSTEM OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

The unit of length is the meter, a measure equivalent to one ten-millionth part of the distance from the pole to the equator.

1 meter = 10 decimeters = 100 centimeters = 1000 millimeters = 39.37 inches.  
1000 meters = 1 kilometer = 3280 feet 10 inches, or three fifths of a mile.

The unit of capacity is the liter, which is the space included in a cubic decimeter.

1 liter = 10 deciliters = 100 centiliters = 1000 milliliters = 1.06 U. S. quarts.  
10 liters = 1 dekaliter, 10 dekaliters = 1 hektoliter = about 3 bushels.

The unit of weight is the gram, which is the weight of one cubic centimeter of distilled water at the freezing point.

1 gram = 10 decigrams = 100 centigrams = 1000 milligrams = 15.4 grains.  
1 kilogram or kilo = 1000 grams = a liter of water = 2.205 lbs. avoirdupois.  
1 sq. meter = 10.75 sq. ft. 1 sq. kilometer = 0.39 sq. mile.

For ordinary purposes it may be remembered that the meter, liter, and half-kilo are one tenth larger than the yard, quart, and pound respectively, and that thirty centimeters make a foot and thirty grams a pound.

The Russian ruble = 100 kopeks = from \$ 0.70 to \$ 0.80.

The value of the ruble depends upon whether it is coin or paper.

The Russian verst = 1067 meters, or about two thirds of a mile.

The Russian pud = 16.26 kilos = 36.08 lbs.

NATHAN HASKELL DOLE.



# HISTORY OF RUSSIA.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### GEOGRAPHY OF RUSSIA.

EASTERN AND WESTERN EUROPE COMPARED: SEAS, MOUNTAINS, CLIMATE. — RUSSIAN RIVERS AND HISTORY. — THE FOUR ZONES: GEOGRAPHICAL UNITY OF RUSSIA.

---

EASTERN AND WESTERN EUROPE COMPARED: SEAS, MOUNTAINS, CLIMATE.

EUROPE may be roughly divided into two unequal parts. If we allow ten million square kilometers to the whole of Europe, only four million five hundred thousand belong to the western, five million five hundred thousand to the eastern part. The former division is shared among all the monarchies and republics of Europe, with the exception of Russia; the latter is united under the Russian sceptre. Nature, no less than policy and religion, has established a strong opposition between the two regions, between Eastern and Western Europe.

The shores of the latter are everywhere broken up by inland seas, pierced by deep gulfs, jagged with peninsulas, headlands, capes, and promontories; islands and crowded archipelagoes are thickly sprinkled along the coasts. Great Britain and the Greek peninsula particularly, which have a coast-line out of all proportion to their area, contrast with the impenetrable compact mass of Eastern Europe. This strongly marked con-

tour of the western lands is the characteristic feature of European geography, while the immense spaces of which Russia is composed seem to be the continuation of the plains and plateaux of Northern and Central Asia. No doubt Russia is washed by many seas: in the north by the Arctic Ocean, which penetrates deep into the country by the vast reaches of the White Sea; in the south by the Caspian, the Sea of Azof, and the Black Sea; in the northwest by the Baltic and the gulfs of Bothnia, Finland, and Livonia; but, with all these waters, it has only a comparatively meagre share of seaboard. While the rest of Europe has about twenty-five thousand kilometers of coast, Russia, with a much more considerable surface, possesses only eight thousand eight hundred and eighty kilometers, and of this, four thousand four hundred and seven, nearly a half, belong to the Arctic Ocean and the White Sea. But these two seas are navigable during only a few months of the year, from June to September, at furthest. The Baltic, in its two most northern gulfs, easily freezes; armies have been able to cross on the ice, with all their artillery and supplies; navigation is stopped from the month of November to the end of April. The Caspian is often frozen, especially in its northern half, which includes Astrakhan, its most flourishing port. The Sea of Azof, here and there, is little better than a marsh. It may be said that, with the exception of the Euxine, the Russian seas have an anti-European character; they cannot be of the same use as our western seas. From this point of view Russia is worse endowed by nature than any other European country; compared with the privileged lands of the West, it might be styled continental Europe, in opposition to maritime Europe.

Western Europe, besides being so jagged in its contour, is extremely irregular in its surface. Without speaking of the vast central mass of the Alps, there is not one European land which does not possess, either in its length or breadth, a great mountain system forming the scaffolding or the backbone of

the country. England has its chain of the Peak and its Highlands ; France has its Cevennes and its central support in Auvergne ; Spain, its Pyrenees and Sierras ; Italy, its Apennines ; Germany, its ranges in Suabia, Franconia, and the Hartz ; Sweden, her Scandinavian Alps ; the Greco-Slav peninsula has the Balkan and Pindus. On the contrary, all the mountains belonging to Russia are found on the extremities of its territory. It is bounded on the northwest by the granitic system of Finland, on the southeast by the branches of the Carpathians, on the south by the rocky plateaux of the Crimea with the Yaila and the Tcharduir-Dagh rising fifteen hundred and eighty meters, by the Caucasus, extending over eleven hundred kilometers, where Elburz, five thousand six hundred and forty meters in height, surpasses Mont Blanc, the highest mountain in Europe, by more than seven hundred meters. To the east is the Ural range, the longest chain of mountains in Europe or Asia, running two thousand four hundred and fifty kilometers parallel to the meridians of longitude, with peaks nineteen hundred meters high. In the Tatar language the word Ural signifies girdle, but it is not only the Urals which may be called the mountain-girdle ; all the mountains of Russia deserve this name. They bound it, they confine it, but have only a slight influence on the configuration of its interior and the distribution of its waters. From the Carpathians and the Caucasus only secondary rivers flow, while the four great Russian streams take their rise in hills not one hundred meters higher than the surrounding country, or three hundred and sixty meters above the level of the sea. We must observe also that none of these mountains form a separate system, they are nearly all fragments of systems belonging to other countries. The empire of the Tsars is thus an immense plain, which is continued on the west by the level lands of Poland and Prussia, and on the east by the limitless steppes of Siberia and Turkestan, and is in striking contrast with the rugged and multiform soil of the west. From this

point of view, Russia may be defined as the Europe of plains, in contradistinction to the Europe of mountains.

Uniformity of surface is never quite complete, and Russia presents inequalities of soil, though these are far less notable than the depressions and elevations of the West. In the faintly marked surface of Russia we must notice, in the centre of the country, a kind of square tableland, called the central plateau, or the plateau of Alaun, from the name of its northern part. The northeastern angle is formed by the heights of the Valdaï plateau, where the hills are one hundred meters high; the western side of the central plateau, by the small hills of the Dnieper, which extend as far as the Cataracts, or more properly the Rapids; the southern side, by the heights which reach from Kursk to Saratof; the eastern side, by the sandy stretches which extend along the right bank of the Volga and the Kama; the northern side, by the undulations of the land which separate the basin of the Volga from the rivers that drain into the Arctic Ocean. Moreover, the central plateau is divided into two unequal parts by the deep valleys of the Upper Volga, of the Oka, and their tributaries.

Considerable depressions correspond to this swelling in the centre of the Russian territory: Between the plateau of the Valdaï and the northeast slope of the Carpathians lies a deep valley, in which during the quaternary age the Baltic and Euxine mingled their waves. It is traversed on the north by the Southern Dwina, or Dvina, and the Niemen; on the south, by the Dnieper and its affluents; it reaches its lowest level in the wide marshes of Pinsk.

Again, between the low cliffs on the right bank of the Volga and the spurs of the Ural, the soil gradually sinks throughout the whole length of the Volga, and finally reaches the level of the sea at the Caspian, which is twenty-five meters lower than the Black Sea: here are the steppes of Kirghiz, the lowest part of European Russia, formerly the bed of a great inland sea, which was gradually dried up, and

of which the Caspian, the Lake of Aral, and other sheets of water are only the remains. Should the Caspian rise again but to the level of the Black Sea, a large part of this sterile plain, now covered with saline efflorescence, would be inundated anew.

The third great depression of the Russian soil is the slope of the north, covered with lakes and marshes, where the frozen swamps called the tundra are lost among the ice-fields of the Polar Ocean and the White Sea.

The fourth great depression is the region of the lakes Saima, Onega, Ladoga, which is continued by the sandy tracts of the Baltic, and which forms a series of deep cavities, where the waters of the Baltic and the White Sea must once have found a meeting-point.

From the fact that Russia, taken as a whole, is only a vast plain, it follows that its surface is swept by Polar winds, which are kept off by no mountain barrier, for the Ural chain runs in a direction parallel to their course. Again, from the fact that Russia is washed only by seas which are small in proportion to the extent of the land, it results that the temperature is modified neither by sea-breezes, such as in the West warm in winter and refresh in summer, nor by the aerial and marine current of the Gulf Stream, which finally expires on the coasts and on the mountains of Scandinavia, without being able to influence the shores of the Baltic. This mountain barrier makes a notable difference between the Norwegian and the Swedish-Russian climate in similar latitudes.

Russia, then, like the interior of Asia, Africa, or Australia, has to undergo the effects of a purely continental climate. The first of these effects is a great contrast between the seasons. The Russian plain is subject in turn to the influences of Polar regions and to those of Central and Southern Asia, of the deserts of ice and the deserts of burning sand. "In the latitude of Paris and of Venice," says M. Anatole Leroy-Beaulieu, "the countries situated to the north of the Black

Sea and the Caspian have the temperature of Stockholm in January, and the temperature of Madeira in July. At Astrakhan, in the latitude of Geneva, it is by no means rare for the temperature to vary from seventy to seventy-five degrees centigrade in a period of six months. On the coasts of the Caspian, in the latitude of Avignon, the cold descends to thirty degrees below freezing; in summer, on the contrary, the heat rises to upwards of forty degrees. In the steppes of the Kirghiz, in the latitude of the centre of France, the mercury is sometimes frozen for whole days; while in the summer the same thermometer, if not carefully watched, bursts in the sun. Near the shores of the Sea of Aral these extremes of temperature reach their maximum; there are intervals of eighty, perhaps of ninety degrees, centigrade, between the greatest cold and the greatest heat." Even at Moscow they have had cold of thirty-three and heat of twenty-eight degrees; at St. Petersburg the temperature may shift between the extremes of from thirty to thirty-five degrees of cold to thirty-one of heat.

The second consequence of the continental climate of Russia is that the winds do not reach the country till they have lost on the way part of their humidity. Russia suffers generally from dryness. At Kazan the rainfall is only half that of Paris; it is for this reason that Russia contains so many barren and unwooded plains, while this absence of forests all through the south is, in its turn, an obstacle to the formation of rills and springs, and to the development of a healthy moisture.

St. Petersburg, situated on the sixtieth parallel of northern latitude, is the most northern capital of the whole world. The longest day in this city lasts eighteen hours forty-five minutes; the sun rises on that day at twenty minutes to three, and sets at twenty-five minutes past nine, but the twilight is prolonged to the moment of dawn. For two months there is no night. The shortest day is five hours forty-seven minutes; the sun

risers at five minutes past nine and sets at eight minutes to three. The Aurora Borealis is frequent in the north of Russia, while the mirage is often seen in the steppes of the south.

Russia being a country of plains, the geological strata of which the soil is formed are nearly always horizontal; no violent upheaval has broken them, rent the beds of stone, and driven the fragments through the layers of mould or sand. It follows that, except in the neighborhood of mountains, stone is very scarce in Russia. This fact has had much influence on the economic and artistic development of the country. The people were obliged to build with other materials than in the West. The public buildings were everywhere of oak and pine, or of brick; the old churches, the palaces of the Tsars, the ramparts of the towns, were of wood. To-day the houses of the citizens and the huts of the peasants are of wood. Russian villages, and most of the towns, are a collection of combustible materials; hence the fires which break out periodically, and justify the saying that Russia, as a rule, is burned every seven years. Buildings of such materials cannot assume the colossal proportions of the castles of the Isle de France, or of the Rhenish cathedrals; the old churches of Russia are small. It is only since the conquest of the Baltic and the Black Sea that the empire has had cities of stone. Peter the Great gave Russia her first stone capital. From the geological point of view, then, Russia may be defined, according to the expression of M. Solovief, as the Europe of wood, in distinction from the Europe of stone.

#### RUSSIAN RIVERS AND HISTORY.

In a country so extensive and so destitute of seaboard as Russia, rivers have an immense importance, and with rivers Eastern Europe is well endowed. It is its watercourses which prevent Russia from being a continent closed and sealed, like

Africa or Australia. In place of estuaries it has great rivers which penetrate to the centre, and have sometimes almost the proportions of seas. In the level plains they have not the impetuous current of the Rhone, they flow peacefully through wide beds cut in the sand or clay. The rivers were for a long time the only means of communication. When the Russian princes wished to make a progress through their dominions, or begin a campaign, they had either to take advantage of winter, which from the Dnieper to the Ural gave them a flat surface for their sledges, or await the thaw and follow the course of the rivers. Boats in summer, sledges in winter, were the only means of conveyance; in spring the thaw and floods, which transformed the plain into a marsh, brought the *rasputitsa*, the season of bad roads. Commerce followed the same routes as war or government. The rivers which, in Russia especially, are "the roads that run," explain the rapidity with which we see the characters of Russian history traverse immense spaces, and go as easily from Novgorod to Kief, from Moscow to Kazan, as a French king from his good city of Paris to Rheims or Orleans. The rivers are the allies of the Russians against what they call "their great enemy," — space. Russian conquest or colonization has everywhere followed the course of the waters; it was on the banks of the Oka, the Kama, the Don, and the Volga, that the Russian element of the population chiefly gathered, the aboriginal races everywhere retreating into the thickness of the primitive forests.

The plateau of Valdaï is the dominant point in the river-system of Russia. It is near this plateau, in Lake Volga, that the Volga, which ultimately falls into the Caspian, takes its rise. In this neighborhood also are the sources of the Dnieper, flowing to the Black Sea, the Niemen, the Dwina, which falls into the Baltic, the Velikaïa, a tributary of the Peïpus, the rivers forming Lake Ilmen, and those which feed the lakes Ladoga and Onega, whence rises the Neva. The hydro-

graphic centre of Russia being at the northwest angle of the central plateau, it follows that the slopes are turned to the south and to the east; a disposition which has had its influence on the development of the national history. This history, indeed, begins in the northwest, near the Valdai plateau; on the Peïpus and the Ilmen the old commercial cities of Pskof and Novgorod are established. What is their opening to the sea? Not the Narova, flowing from Lake Peïpus, the course of which is broken by cataracts, but the network of rivers and lakes which terminates in the Neva, the Thames of Russia, a river of little length but immense breadth, on which St. Petersburg, the Novgorod of the eighteenth century, was afterwards to be built. In primitive times Novgorod was safer in the centre of this network of rivers and lakes than it would have been on the Neva. By the Volkhof its vessels sailed from the Ilmen to the Ladoga, and by the Neva from the Ladoga to the Gulf of Finland and the great Baltic Sea. Other small rivers put it in communication with Lake Onega and the White Lake; by the Sukhona and the Northern Dwina it had relations with the White Sea, where later the port of Arkhangel was built. By the tributaries of the Dwina the Novgorod explorers penetrated deep into the northern forests, peopled by aboriginal races, on whom they imposed tribute. The watersheds between the slope to the White Sea, the basin of the Novgorod lakes, and the basin of the Volga, are scarcely marked at all. The rivers seem to hesitate at their rise between two opposite courses: some of them never make up their minds, like the sluggish Sheksna, which connects the White Lake and the Volga. This interlacement of the water-system, which makes the Northern Dwina, the Neva, the Niemen, and the Southern Dwina mere prolongations of the Volga and the Dnieper, and puts the four Russian seas in unbroken communication, is in itself a sufficient explanation of the extent of the conquests and great commercial position of Novgorod the Great.

The Rus of Kief was founded on the Dnieper at a very early date, as a Russian rival to the Russia of Novgorod. It also followed the line marked out for it by the course of the Dnieper, which necessarily turned its attention toward the Black Sea and the Byzantine world.

It was by the Dnieper that the fleets of war descended against Constantinople; it was by this river, too, that Greek civilization and Christianity reached Kief. The Dnieper, which made the greatness of Kief, hastened its decay. As a medium of communication it was imperfect. The celebrated cataracts or rapids below Kief formed an insurmountable barrier to navigation, and consequently the city could not remain the political and commercial capital of Russia.

The Don, notwithstanding its length of a thousand kilometers, has had little influence on the evolution of Russian history. During the whole period of the growth of the nation it remained in the power of the Asiatic hordes. In later years it fell, with Azof, into the possession of the Turks. The sandy shallows near its mouth would in any case have proved fatal to its commercial importance. The Dvina and the Niemen also remained till the eighteenth century in the hands of the native Finns and Lithuanians, or of the German conquerors.

But the great river of Russia is the Volga, — the “mother Volga,” as the popular singers call it. If the Neva, with the great lakes which feed it, may be compared to the St. Lawrence, the Volga may be compared to the Mississippi. With a length of three thousand seven hundred and seventy-eight kilometers, it has a course two hundred and fifty leagues longer than that of the Danube. Many of its tributaries may be reckoned among the great rivers of the world. The Oka, with its thousand kilometers of extent, surpasses the Meuse and the Oder; the Kama, two thousand kilometers long, outvies all other European rivers except the Danube; for the Elbe is only one thousand and thirty kilometers, the Loire one thou-

sand and ninety, and the Rhine thirteen hundred in length. The junction of the Volga and Oka at Nijni-Novgorod is like the meeting of two arms of the sea ; it is an imposing spectacle to contemplate from the hill on which the upper town is built, while the lower town, or the fair, with its one hundred thousand fluctuating inhabitants, spreads its buildings on the banks of both rivers. The Volga, which near Iaroslavl is six hundred and thirty-nine meters broad, has a breadth of fourteen hundred above Kazan ; towards Samara sometimes it decreases to seven hundred and forty-six meters ; sometimes it spreads, with its tributary streams and lateral branches, over a breadth of twenty-eight kilometers. At the Caspian it divides into seventy-five branches, forming numerous islands, and its delta spreads over one hundred and fifty kilometers. This immense river, the waters of which abound with fish as large as sea-fish, — sturgeon, salmon, lampreys, — and where the sterlet sometimes weighs four hundred and eighty-eight kilos, would be the wonder of Europe, were it not frost-bound during many months in the year. But at the thaw the ports, the dockyards, the wharves, are full of life. Two hundred thousand workmen flock from all parts of Russia to its banks. Fifteen thousand ships and five hundred steamboats plough its waters. Kostroma, Nijni-Novgorod, Kazan, Simbirsk, Samara, Saratof, Astrakhan, are filled with noise and activity. It seems as if the whole life of Russia were concentrated on the Volga.

The basin of the Volga and its tributaries embraces an extent of surface nearly treble that of France. The basin of the Oka alone has three times the extent of the basin of the Loire. In her vast domain the Volga included nearly the whole of the Russia of the sixteenth century, and has exercised an irresistible influence over the destiny of the land. From the day that the Grand Princes established their capital on the Moskova, a tributary of the Oka and sub-tributary of the Volga, Russia turned to the east, and began its struggle with the Turks and Tatars. The Dnieper made Russia Byzantine, the Volga

made it Asiatic: it was for the Neva to make it European. The whole history of this country is the history of its three great rivers, and is divided into three periods: that of the Dnieper with Kief, that of the Volga with Moscow, that of the Neva with Novgorod in the eighth century and St. Petersburg in the eighteenth. The greatness of this creation of Peter the First consisted in his transporting his capital to the Baltic, without abandoning the Caspian and the Volga, and in seeking for the great eastern river a new outlet which should open a communication with western seas. By means of the canals of the Tikvinka and of the Ladoga, which furnished that outlet, the Neva has become, as it were, the northern mouth, the European estuary of the Volga.

#### THE FOUR ZONES: THE GEOGRAPHICAL UNITY OF RUSSIA.

Considered as a productive country, Russia may be divided into four unequal bands, which run from the southwest to the northeast, namely: the zone of forests, that of the Black Land, that of the arable steppes, or prairies, and that of the barren steppes.

The most northerly zone and the largest is that of the Russian forest, which touches on one side the ever-frozen marshes of the icy shore, and on the other, the wide clearings formed by the agricultural enterprise of Novgorod, Moscow, and Iaroslavl. In the north the forest begins with the larch; in the centre resinous trees, with their dark foliage, alternate with the small leaves and white bark of the birch; farther south come the lime, the elm, and the maple, and the oak appears at the southern limit.

The Black Land extends from the banks of the Pruth to the Caucasus, over the widest extent of Russia; it even passes the Ural and the Caucasus, and is prolonged into Asia. It derives its name from a deep bed of black mould of inexhaustible fertility, which produces without manure the richest harvests,

and may be compared to a gigantic Beauce or Champagne of six hundred thousand square kilometers, a cornfield as large as the whole of France. From this alone twenty-five millions are fed, and the population increases daily. From time immemorial this soil has been the granary of Eastern Europe. It was here Herodotus placed his agricultural Scythians, and hence Athens drew her grain.

The zone of arable steppes lies parallel to the Black Land; to the south, it descends nearly to the sea: the country is fertile, though it cannot do without manure. Before it began to be tilled it formed a bare, grass-grown plain, completely devoid of wood, and with its six hundred thousand square kilometers recalls the American prairie. The vegetation of the steppe, where men and flocks can hide themselves as in a forest, is often five, six, and even eight feet high. This monotonous steppe, unbroken except by the barrows that cover the bones of early races, — this steppe, which is an ocean of verdure in spring, but russet and burnt up in the autumn, is very dear to its children. It was long the Russia of heroes, the property of nomad horsemen, the country of the Cossack. The Black Land and the prairie, which is nearly as fertile, have an area of twelve hundred thousand square kilometers, or one hundred and twenty million hectares of excellent earth, a surface equal to that of France and Austrian Hungary united.

The fourth zone, that of the barren steppes, — steppes which are sandy at the mouth of the Dnieper, clay to the north of the Crimea, saline to the north of the Caspian, — contains only fifteen hundred thousand inhabitants in its whole extent of four hundred thousand square kilometers. “Unsuited to agriculture, and in a great degree to civilized life,” says M. Leroy-Beaulieu, “these vast spaces, like the neighboring plains of Asia, seem fit only for the raising of cattle and the existence of nomads. Of all Russia in Europe, these are the only parts which, even at the present day, are inhabited by the Kirghiz and the Kalmuiki, nomad tribes of Asia, and up to a few

years ago by the Tatars of the Crimea and the Nogaetsui, or Nogaïs. Here the Asiatics appear as much at home as in their native country."

The productive parts of Russia are these: the prairie, the Black Land, and in the zone of forests the agricultural and industrial region of Novgorod, Moscow, Nijni-Novgorod, and Kazan. Were the sea-level to rise and drown the northern part of the forest region and the barren steppes of the south, nothing would be taken from the real power and riches of Russia.

These alternations of low plains and plateaux, this diversity in the direction of the great rivers, this division into forests, arable steppes, and barren deserts, does not hinder Eastern Europe from presenting a remarkable unity. None of the parts of Russia could remain isolated from the others: the plains admit of no barrier, no frontier; those which the rivers might impose would be broken over in winter by the army-wagons, when the land is ice-bound from the White Sea to the Euxine, and the climate is almost as severe at Kief as at Arkhangel. All these regions, which resume their different characters in spring, are kept together by economical interests and needs. The forest zone needs the corn of the Dnieper, the cattle of the Volga; the steppes of the south need the wood of the north. The commerce with Europe, which was conducted by means of the Northern Dwina, the Neva, and the Southern Dwina, was completed by that with the south and the east, carried on by the Dnieper and the Volga.

Only the region of Moscow, where fields and woods alternate, was long sufficient for its own wants; but since Moscow has turned to industrial arts, it needs help from others. In early times it united the products of the north and the south; it thus formed the connecting link between them, and ended by becoming their ruler. Even Novgorod was forced to acknowledge its dependence on the princes established on

the Oka, who had only to forbid the transportation of corn from the Upper Volga to the region of the lakes, to reduce the Great Republic to obedience.

The wide plains of Russia are as evidently destined to be united as Switzerland to be divided. Between the Carpathians and the Urals, between the Caucasus and the system of Finland, nature has marked out a vast empire of which the mountain girdle forms the framework. How this framework has been filled in is the lesson that history has to teach us.

## CHAPTER II.

### ETHNOGRAPHY OF RUSSIA.

GREEK COLONIES AND THE SCYTHIA OF HERODOTUS. — THE RUSSIAN SLAVS OF NESTOR. — LITHUANIAN, FINNISH, AND TURKISH HORDES IN THE NINTH CENTURY. — DIVISION OF THE RUSSIANS PROPER INTO THREE BRANCHES. — HOW RUSSIA WAS COLONIZED.

---

#### GREEK COLONIES AND THE SCYTHIA OF HERODOTUS.

THE early Greeks had established trading-posts and founded flourishing colonies on the northern shores of the Black Sea. The Milesians and Megarians built Tomi, or Kustenje, near the Danube, Istros at its mouth, Tyras at that of the Dniester, Odessos at that of the Bug, Olbia at that of the Dnieper, Chersonesos, or Kherson, on the roadstead of Sevastopol, Palakion, which afterwards became Balaklava, Theodosia, which became Kaffa, Pantikapea, now Kertch, and Phanagoria on the two shores of the Strait of Ienikale, Tanaïs at the mouth of the Don, Apatouros in the Kuban, Phasis, Dioscurias, and Pityus at the foot of the Caucasus, on the coast of ancient Colchis. Pantikapea, Phanagoria, and Theodosia formed, in the fourth century before Christ, a confederation with a hereditary chief, called the Arkhon of the Bosphorus, at its head, whose authority was acknowledged also by some of the barbarous tribes.

Russian archæologists, and, quite recently, M. Uvarof, have brought to light many monuments of Greek civilization, funeral pillars, inscriptions, bas-reliefs, statues of gods and

heroes. We know that the colonists carefully preserved the Greek civilization, cultivated the arts of their mother cities, repeated the poems of Homer as they marched to battle, loved eloquent speeches as late as the time of Dion Chrysostom, and paid a special worship to the memory of Achilles. Beyond the line of Greek colonies dwelt a whole world of tribes, whom the Greeks designated by the common name of Scythians, with whom they entered into wars and alliances, and who served them as middlemen in their trade with the countries of the north. Herodotus has given us nearly all that was known of these barbarians in the fifth century before Christ.

The Scythians worshipped a sword fixed in the earth as an image of the god of war, and shed human blood in sacrifice. They drank the blood of the first enemy killed in battle, scalped their prisoners, and used their skulls as drinking-cups. They performed terrible burial-rites in honor of their kings, and celebrated the anniversaries of their death by strangling their horses and slaves, and leaving the impaled corpses to surround the royal burial mound with a circle of horsemen. They honored the memory of the wise Anacharsis, who travelled among the Greeks. Their nomad hordes defied the power of Darius Hystaspes.

Among the Scythians, properly so called, Herodotus distinguished the agricultural Scythians established on the Dnieper, probably in the Black Land of the Ukraina; the nomad Scythians, who extended fourteen days' journey to the east; the royal Scythians, encamped round the Sea of Azof, who regarded the other Scythians as their slaves.

The barbarism of the inland tribes became rapidly modified under the influence of the powerful cities of Olbia and Chersonesos, and the Greco-Scythian state of the Bosphorus. In the tombs of the Scythian kings of what is now the government of Ekaterinoslaf, as well as in those of the Greco-Scythian princes of the Bosphorus, works of art have been found

which show the genius of the Greeks accommodating itself to the taste of the barbarians, precious vases chiselled for them by Athenian artists, and all the jewels which at present enrich the museums of Kertch, Odessa, and St. Petersburg.

The Hermitage Museum at St. Petersburg, in particular, possesses two vases of an incomparable artistic and archæologic value. They are the silver vase of Nikopol in the government of Ekaterinoslaf and the golden vase of Kertch, and date from the fourth century before Christ, or about the period when Herodotus wrote his history, of which they are the lively commentary. The Scythians of the silver vase, with their long hair, their long beards, large features, tunics and trousers, reproduce very fairly the physiognomy, stature, and costume of the present inhabitants of the same countries; we see them breaking in and bridling their horses in exactly the same way as they do it to-day on those plains. The Scythians of the golden vase, notwithstanding their pointed caps, their garments embroidered and ornamented after the Asiatic taste, and their strangely shaped bows, are of a very marked Aryan type. The former might very well have been the agricultural Scythians of Herodotus, perhaps the ancestors of the agricultural Slavs of the Dnieper; the latter, the royal Scythians who led a nomad and warlike life. The philological studies of M. Bergmann and M. Müllendorf tend to identify the Scythian idiom with the Indo-European family of languages. "They were then," says M. Georges Perrot, "in spite of many apparent differences of language, customs, and civilization, nearly related to the Greeks, and this kinship perhaps contributed, without the knowledge of either Greeks or barbarians, to facilitate the relations between Hellenes and Scythians."

Herodotus takes care to make an emphatic distinction between the Scythians properly so called and certain other peoples about whom he has strange stories to tell. These peoples are the Melankhlainoi, who wear black raiment; the

Neuroi, who, once a year, become were-wolves; the Agathyrsoi, who array themselves in golden ornaments, and have their women in common; the Sauromatoi, sprung from the loves of the Scythians with the Amazons; the Budinoi and Gelonoi, slightly tinged with Greek culture; the Thysagetai, the Massagetai, the Iurkai, who lived on the produce of the chase; the Argippaioi, who were bald and snub-nosed from their birth; the Issedones, who used to devour their dead parents with great pomp and ceremony; the one-eyed Arimaspoi; the Gryphons, guardians of fabled gold; the Hyperboreans, who dwell in a land where, summer and winter, the snow-flakes fall like a shower of white feathers.

It seems probable that among all these peoples there may be some who have since emigrated westwards, and who may belong to the German and Gothic races. Others, again, may have continued to maintain themselves, under different names, in Eastern Europe, such as the Slavs, the Finns, and even a certain number of Turkish tribes. M. Rittich believes he can identify the Melankhlainoi of Herodotus with the Esthonians, who still prefer dark raiment; the Androphagoi with the Samoyedui, the Issedones with the Voguls, who may very well have dwelt on the Isseta, a sub-tributary of the Obi; the Arimaspoi with the Votiaki, whom the Turks now call the Ari; the Argippaioi, Aorses, and Zyrians of Strabo with the Erzui or Zyrians; the Massagetai with the Bashkirs. M. Vivien de Saint-Martin recognizes the Agathyrsoi in the Agatzirs of Priscus, who wrote in the year of our Lord four hundred and forty-nine, and Acatzirs of Jornandes, who are the Khazarui. The Finns, then, have formed the most widely spread race of Scythia.

THE RUSSIAN SLAVS OF NESTOR THE CHRONICLER.—  
LITHUANIAN, FINNISH, AND TURKISH CLANS IN THE  
NINTH CENTURY.

The great barbaric invasions in the fourth century of our era formed a period of change and terrible catastrophe in Eastern Europe. The Goths, under Hermanaric, founded a vast empire in Eastern Scythia. The Huns, under Attila, overthrew this Gothic dominion, and a cloud of Finnish peoples, Avarui and Bulgarians, followed later by Magyars and Khazarui, hurried swiftly on the traces of the Huns. In the midst of this strife and medley of peoples, the Slavs came to the front with their own marked character, and appeared in history under their proper name. They were described by the Greek chroniclers and by the Emperors Maurice and Constantine Porphyrogenitus. They clashed against the Roman Empire of the East; they began the secular contest between the Greek and Slavonic races, a contest which is still being waged for the prize of mastery in the peninsula of the Balkans. Certain tribes formed a separate group among the others, and received the name of the Russian Slavs. Nestor, the first Russian historian, a monk of Kief, of the twelfth century, has described their geographical distribution as it existed two hundred years before his time. The Slavs, properly so called, inhabited the basin of the Ilmen and the west bank of Lake Peïpus; their towns, Novgorod, Pskof, Izborsk, appear in the very beginning of the history of Russia. The Krivitchi, again, were settled on the sources of the Dwina and the Dnieper, round their city of Smolensk. The Polotchané had Polotsk, on the Upper Dwina. The Dregovitchi dwelt on the west of the Dwina and of the Upper Dnieper, and held Turof. The Radimitchi abode on the Soja, a tributary of the Dnieper, and possessed the old cities of Ovrutch and Korosten; the Viatitchi, on the Higher Oka; the Drevliané, so called from the thick forests which covered their territory, in the basin of the Pripet. Between the Desna

and the Dnieper, the Severiané were established; their towns were Lubetch, Tchernigof, and Pereiaslavl. The Poliané faced the Severiané on the right bank of the Dnieper; Kief was their centre. The White Kroats abode between the Dniester and the Carpathians; the Tivertssui and the Loutitchi on the Lower Dniester and the Pruth; the Dulebui and the Bujané on the Bug, a tributary of the Vistula.

Nestor's list of the Russian Slavs shows that, in the ninth century of our era, when their history begins, they occupied but a small part of the Russia of to-day. They were almost completely penned in the districts of the Dwina and the Upper Dnieper, of the Ilmen and the Dniester. In all the immense basin of the Caspian, their share was only the land they occupied around the sources of the Volga and the Oka.

On the west and north, the Russian Slavs bordered on other Slavonic tribes, which, about this period, acquired distinct national names. Some groups, scattered about the Upper Elbe and the two banks of the Vistula, after the invasion of the Tcheki and the Liakhi, or Lekhitui, from the fourth to the seventh century, formed themselves into the states of Bohemia and Poland.

Other tribes on the Marsh, or Morava, made, in the kingdom of Moravia, their first attempt to secure political existence during the ninth century. Certain others scattered on the Lower Danube formed the kingdom of Bulgaria, after the invasion of the Bulgarians under Asparukh in six hundred and eighty. In a more distant land on the Adriatic, the Servian and Kroatian tribes were preparing to organize themselves into the kingdoms of Kroatia, Dalmatia, and Servia. On the Baltic were the Slavs of Pomerania, the Havelians of Brandenburg and Sprevanians of the banks of the Elbe, the Obotritui, Viltzui, Lutitzi, and Sorabui, or Sorbui, all one day to be absorbed by the German Conquest.

At this period there was little difference between Russian and Polish Slavs. M. Kulish thinks that conquests achieved

by two different races of men ; that the adoption of two irreconcilable creeds, those of Rome and of Byzantium ; that the influence of two rival civilizations, the Greek and the Latin, with their separate literatures and alphabets, — that all these influences created two antagonistic peoples in the midst of a race of one blood, and stamped on the inert and unconscious material of the Slavonic kindred the impress of two hostile nationalities. The Slav, moulded by the Liakhi, converted to the Church of Rome, and subject to the influences of the West, became the Pole. The Slav, moulded by the Variagi, converted to the Greek Church, and subject to Byzantine influences, became the Russian. In the beginning, on the Vistula, as on the Dnieper, all were Slavs alike ; all practised the same heathen ritual ; all were governed by the same traditions, and spoke almost the same language. Indeed, the affinities of the Russian and Polish idioms, between which the dialects of White Russia, of Red Russia, and of Little Russia serve as links, sufficiently demonstrate an original brotherhood, which the strifes of churches and of thrones have destroyed.

The Russian Slavs, before taking possession of all the domain assigned to them by history, had to struggle in the north and east against the nations belonging to three principal races, the Letto-Lithuanians, the Finns, and the Turks, in whom Finnish and Tatar elements were more or less mingled. The Finns and the Turks belong to that branch of the human family which has been named, from its twofold cradle of the Ural and the Altai, Uralo-Altaic. The first of these races belongs to the Aryan family, but is nevertheless distinct from the Germanic or Slav races, and its dialects have more resemblance to Sanskrit than any other European tongue. The Zhmudi and the Lithuanians, properly so called, dwell on the Niemen, the Iatviagi on the Naref. On the western shore of the Gulf of Riga and on the Baltic, the Korsu, who give their name to Kurland, are to be found, while the Semigals, or Zimegola, inhabit the left bank of the Dwina ; and the Letgola, from whom are

descended, by a mingling with the Finnish race of Livonians, the Lettui, or Latitchi, of Southern Livonia. The Livonians on the gulfs of Livonia and Finland, and the Tchud-Esthonians, who gave their name to Peïpus, the Lake of the Tchud, belong to the Finnish race. They are the ancestors of the present inhabitants of Northern Livonia and Esthonia. The three so-called German provinces of the Baltic are then Lettish in the south, Finnish in the north. The Narova were established on the Narova, which is a territory of the Peïpus; the Vodi, between the Volkhof and the sea, in a country called by the Novgorodians, Vodskaïa Piatina; the Ingrians, or Izhera, on the Izhora, or Ingra, a tributary on the left bank of the Neva. The Tchud-Esthonians at the present day number seven hundred and nineteen thousand, the Livonians two thousand five hundred and forty, the Vodi five thousand, and the Ingrians eighteen thousand.

Finland, or Suomen-maa, the land of the Suomi, is still inhabited by the Suomi, who were divided into three tribes, the Iam, or Tavasts, on the southeast, round Iamburg and Tavas-tehus; the Kvins, or Kaïans, on the Gulf of Bothnia; the Karelians, who were more numerous than the two other nations put together, occupied the rest of Finland. These three peoples at present amount to a total of one million four hundred and fifty thousand. The north of Finland was and is inhabited by the Laps, or Laplanders, who form a special division of the Finnish race, and reckon in Russia about four thousand souls. The shores of the Arctic Ocean, from the Mezen to the Yenissei, have been always occupied by the Samoyedui, a very wide-spread but far from numerous people, who amount in Europe to about five thousand souls. In the time of Nestor the Vesi dwelt on the Sheksna and the White Lake; the Muromians, whose name is repeated in that of Murom, on the Oka and its affluents, the Moskova and the Kliazma; the Meria, on the Upper Volga around the Lake Kleshtchin and Lake Nero or Rostof. These three tribes

have completely disappeared, having been absorbed or transformed by the Russian colonization, but leave behind them innumerable funeral mounds. Between eighteen hundred and fifty-one and eighteen hundred and fifty-four, M. Uvarof and M. Savelief excavated seven thousand seven hundred and twenty-nine in the Merian country alone. Besides these monuments and the remains which they contain, the only traces left of these tribes are to be found in names of places, and in certain peculiarities of the local dialects. It was around their territory that the Muscovite state and the Russian empire were formed. The Tchud-Zavolotchianié were encamped on the Lower Dwina; the Erzui, or Zyrians, inhabited the basin of the Petchora; the Permiane, the source of the Dwina and the Kama; the Votiaki, or Ari, lived on the Viatka, where the town of Viatka still preserves their name. These races form what is called the Permian branch of the Finnish nation; their country was named by the Scandinavians, Biarmia or Biarmaland, and "Great Permia" by the Muscovites. Biarmaland was discovered in the ninth century by the Norwegian navigator Other, who not long afterwards entered the service of Alfred the Great, King of England, and has left in Anglo-Saxon an account of his travels. This narrative proves that the Permians were then a civilized people, who traded with India and Persia. The temple of their god Iumala was so richly ornamented with precious stones, that its brilliance illuminated all the surrounding country. The Erzi number at the present day only eighty thousand, the Permians seventy thousand, the Votiaki two hundred and thirty-four thousand.

The Ugrian branch is composed first of the Ostiaki, amounting to twenty thousand, and of the Voguls, amounting to seven thousand. On the east they inhabit the Urals, and only border on Europe. Formerly they lived more to the south. The Magyars, who made Europe tremble in the tenth century, and founded the kingdom of Hungary, belonged to this race.

Between the Kama and the Ural were already to be found the Bash-Kurts, the shaven-heads, or Bashkirs, of the sixteenth to the eighteenth centuries, originally a Finnish people, no doubt of the Ugrian branch, but profoundly Tatarized, with whom were mingled the Meshtchera, a tribe named by Nestor. There are at present five hundred thousand Bashkirs, and one hundred thousand Meshtchera. On the Middle Volga dwelt the Tcheremisa, the Tchuvashi, and the Mordva; the Tcheremisa are found again to-day in the government of Kazan, Nijni-Novgorod, and Viatka; the Tchuvashi in Kazan, Nijni-Novgorod, and Simbirsk; the Mordva in Kazan, Tambof, Pensa, Simbirsk, Samara, and Saratof, but these are now only small islets amid the Russian colonization, whereas in the time of Nestor they formed a compact mass. The Tcheremisa now number only one hundred and sixty-five thousand, the Tchuvashi four hundred and thirty thousand, and the Mordva five hundred thousand; all the rest have become Russians, except a few who have become Tatar.

All seems strange among these ancient peoples. The type of countenance is blurred and, as it were, unfinished; the costume seems to have been adopted from some antediluvian fashion; the manners and superstitions preserve the trace of early religions beyond the date of any known forms of paganism; the language is sometimes so very primitive that the Tchuvashi, for example, do not possess more than a thousand original words.

The Tcheremis women wear on their breasts two plates forming a cuirass, and ornamented with pieces of silver, transmitted from generation to generation. A numismatist would make wonderful discoveries in these walking museums of medals. They drape their legs in a piece of tightly bound black cloth, and think that modesty consists in never showing the legs, just as the Tatar women make a point of never unveiling the face.

The Tchuvash women cover their heads with a little peaked

cap like a Saracen helmet, carry on their backs a covering of leather and metal like the trapping of a war-horse, and wear on fête-days a stiff and rectangular mantle like a chasuble. Among this singular people "black" and "beautiful" are synonymous, and when they wish to revenge themselves they hang themselves at their enemy's door.

In spite of three centuries of Christian missions, these tribes dwelling in the heart of Russia and on the great artery of the Volga are not even yet complete converts to Christianity.

There are still some pagan districts. It may even be said that a considerable portion of the Tcheremisa, Tchuvashi, Mordva, and Votiaki remain attached to the worship of the ancient deities, which they sometimes mingle with orthodox practices and the worship of St. Nicholas. Their religion consisted essentially in dualism: the good principle is called by the Tchuvashi, Thora; Iuma, the "Iumal" of the Finns, by the Tcheremisa; Inma by the Votiaki. The bad principle was named Shaïtan, or Satan. Between the two is a divinity whom men had in former times cruelly offended, who is called Keremet. From the good god proceeded an infinity of gods and goddesses; from Keremet a numerous progeny of male and female Keremets, genii more mischievous than malevolent, to whom the aborigines offer pieces of money, and sacrifice horses, oxen, sheep, swans, and cocks and hens, in sanctuaries also named Keremet, built in the depths of the forests and far from Russian spies.

Human sacrifices have been talked of. The worship of the dead inspired ideas which guide the savage everywhere. Men have preserved the custom of wife-capture, or buying brides from the fathers by paying the kalm; they practise agricultural communism. In a word, the life of these races of the Volga in the nineteenth century is the living commentary of the accounts of Nestor of the Russian Slavs of the ninth century.

It is probable that Slavs and Russians then lived in an absolutely identical state of civilization, and had almost the same religious ideas and the same customs.

There remain two Finnish peoples still to be spoken of, who, mentioned by Nestor, have at present disappeared, but who were far more remarkable than any of the preceding. These are the Khazarui, who, although mingled with Turkish elements, were essentially Finnish. Remarkable for their aptitude for civilization, they had formed in the ninth century a vast empire, which embraced the regions of the Lower Dnieper, the Don, and the Lower Volga, round the Sea of Azof and the Caspian; they had built Itil on the Volga, and Sarkel, or the White City, on the Don; they had sometimes governors at Bosporos and Kherson, in the Taurid peninsula; in the Kuban they possessed the Tamatarchia of the Greeks. They had commercial and friendly relations with Byzantium, the caliphate of Bagdad, and even the caliphate of Cordova, the only civilized states of the then known world. The Khazarui had flourishing schools, and tolerated all religions besides the national paganism. Mussulman missionaries appeared in the seventh, Jewish missionaries in the eighth century, and Saint Cyril arrived about eight hundred and sixty at the court of their Shagan. A Jewish Shagan of the name of Joseph interchanged some curious letters with the Rabbi Hasdai of Cordova, announcing to him that the people of God, the Israel Khazar, ruled over nine nations of the nineteen of the Caucasus, and thirteen of the Black Sea, and that he did not allow the Russians to descend the Volga to ravage the territory of the Caliph of Bagdad. The Israelitish Khazarui became afterwards mingled with the Kharaites Jews, and the Moslem Khazarui with the Tatars of the Crimea. Among the vassal nations of the Khazarui enumerated by the Shagan Joseph, were the Burtas and the Bulgarui of the Volga; the latter, kinsmen of the Bulgarui who were subjected by the Danubian Slavs, and apparently nearly related to the Tehuvashi, were a mixture of Finnish, Turkish, and even Slav elements, according to an Arabian account. Sedentary, industrious, and destined to inherit the commercial splendor of the Khazarui, they

blended with the native superstitions the Islamism which was preached to them in nine hundred and twenty-two by missionaries from Bagdad, and possessed in the tenth century a flourishing state. Their capital was Bolgarui, or the "Great City," on the junction of the Volga and the Kama. They also owned the cities of Buliar, or Biliarsk, Suvar, Krementchug, and others. Their descendants were fused with the Tatar conquerors of the thirteenth century.

The Finnish races, even more than the Slavs, are the real aborigines of Russia. In the fifth century before Christ Herodotus writes of them as already long possessed of the soil. Everywhere in these wide regions the traces of their occupation are visible. At different periods they extended from the Livonian Gulf to the Urals, and from the Arctic Ocean to the Black Sea. They withdrew at various times, especially from the fifth to the ninth centuries, to allow the passage of the great migrations and of the great invasions; but in the tenth century they occupied, with the Khazarui, the shores of the Sea of Azof and of the Caspian, while the Finns of Esthonia held the Lithuanians in check.

The Turkish races, on the contrary, made their appearance much later in Russia. In the ninth century the Lower Volga and the Lower Ural began to fall a prey to the Petchenegi, or Kangarui, incorrigible brigands, who marched over the bodies of the Khazarui to establish themselves on the Lower Dnieper. After them appeared the Polovtsui, or Komanui, the Uzi, or Torki. The invasion of the Tatars was more Turkish than Mongolian. The nomads vanished or, according to Nestor, were absorbed by new arrivals, namely, the Nogaïs, formed in the thirteenth century of the remnants of the Polovtsui and of the Turko-Kanglis, at present numbering fifty thousand; the Kirghis, who entered Europe about seventeen hundred and twenty-one, and to-day amount to about eighty-two thousand souls; the Kalmuiki, who are Mongols, not Turks, belong to the Celeutes, or Western Mongols, in-

vaders of Russia in sixteen hundred and thirty-six, number eighty-seven thousand in the provinces of Astrakhan, Stavropol, and the Don, and in spite of the efforts of Christians and Mussulmans have remained Lamaists. As to the Tatars, properly so called, or sedentary Turks, more or less a mixture of Finnish and Mongol elements, who inhabit the governments of the Volga, Kazan, and Astrakhan, as well as those of Stavropol and the Crimea, they number altogether about one million four hundred and twenty thousand souls.

DIVISION OF THE RUSSIANS OF TO-DAY INTO THREE  
BRANCHES.—HOW RUSSIA WAS COLONIZED.

At the end of the eleventh century, in the time of Nestor, the Russian Slavs, confined between the Lithuanians on the west, the Finns on the north, and the Turks on the east, occupied barely one fifth part of Russia in Europe. To-day we see the Russian race extend from Finland to the Ural, from the Arctic Ocean to the Caucasus and Crimea, amounting to fifty-six millions of men, besides three million colonists in the Asiatic provinces. The Letto-Lithuanians, on the contrary, are reduced to two million four hundred and twenty thousand souls; the Finns, including the inhabitants of Finland, to less than four millions; and the Turko-Tatars to less than two millions. The Russians form six sevenths of the population of Russia. The proportions are more than reversed. What a change has been wrought in ten centuries! The present Russians may be divided into three branches, deriving their names from certain historical circumstances.

The name of White Russia is given to the provinces conquered from the thirteenth to the fourteenth century by the Grand Dukes of Lithuania. These were the ancient territories of the Krivitchi, Polotchané, Dregovitchi, and Drevliané, now forming the governments of Vitepsk, Mohilef, and Minsk. The governments of Kovno, Grodno, and Vilna, at present

unequally Russified, were originally Lithuanian. The Lithuanian territories of Grodno, Novogrodek, and Biélostok were sometimes called Black Russia.

Little Russia includes the country of the ancient Severiané and Poliané increased by colonies ; that is, the governments of Kief, Tchernigof, Poltava, Kharkof, Volhynia, and Podolia. It even extends beyond the frontiers of the empire into Red Russia, or Old Gallicia, including the towns of Galitch, Iaroslavl, Terebovl, Zvenigorod, Lemberg, or Lvof, belonging to Austria, and peopled by three millions of Ruthenians or Russians.

Great Russia grouped around the ancient Muscovy, occupying the place held in the ninth century by many Turkish or Finnish tribes. To Great Russia belong Northern Russia with Arkhangel ; Eastern Russia, including the Volga, Kazan, Astrakhan ; and New Russia, or South Russia, with Kherson, Ekaterinoslaf, Kharkof, Odessa, and the Crimea. Great Russia, as a whole, except Novgorod and Pskof, was won from foreign races by Russian colonization. It was a colony of Kievan Russia, and, though for a time subjugated by the Tatars, was able to shake off their yoke, while Kief still remained a Lithuanian province. It continued to extend its conquests in the east ; then, turning to the west in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, succeeded in recovering White Russia and Little Russia.

In the empire the White Russians number three millions, the Little Russians twelve millions, and the Great Russians forty-one millions. There are dialectical differences between the idioms of these three families, which historical and literary influences easily explain. Some writers have been anxious to establish the existence of a profound difference between Great Russia and its two neighbors. They have reserved the name of Russians and the character of Slavs for the White Russians and the Little Russians, and have pretended to see in the "Muscovites" nothing but descendants of Finns, Turks,

and Tatars, in a word, Turanians, Russian only in language. The Muscovite Empire, founded in the midst of Ves, of Mordva, and of Meria, extended at the expense of the Tchuvashi, the Mordva, Tatars, and Kirghiz, with its two capitals, Moscow and St. Petersburg, in the Tchud region, is not even a European state, if these writers are to be trusted. A more careful study shows us that Muscovy was formed in the first place by the migrations of Russian colonists, in the second place by the assimilation of certain foreign races. When the steppes of the south became the prey of Asiatic nomads, the Russian population flowed back in a vast wave, from the banks of the Dnieper to the Upper and Middle Volga. We see the princes of Suzdal calling to their aid the inhabitants of the banks of the Dnieper, while in the forests of the north new cities are constantly founded by the people of Novgorod. The Russia of Kief once destroyed, a new Russia begins to form itself, almost out of the same elements, at the opposite extremity of the Oriental plain. The names given to the new towns of Suzdal and Muscovy must be noticed. There is a Vladimir on the Kliazma as there is a Vladimir in Volhynia, a Zvenigorod on the Moskova as on the Dniester, a Galitch in Suzdal as in Galicia, a Iaroslavl on the Volga as on the San. Suzdal and Riazan, like Kief, have their Pereiaslavl; that of the former bears the title of Zaltieski, or "beyond the forests." In a different land, and under another sky, the emigrants clearly tried to restore the name, if they could not find the image, of their native country. Is it not thus that in America the Dutch founded New York, and the French New Orleans? Moreover, when we have seen a population of three million Russians gather in the Caucasus and in Siberia, — when we see that the steppes of the south which were deserts in the time of Catherine the Second reckon to-day their five or six million inhabitants, — it is easy to understand how, at a more distant epoch, the basin of the Volga was colonized. As for saying that the inhabitants of New Russia are nothing but Finns and

Russified Turks, one might as well pretend that the thirty or forty millions of North America are Red-skins who have learnt English and embraced Protestantism.

We must recognize that the Russian, almost as much as the Anglo-Saxon, has the instinct which drives men to emigrate and found colonies. The Russians do in the far East of Europe what the Anglo-Saxons do in the far West of America. They belong to one of the great races of pioneers and backwoodsmen. All the history of the Russian people, from the foundation of Moscow, is that of their advance into the forest, into the Black Land, into the prairie. The Russian has his trappers and settlers in the Cossacks of the Dnieper, Don, and Terek ; in the tireless fur-hunters of Siberia ; in the gold-diggers of the Ural and the Altai ; in the adventurous monks who ever lead the way, founding in regions always more distant, a monastery which is to be the centre of a town ; lastly, in the Raskolniki, or Dissenters, Russian Puritans or Mormons, who are persecuted by laws human and divine, and seek from forest to forest the Jerusalem of their dreams. The level plains of Russia naturally tempted men to migration. The mountain keeps her own, the mountain calls her wanderers to return ; while the steppe, stretching away to the dimmest horizon, invites you to advance, to ride at adventure, to "go where the eyes glance."

The flat and monotonous soil has no hold on its inhabitants ; they will find as bare a landscape anywhere. As for their hovel, how can they care for that, — it is burned down so often ? The Western expression, the "ancestral roof," has no meaning for the Russian peasant. The native of Great Russia, accustomed to live on little, and endure the extremes of heat and cold, was born to brave the dangers and privations of the emigrant's life. With his crucifix, his axe in his belt, and his boots slung behind his back, he will go to the end of the Eastern world. However weak may be the infusion of the Russian element in an Asiatic population, it cannot transmute itself nor disappear, — it must become the dominant power.

History has helped to make this movement irresistible. When the Russian took refuge in Suzdal, he was compelled to clear and cultivate the very worst land of his future domain, for the Black Land was then overrun by nomads. How could he escape the temptation to go and look in the south for more fertile soil which without labor or manure would yield four times as great a harvest? Villages and whole cantons in Muscovy have been known to empty themselves in a moment, the peasants marching in a body, as in the old times of the invasions, towards the "Black Soil," the "Warm Soil" of the south. Government and the landholders were obliged to use the most terrible means to stop these migrations of the husbandmen. Without these repressive measures the steppes would have been colonized two centuries earlier than they actually were. The report that the Tsar authorized emigration, — a forged ukas, a rumor, — anything was enough to uproot whole peoples from the soil. The peasant's passion for wandering explains the development of Cossack life in the plains of the south; it explains the legislation which from the beginning of the sixteenth century chained the serf to the glebe and bound him to the soil. In the thirteenth century, on the other hand, the peasant was free. His prince encouraged him to emigrate, and hence came the colonization of Eastern Russia.

The Russian race, it is true, has the faculty of absorbing certain aboriginal stocks. The Little Russians assimilated the remnants of Turkish tribes, the Great Russians swallowed up the Finnish nations of the East. There must, however, be no religious barrier between the conquerors and the conquered, for the Tchud, while still heathen, is easily assimilated; but once converted to Islamism, he is a refractory element that can scarcely be brought to order. A baptized Tchuvash inevitably becomes a Russian, a circumcised Tchuvash inevitably becomes a Tatar. We have seen the Ves, the Muroma, the Meria, disappear without leaving a trace; the Tchuvashi, the Mordva, the Tcheremisa,

become more Russian every day. The successive stages, and the steps which lead to the accomplishment of this change, were lately observed by Mr. Wallace, an English traveller:—

“During my wanderings in these northern provinces I have found villages in every stage of Russification. In one everything seemed thoroughly Finnish: the inhabitants had a reddish-olive skin, very high cheek-bones, obliquely set eyes, and a peculiar costume; none of the women and very few of the men could understand Russian, and any Russian who visited the place was regarded as a foreigner. In a second there were already some Russian inhabitants; the others had lost something of their pure Finnish type, many of the men had discarded the old costume and spoke Russian fluently, and a Russian visitor was no longer shunned. In a third the Finnish type was still further weakened; all the men spoke Russian, and nearly all the women understood it; the old male costume had entirely disappeared, and the old female costume was rapidly following it, and the intermarriage with the Russian population was no longer rare. In a fourth intermarriage had almost completely done its work, and the old Finnish element could be detected merely in certain peculiarities of physiognomy and accent.”

The density and resisting power of these ancient peoples, scattered over such immense spaces of the continent, must have been comparatively slight, while the Russian emigrants came on in vast waves, or stole in like the constant rise of the tide. The aborigines must often have recoiled and concentrated their forces, thus leaving room and verge for the pure Slavonic element. The more or less considerable mixture of races, on the other hand, cannot but have influenced the physical type, character, and powers of the Great Russian in a peculiar way. The bright Slavonic nature, when blended with tribes of a duller cast, gained in strength and weight what it lost in vivacity. Hence, of all the Slavonic peoples, the Great Russian alone has been able to create and to maintain, in face of every obstacle, a vast and durable empire.

## CHAPTER III.

### PRIMITIVE RUSSIA: THE SLAVS.

RELIGION OF THE SLAVS. — FUNERAL RITES. — DOMESTIC AND POLITICAL CUSTOMS: THE FAMILY; THE MIR, OR COMMUNE; THE VOLOST, OR CANTON; THE TRIBE. — TOWNS. — INDUSTRY. — AGRICULTURE.

---

#### RELIGION OF THE SLAVS. — FUNERAL RITES.

THE religion of the Russian Slavs, like that of all Aryan races, was founded on nature and its phenomena. It was a pantheism which, as its original meaning was lost, necessarily became a polytheism. Just as the Homeric deities were preceded by the gods of Hesiod, Ouranos and Demeter, or Heaven and Earth, so the most ancient gods of the Russian Slavs seem to have been Svarog, the heaven, and “our mother, the dank earth.” Then new conceptions appeared in the foreground in the historic period. Ancient poets and chroniclers, the Song of Igor, and Nestor, have preserved to us the names of Dazh-Bog, god of the sun, father of nature; Volos, a solar deity, and, like the Greek Apollo, inspirer of poets and protector of flocks; Perun, god of thunder, another personification of the Sun at war with the Cloud; Stribog, the Russian Æolus, father of winds, protector of warriors; Khors, a solar god; Semargl and Mokosh, whose attributes are unknown. In some of the early hymns they sing of Kupalo or Iarilo, god of the summer sun, and Did-Lado, goddess of fecundity. In the epic songs are celebrated Sviatogor, the giant-hero, whose weight the earth can scarcely bear; Mikula Selianinovitch, the good laborer, a kind of Slav Triptolemus, the divine

personification of the race's passionate love of agriculture, striking with the iron share of his plough the stones of the furrow, with a noise that is heard three days' journey off; Volga Vseslavitch, a Proteus who can take all manner of shapes; Polkan, a centaur; Dunaï, Don Ivanovitch, Dnieper Korolevitch, who are rivers; then a series of heroes, conquerors of dragons like Ilia of Murom, who seem to be solar gods degraded to the rank of paladins. In the stories which beguile the village evening assemblies, appear Morena, goddess of death; Koshtchei and Moroz, personifications of the bitter winter weather; Baba-Yaga, an ogress who lives on the edge of the forest, in a hut built so as to turn with the wind like a weathercock; and the King of the Sea, who entices sailors to his watery palaces. Popular superstition continues to people nature with good and bad spirits: the Rusalki, water sprites; Vodianoï, river genii; the Lieshii and the Liesnik, forest demons; the Domovoï, the brownie of the domestic hearth; and the Vampires, ghosts who steal by night from their tombs, and suck the blood of the living during their sleep.

Since Mythology reproduces under so many forms the struggle of the heroes of the light with the monsters of darkness, it is possible that it admitted a bad principle at variance with a good principle, a malicious god, of whom Morena, Koshtchei, Baba-Yaga, the dragon, the mountain-serpent, are only types. We cannot find any positive confirmation of this hypothesis, as far as the Russian Slavs are concerned, but Helmold asserts that the Baltic Slavs recognize Bieli-Bog, the White God, and Tchernobog, the Black God.

The Russians seem to have had neither temples nor priests in the proper sense of the word. They erected rude idols on the hills, and venerated the oak consecrated to Perun; the leaders of the people offered the sacrifices. They also had sorcerers, or magicians, analogous to the Tatar Shamans, whose counsels appear to have had great weight.

It has been the study of the Russian church to combat

paganism by purifying the superstitions it cannot uproot. It has turned to account any similarity in names or symbols. It has been able to honor Saint Dmitri and Saint Juri, the slayers of dragons ; Saint John, who thunders in the spring ; Saint Elias, who recalls Ilia of Murom ; Saint Blaise, or Vlaise, who has succeeded to Volos as guardian of the flocks ; Saint Nikolai, or Mikula, patron of laborers, like Mikula Selianinovitch ; Saint Kozma, or Kuzma, protector of blacksmiths, who has taken the place of Kuznets, the mysterious blacksmith in the mountains of the north, the forger of the destinies of man. In some popular songs the Virgin Mary replaces Did-Lado, and then Saint John succeeds to Perun or Iarilo. Who can fail to recognize the myth of the spring and the fruitful rains accompanied by thunder, in this White Russian song that is repeated at the festival of Saint John ? " John and Mary — bathed on the hill, — while John bathed — the earth shook, — while Mary bathed — the earth germinated." The Church took care to consecrate to the Saints of its calendar or to purify by holy rites the sacred trees and mysterious wells to which crowds of pilgrims continued to flock.

Russian Slavs certainly had visions of another life, but, like all primitive peoples, they looked forward to a life which was gross and material. In the seventh century among the Vends, German Slavs, women refused to survive their husbands, and burned themselves on their funeral pile. This ancient Aryan custom must have been in vigor among the Russian Slavs at an equally early epoch. The Arabic writer, Ibn-Foszlan, gives an account of the Russian funeral rites which he himself witnessed in the ninth century. For ten days the friends of the deceased bewailed him, and intoxicated themselves over his corpse. Then the men-servants were asked which of them would be buried with his master. One of them replied in the affirmative, and was instantly strangled. The same question was also put to the women-servants, one of whom like-

wise devoted herself. She was then washed, adorned, and treated like a princess, and did nothing but drink and sing. On the appointed day the dead man was laid in a boat, with part of his arms and his garments. The man-servant was slain with the favorite horse and other domestic animals, and was laid in the boat, to which the young girl was then led. She took off her jewels, and with a glass of kvas in her hand sang a song that she would only too willingly have prolonged. "All at once," says the eyewitness, "the old woman who accompanied her, and whom they called the angel of death, ordered her to drink quickly, and to enter into the cabin of the boat, where lay the dead body of her master. At these words she changed color, and, as she made some difficulties about entering, the old woman seized her by the hair, dragged her in, and entered with her. The men immediately began to beat their shields with clubs, to prevent the other girls from hearing the cries of their companion, which might prevent them from one day dying for their masters." While the funeral pile was blazing, one of the Russians said to our narrator, "You Arabs are fools; you hide in the earth the man you have loved best, and there he becomes the prey of worms. We, on the contrary, burn him up in the twinkling of an eye, that he may the quicker enter paradise." Nestor asserts that the same rite prevailed among the Russian Slavs. The excavations made in a great number of barrows or funeral mounds confirm his testimony. The discoveries recently made in the tombs of Novgorod by M. Ivanovski prove that the Slavs of Ilmen had preserved or adopted the custom of burying their dead. In these tombs are found a great quantity of arms, instruments, jewels, animals, bones, and grains of wheat; from which we may conclude that the Russian Slavs expected the future life to be an exact continuation of the present one, and that they surrounded the dead with all the objects that here contributed to his happiness. The examination of the human bones preserved in the barrows also con-

firms the historical accounts, and proves that servants and female slaves were sacrificed over the corpse.

DOMESTIC AND POLITICAL CUSTOMS: THE FAMILY; THE MIR, OR COMMUNE; THE VOLOST, OR CANTON; THE TRIBE.

The Slav family was founded on the patriarchal principle. The father was the absolute head, and after his death the power passed to the eldest of the members composing it; first, to the brothers of the deceased; if he had any under his care, then successively to his sons, beginning with the eldest. The chief had the same rights over the women who entered his family by marriage as over its natural members.

Their domestic manners seem to have been very barbarous. Nevertheless the monk Nestor may be suspected of exaggeration wherever he describes the condition of pagan Russia, which baptism was to regenerate. There is no exception to this exaggerated censure, but in the case of the Polians, whose good qualities he extols. "The Drevliané," he tells us, "lived after the manner of wild beasts. They cut each other's throats, ate impure food, declined all marriage-ties; they ravished and stole young girls who came for water to the fountains. . . . The Radimitchi, the Viatitchi, the Severiané, lived like wild animals in the forests, were fed on all sorts of filth, and spoke of all kinds of shameful things in the presence of their sisters-in-law and relatives. . . . They captured women, who were willing parties to the transaction, and often they would take two or three at a time."

The charges which Nestor chiefly urges against the Slavs are the capture of women and polygamy. This latter charge is completely established; as to the capture, it might be symbolical. In the text quoted above we see the women "came" to the fountain, and that they were parties to the transaction. This capture, if we take it for a simple ceremony, may imply,

in very early times, the existence of abduction by violence. To-day the marriage-customs of Russia still preserve traces of these ancient usages. There is still a pretended capture of the woman; a custom to be found in the Germany of the eighth century, where the very name of marriage has a pointed signification, — *Bräutlaufft*, the flight of the bride. The songs at Russian weddings also imply the existence of a time when the maiden was bought. One of these songs accuses the kindred of avarice: "Thy brother — the accursed Tatar — has sold his sister for a piece of silver."

Some historians have thought, with Karamsin, that the Slavs held women in less consideration than the Germans did, and in fact "treated them as slaves." We may doubt if there was so great a difference between the two nations. The chronicles speak of Luibed, sister of Kii, the fabulous founder of Kief, dividing her paternal inheritance with her brothers, and of Princess Olga becoming heir and avenger of her husband and guardian of his son. The epic songs show us many bold heroines side by side with the heroes of the Kievan cycle, and mothers of heroes surrounded with wonderful luxury and extraordinary honors. The excavations of the barrows show us skeletons of women richly ornamented with jewels.

The commune, or *mir*, was only the expansion of the family; it was subject to the authority of the elders of each household, who assembled in a council, or *vetché*. The village lands were held in common by all the members of the association; the individual possessed only his harvest, and the *dvor*, or enclosure, immediately surrounding his house. This primitive condition of property, existing in Russia up to the present day, was once common to all European peoples.

The communes nearest together formed a group called *volost* or *pagost*, the canton or parish. The *volost* was governed by a council formed of the elders of the communes: one of these elders, either by hereditary right, age, or election, was recognized as more powerful than the rest, and became chief

of the canton. His authority seems much to have resembled that of Ulysses over the numerous kings of little Ithaca. In times of danger the cantons of the same tribe could elect a temporary head, but they refused to submit to a general and permanent ruler. The Emperor Maurice had already observed that passion for liberty among the Slavs which made them detest all sovereignty. The Russian Slavs easily rose from the idea of a commune to that of a canton, with a chief chosen from the elders of the families; in an emergency they might permit a temporary confederation of all the cantons of one tribe, but we never find that there was a prince of the Severiané, Poliané, or Radimitchi. The idea of tribal unity was absolutely foreign to this race, and still more foreign was the idea of the unity of the Russian nation. The ideas of government and of the state had to come to them from without.

#### TOWNS.—INDUSTRY.—AGRICULTURE.

Nestor declares that the Russian Slavs, for the most part, "lived in forests like the wild beasts." Karamsin and Schloezer have concluded from this that they had no towns. But there exist a number of monuments in Russia which have long puzzled archæologists. These are enclosures formed by the earth being thrown up like ruined fortifications, and such are found invariably on the steep bank of a watercourse or on a small hill. M. Samokvasof, who has explored this very country of the Severiané, who according to Nestor lived entirely in forests, has been able to prove that these mounds are the remains of the primitive towns of Russia. In the government of Tchernigof alone, M. Samokvasof has counted one hundred and sixty; in that of Kursk, fifty. We may calculate from this that there are thousands of them in Russia, and that every canton had at least one. About these earth enclosures, which were capped by wooden palisades or hedges of osier, and were the common means of defence for each group of fami-

lies, we usually find grouped, as in a cemetery, the funeral mounds.

The excavations made, either in the barrows or in the soil of these village mounds, have shown us the Slavs were more civilized than Nestor supposed. Vessels of pottery, tolerably well designed, iron and bronze, gold and silver objects, glass, false pearls, and bells prove that they had a certain amount of trade, and a fairly extensive commerce, particularly with Asia. Oriental coins have been dug up, dating from six hundred and ninety-nine, or near two hundred years before the arrival of the Variagi, or Varangians. There are a great number of these coins in the country. Near Novgorod a vase was discovered, containing about seven thousand rubles' worth of this early money. The fame of the swords made by the Russian Slavs extended to Arabia. Nestor relates that the Khazarui imposed a tribute of swords on the Poliané. When the latter brought the arms to the Khazarui, they were afraid, and said to their princes, "Our swords have only one edge, — these have two. We tremble lest one day this people should levy a tribute on us and other tribes."

Agriculture was the favorite occupation of the Slavs. Nearly all their deities are of an agricultural character. The favorite heroes of their epic cycle, Mikula and Ilia, were the sons of laborers. They had the more liking for field life, as bondage to the glebe was still unknown among them. It has been said that the Germans borrowed the plough from the Slavs, and that the German name of *pflug* is derived from the Slav *plug*. With the wax and honey of their hives, the corn of the Black Land, and the furs of the north, the Russians carried on a great trade. Their dependence upon strangers, together with a sociable instinct, natural to primitive races, made them very hospitable; it was even permitted to steal for the benefit of the unexpected guest. A peaceful race, devoted to liberty, music, and dancing, appears in the idyllic picture painted for us of the early Slavs. The Emperor Maurice, on the contrary,

who had had dealings with all kinds of adventurous tribes, assures us that they were warlike, cruel in battle, full of savage wiles, able to conceal themselves in places where it seemed impossible their bodies could be hidden, or to lie in ambush in streams for hours together, the water over their heads, breathing by means of a reed. Their armor was defective, they had no breastplates, they fought on foot, were naked to the waist, and had for weapons, pikes, large shields, wooden bows, poisoned arrows, and lassos to catch their victims. This sketch specially applies to the invaders of the Roman provinces of the Danube. It is probable that these agricultural races had in general a military organization inferior to that of their Turkish and Scandinavian neighbors who lived by plunder. The imperfection of their political condition, their minute division into clans and cantons, the incessant warfare of canton with canton, delivered them up, defenceless, to their invaders. While the Slavs of the south paid tribute to the Khazarui, the Slavs of Ilmen, exhausted by their divisions, decided on calling in the Variagi, or Varangians. “‘Let us seek,’ they said, ‘a prince who will govern us and reason with us justly.’ Then,” continues Nestor, “the Tchudi,\* the Slavs of Novgorod, the Krivitchi, and other confederate races, said to the Variag princes, ‘Our land is great and fruitful, but it lacks order and justice; come and take possession, and govern us.’”

\* The Tchudi here mentioned are rather Slavs who had colonized the Tchud country about Pskof and Izborsk.

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE VARIAGI: FORMATION OF RUSSIA; THE FIRST EXPEDITIONS AGAINST CONSTANTINOPLE.

862 - 972.

THE NORTHMEN IN RUSSIA: ORIGIN AND CUSTOMS OF THE VARIAGI. — THE FIRST RUSSIAN PRINCES: RURIK, OLEG, IGOR. — EXPEDITIONS AGAINST CONSTANTINOPLE. — OLGA: CHRISTIANITY IN RUSSIA. — SVIATOSLAF. — THE DANUBE DISPUTED BETWEEN THE RUSSIANS AND GREEKS.

---

#### THE NORTHMEN IN RUSSIA: ORIGIN AND CUSTOMS OF THE VARIAGI.

WHO were these Variagi, or Varangians? To what race did they belong? No questions in the early history of Russia are more eagerly debated. After more than a century of controversy, the various views have been reduced to three: —

The Variagi were of Scandinavian origin, and it was they who gave the name of Russia to the Slav countries. A most weighty argument in support of this theory is the large number of Scandinavian names in the list of Variag princes who reigned in Russia. The Emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus, speaking of Russia, makes a distinction between the Slavs and the Russians proper. In his description of the cataracts of the Dnieper, he gives to each the Russian and the Slav name, and these Russian names may nearly all be understood by reference to Scandinavian roots. Luitprand, speaking of the Russians, expresses himself in these terms: "Græci vocant Russos . . . . nos vero Normannos." The Annals of Saint Bertinus say that the Emperor Theophilus recommended some

Russian envoys to Louis le Débonnaire, but he, taking them for Norman spies, threw them into prison. Finally, the first Russian Code of Laws, compiled by Iaroslaf, presents a striking analogy with the Scandinavian laws. The partisans of this opinion place the mother country of the Russians in Sweden, where they point particularly to a spot called *Roslog*, and associations of oarsmen called *Roslagen*. At the present day the Finns call the Swedes *Rootzi*.

The second theory is that the Variagi were Slavs, and came either from the Slav shores of the Baltic, or from some Scandinavian region where the Slavs had founded a colony. The word *Russia* is not of Swedish origin; it is applied very early to the country of the Dnieper. To come from Rus or to go to Rus are expressions to be met with in the ancient documents, and Rus there signifies the country of Kief. Arabic writers give the name of Russians to a nation they consider very numerous, and they mean in this case, not Scandinavians, but indigenous Slavs.

The last theory is that the Variagi were not a nation, but a band of warriors formed of exiled adventurers, some Slavs, others Scandinavians. The partisans of this opinion show us that the Slav and Scandinavian races, from very early times, were in frequent commercial and political relations. The leaders of the band were generally Scandinavian, but part of the soldiers were Slav. This hypothesis, which diminishes the Norman element in the Variagi, serves to explain how the establishment of these adventurers in the country but little affected the Slavs of the Ilmen and the Dnieper. It explains, too, the rapid absorption of the new-comers in the conquered race, an absorption so complete that Rurik's grandson, Sviasluf, bore a Slav name, while his great-grandson, Vladimir, remains in the memory of the people as the type of a Slav prince. Whether the Variagi were pure Scandinavians, or whether they were mingled with Slav adventurers, it seems certain that the former element predominated, and that we may

identify these men from the North with the sea-kings so celebrated in the West during the decay of the Carolings. M. Samokvasof has lately opened, near Tchernigof, the Black tomb containing the bones and arms of an unknown prince who lived in the tenth century, and was probably a Variag. His coat of mail and pointed helmet in all respects resemble the arms of the Norman warriors. The Russian princes that we find in the early miniatures are clothed and armed like the Norman chiefs pictured in the Bayeux tapestry of Queen Matilda. It is therefore not surprising that, in our own age, art has made almost identical representations of Rurik on the monument lately erected at Novgorod, and of William the Conqueror on the monument at Falaise. The Variagi, like the Normans, astonished the nations of the South by their reckless courage and gigantic stature. "They were as tall as palm-trees," said the Arabs. Bold sailors, admirable foot-soldiers, the Variagi differed widely from the mounted and nomad races of Southern Russia, Hungarians, Khazarui, Petchenegi, whose tactics were always Parthian. The Russians, according to Leo the Deacon, who was an eyewitness of the fact, fought in a compact mass, and seemed like a wall of iron, bristling with lances, glittering with shields, from which arose a ceaseless clamor like the waves of the sea, — the famous *bar-ditus*, or *barritus*, of the Germans of Tacitus. A huge shield covered them to their feet, and, when they fought in retreat, they turned this enormous buckler on their backs, and became invulnerable. The fury of battle at last made them beside themselves, like the Bersarks. Never, says the same author, were they seen to surrender. When victory was lost, they stabbed themselves, for they held that those who died by the hand of an enemy were condemned to serve him in another life. The Greeks had for many years greatly admired these heroes worthy of the Edda. Under the name of Ros or Variagi, they formed the body-guard of the emperor, and figured in all the Byzantine armies. In the expedition of

nine hundred and two against Crete, seven hundred Russians took part; four hundred and fifteen in that of Lombardy in nine hundred and twenty-five; five hundred and eighty-four in that of Greece in nine hundred and forty-nine.

The Russian Variagi readily sold their services to foreign nations, to Novgorod as well as to Byzantium. This is one more feature of resemblance with the Normans of France, whom the Greek emperors also employed in their wars against the Saracens of Italy. Sometimes, instead of fighting for others, they made war for themselves. This was the case with the Danes in England, the Normans in Neustria, the descendants of Tancred in Naples and Sicily, the companions of Rurik in Russia. As they were usually a very small number, they blended rapidly with the conquered nations. Thus the descendants of Rollo quickly became Frenchmen, and those of Robert Guiscard, Sicilians. In the Variag bands Slavs were mingled with Scandinavians; but we also know that in the bands of Northmen who ravaged the country of France there was a large number of Gallo-Romans, renegades from Christianity, who thirsted more for pillage and murder than did the Vikings themselves. This mingling of the adventurers and the indigenous race explains the rapidity with which both the Normans of Russia and the Normans of France lost their language, customs, and religion. The Variagi retained one thing only, their military superiority, the habit of obeying the chosen or hereditary chief. Into the Slav anarchy they brought this element of martial order and discipline, without which a state cannot exist. They imposed on the natives the amount of constraint necessary to drag them from their isolation and division into village communities and cantons. The Slavs of the Danube in the same way owe their constitution to a band of Finno-Bulgarian adventurers under Asparukh; the Polish Slavs to the invasion of the Liakhi, or Lekhites; the Tcheki to the Frank Samo, who enabled them to shake off the yoke of the Avars.

The spontaneous appeal of the Slavs to the Variag princes may seem to us strange. We might believe that the annalist, like the old French historians, has tried to disguise the fact of a conquest, by representing that the Slavs submitted voluntarily to the Variagi of Rurik, as the Gauls are supposed to have done to the Franks of Clovis. But in reality there was no conquest, a statement which is proved by the fact that the municipal organization remained intact, that the *Vetché* continued to deliberate by the side of the prince, the local army to fight in conjunction with the band of adventurers. The laws of Iaroslaf established the same indemnification for the murder of either Slav or Variag, while the Merovingian laws recognize a great difference between a Gallo-Roman and a Frank. The defence of the country, the administration of justice, and the collection of the tribute were the special cares of the prince, the last being considered his legitimate reward. He played in the Slav towns a part similar to that of the Italian *podestàs* in the fifteenth century, who were called in to administer justice impartially, or to that of the leaders to whom the cities intrusted their defence.

As early as eight hundred and fifty-nine the Variagi exacted tribute from the Slavs of Ilmen and the Krivitchi, as well as the Tchudi, Ves, and Meriane. The natives had once expelled the Variagi, but, as divisions once more became rife among them, they decided that they needed a strong government, and recalled them in eight hundred and sixty-two. Whether the name *Russia*, or *Rus*, was originally derived from a province of Sweden or from the banks of the Dnieper, the fact remains that with the arrival of the Variagi in Slavonia the true history of Russia commences. It was the one thousandth anniversary of this event that was commemorated at Novgorod in eighteen hundred and sixty-two. With the Variagi the Russian name became famous in Eastern Europe. It was the epoch of brilliant and adventurous expeditions; it was the heroic age of Russia.

The Variagi of Novgorod and Kief are not unworthy mates of the Normans of the West,—the bold conquerors who sought their fortunes from the coasts of England, Sicily, and Syria. They are to be found nearly at the same time under the walls of Constantinople and at the foot of the Caucasus, where they captured the town of Berdaa from the Arabs in nine hundred and forty-four. Nestor, the monk of the Petcherski convent at Kief, whose history extends down to the year eleven hundred and sixteen, adds to his conscientious accounts many legendary tales, which seem like an echo of Scandinavian sagas and early Russian heroic poems. His Annals, which Greek and French authorities enable us to correct, and which are tolerably exact in all essentials, seem at times, like the first books of Livy, to be epic poetry converted into prose.

THE FIRST RUSSIAN PRINCES: RURIK, OLEG, IGOR.—  
EXPEDITIONS AGAINST CONSTANTINOPLE.

At the call of the Slavs, Rurik, Sineus, and Truvor, three Variag brothers, whose Scandinavian names signify the *Peaceful*, the *Victorious*, and the *Faithful*, gathered together “their brothers and their families,” that is, their warriors, or drujina, corresponding to the truste of the Frank kings, crossed the Baltic, and took up their position on the borders of the territory which they were summoned to defend. Rurik, the eldest, established himself on the Lake Ladoga, near which, on the southern side, he founded the city of Ladoga; Sineus, on the White Lake or in the Ves country; Truvor at Izborsk, to hold the Livonians in check. When the two latter died, Rurik established himself at Novgorod, where he built, not a town, as Nestor would have us believe, but a castle. It is thus we must explain the pretended foundation by his orders of Polotsk and of Rostof, which had existed long before the arrival of the Variagi. What he probably did was to trans-

form ancient villages with ramparts of mud into fortresses. Two other Variagi, Askold and Dir, who were not of the family of Rurik, went down to Kief, and reigned over the Poliané. It was they who began the expeditions against Tsargrad, or Byzantium, the queen of cities. With two hundred vessels, says Nestor, they entered the *Sund*, in old Slav *Sudl*, the Bosphorus or the Golden Horn, and besieged Constantinople. But the Patriarch Photius, according to the Byzantine accounts, took the wonder-working robe of Our Lady of Blachernæ, and plunged it in the waves. A fierce tempest instantly arose, and the whole Russian fleet was destroyed.

Rurik's successor was not his son Igor, then a minor, but the eldest member of the family, his fourth brother, the enterprising Oleg. At the head of an army composed of Variagi, Slavs, and Finns he marched to the south, received the submission of Smolensk and Lubetch, and arrived under the walls of Kief. By means of treachery he took Askold and Dir prisoners, and put them to death, observing: "You are neither princes yourselves, nor of the blood of princes; this is the son of Rurik," pointing to Igor. The tomb of Askold is still shown near Kief. Oleg was charmed with his new conquest, and took up his abode there, saying, "Let Kief be the mother of Russian cities." The Variag chief held communication both with the Baltic and the Black Sea by means of Novgorod, Smolensk, and Kief. He subdued the Novgorodians, the Krivitchi, the Meria, the Drevliané, the Severiané, the Poliané, the Radimitchi, and thus united nearly all the Russian tribes under his sceptre. It was about this time that the Hungarians crossed the Dnieper near Kief, and invaded Pannonia. The Magyar chronicles speak of their having defeated Oleg; Nestor is silent on the subject.

In nine hundred and seven Oleg collected a large army from among the tributary races, equipped two thousand boats, and prepared to invade Tsargrad by land and sea. Russian

legends have embellished this expedition with many wonderful details. Oleg built wheels to his vessels, and spread their sails; blown by the wind, they reached the gates of the city. Leo the Sixth, the Philosopher, in fright, agreed to pay tribute, but the Greeks tried to get rid of the Russians by offering them poisoned food. Oleg divined their perfidy. He imposed a heavy contribution, a commercial treaty advantageous to the Russians, and suspended his shield on the Golden Door.

To his subjects Oleg was more than a hero. Terror-stricken by his wisdom, this "foolish and idolatrous people" looked on him as a sorcerer. In the Scandinavian sagas we find many instances of chiefs, such as Odin, Gylf, and Raude, being at the same time great warriors and great magicians. It is strange that neither Greek, Frank, nor Venetian historians allude to this campaign. Nestor cites the names of the Russian envoys who negotiated the peace, and gives the text of the treaty.

A magician had predicted to Oleg that his favorite horse would cause his death. It was kept at a distance from him, and when, five years after, the animal died in nine hundred and twelve, he insisted on being taken to see its body, as a triumph over the ignorance and imposture of the sorcerers. But from the skull of the horse issued a serpent which inflicted a mortal sting on the foot of the hero.

Igor led a third expedition against Tsargrad. The Dnieper conducted, as it were of its own will, the Russian flotilla to the seas of Greece. Igor had ten thousand vessels according to the Greek historians, one thousand according to the more probable calculation of Luitprand. This would allow four hundred thousand men in the first case, and only forty thousand in the second. Instead of attacking the town, he cruelly ravaged the Greek provinces. The Byzantine admirals and generals united, and destroyed the Russian army in a series of engagements by the aid of Greek fire. Nestor has not copied the numerous details which the Byzantine historians

give of this battle, but we have the evidence of Luitprand, bishop of Cremona, derived from his father-in-law, the ambassador of the King of Italy at Constantinople, who saw with his own eyes the defeat of Igor, and was present at the sacrifice of prisoners, beheaded by order of the Emperor Romanus Lecapenus. In nine hundred and forty-four Igor secured the help of the formidable Petchenegi, and organized an expedition to avenge his defeat. The Greek emperor, now seriously alarmed, offered to pay tribute, and signed a new commercial treaty, the text of which is given by Nestor. Byzantine and Western writers do not mention this second expedition of Igor. On his return from Russia, in nine hundred and forty-five, he was assassinated by the Drevliané, from whom he had tried to exact tribute. Leo the Deacon, a Greek writer, says he was torn in pieces by means of two young trees, bent forcibly to the earth, and then allowed to take their natural direction.

#### OLGA: CHRISTIANITY IN RUSSIA.

Olga, Igor's widow, assumed the regency in the name of her son Sviatoslaf, then a minor. Her first care was to revenge herself on the Drevliané. In Nestor's account it is impossible to distinguish between the history and the epic. The Russian chronicler relates in detail how the Drevliané sent two deputations to Olga to appease her, and to offer her the hand of their prince, and how she disposed of them by treachery, burying some alive, and causing others to be stifled in a bathing-house. Next, says Nestor, she besieged their city Korosten, and offered them peace on payment of a tribute of three pigeons and three sparrows for each house. Lighted tow was tied to the tails of the birds, and they were set free. They flew straight home to the wooden town, where the barns and thatched roofs instantly took fire. Lastly the legend relates that Olga massacred part of the inhabitants of Korosten and reduced the rest to slavery.

This vindictive Scandinavian woman, in spite of all, was destined to be the first apostle of Russia. Nestor relates that she went to Tsargrad to the Emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus, astonished him by the strength and adroitness of her character, and was baptized under the name of Helen, the Greek Tsar being her godfather. Only two facts in Nestor's account are historical, namely, the reception of Olga at the imperial palace of Constantinople, related in detail in the "Book of Ceremonies," and perhaps her baptism. If the Greek historians do not mention it in the contemporary chronicles, it is because they did not perceive the important consequences of this event. If writers allude to it in the chronicles of the eleventh and twelfth centuries, it is because the consequences of the event had by that time been completely developed.

Even in Russia Olga's conversion passed almost unnoticed. Christianity had made but little progress in that country. No doubt since Cyril and Methodius had invented the Slavonic alphabet, and translated the Holy Books for the Bulgarians, Christianity, which had already triumphed over some Slav peoples, was being handed on from one to the other. Some missions were already established in Russia. The Byzantines say, that, alarmed by the miraculous defeat of Askold and Dir, and seized with a respectful awe of the Christian talismans of the Patriarch Photius, the Russians "sent envoys to Constantinople to ask for baptism." The Emperor Basil, the Macedonian, then gave them an archbishop, who performed a miracle before them. He threw a copy of the Gospels into a brazier, and drew it out unharmed. According to this account, Askold was the first Russian prince who became a Christian. Hence the worship rendered to his tomb and memory. In the list of Byzantine Eparchies under Leo the Sixth, the Bishopric of Russia figures, of which no doubt Kief was the metropolis. These missions, however, do not seem to have been very successful; at the time of the treaty concluded between Oleg and Leo the Sixth, the Russians still swore by their swords, by Volos,

and by Perun. In the treaty concluded by Igor, when the Russians swore at Kief before the emperor's envoy, to confirm it, some ascended the hill of Perun and performed the vows in the ancient way; others went to the chapel of Saint Elias, and laid their hand on the Gospel. There existed then, in the "mother of Russian cities," a Christian community, though a very weak one, if it is true that Olga refused to be baptized in Kief, "for fear of the pagans." The mass of warriors kept Christianity at a distance. In their expeditions against the Byzantine provinces, we find them attacking monasteries and churches by preference, giving them up to the flames, and finding a peculiar pleasure in torturing priests and monks by driving nails into their heads. It was thus that the Normans of France, the fanatics of Odinism, treated the ecclesiastics with refinements of cruelty, boasting that they "sang them the Mass of lances." "When one of the soldiers of the Grand Prince wished to become a convert," says Nestor, "he was not prevented, but only laughed at." The efforts of Olga for the conversion of her son Sviatoslaf, who had assumed the reins of government on reaching his majority, were fruitless. He did not like to expose himself to the ridicule of his soldiers by embracing a new faith. "My men will mock me," he replied to the prayers of his mother. "And often," Nestor affirms sadly, "he became furious with her." Olga vainly assured him that if he would be baptized, all his subjects would soon follow his example. The public mind was not yet in a condition for the example of the prince to be all-powerful. The Christian Olga, canonized by the Church, "the first Russian who mounted to the heavenly kingdom," remained an exception, little noticed or thought of in the midst of the pagan aristocracy.

**SVIATOSLAF. — THE DANUBE DISPUTED BETWEEN THE  
RUSSIANS AND GREEKS.**

The reign of Sviatoslaf, from nine hundred and sixty-four until nine hundred and seventy-two, though short, was sig-

nalized by two memorable events : the defeat of the Khazarui, and the great war against the Byzantine Empire for the possession of Bulgaria. About the former event the annalist gives few details ; but Sviatoslaf must have gained a complete victory, if it be true that he took the White City, capital of the Khazar Empire on the Don, and that he exacted tribute from the Ias or Osetinui of the Caucasus, and the Kassogans or Tcherkesui. The Russians had no reason to rejoice in their success, for the decline of the Khazarui, who were a civilized people, favored the progress of the Petchenegi, the most ferocious of all barbarians. The Arabs spoke of them as wild beasts, and Matthew of Edessa calls them "a greedy people, devouring the bodies of men, corrupt and impure, bloody and cruel beasts." During one of the frequent absences of Sviatoslaf, the Petchenegi suddenly appeared under the walls of Kief, where the mother and children of the Grand Prince had taken refuge, and reduced it to the last extremity. The bold manœuvre of a voïevod saved the Kievans, who were starving. On his return to his capital Sviatoslaf was horrified at the risks it had encountered. It was at the hands of these same Petchenegi that he was one day to perish.

On the subject of the Bulgarian war Nestor's narrative is confused and incomplete. He is silent about the Russian defeats, and legend mixes largely with historical facts. Nestor relates that the Greeks wished to ascertain what sort of man Sviatoslaf was. They sent him gifts of gold and fine tissues, but the Grand Prince looked on them with disdain, and said to his soldiers, "Take them away." Then they sent him a sword and other weapons, and the hero seized them and kissed them enthusiastically. The Greeks were afraid, and said, "This must be a fierce man, since he despises wealth and accepts a sword for tribute." Happily the very minute account of Leo the Deacon appears both exact and impartial, and we are enabled to follow this campaign, in which a chief of the growing Russian Empire crosses that Danube which

the Russian armies are not again to see till the reign of Catherine the Second and Nicholas. The Greek emperor, Nicephorus Phocas, in order to avenge himself on Peter the Tsar of Bulgaria, had recourse to the dangerous expedient so frequent in Byzantine policy. He called in the barbarians. A certain Kalokuir was sent as envoy to Sviatoslaf with a sufficient sum of money to allow him to take the field. It was thus that these two Slav races — who owed their constitutions, one to the Variag drujina of Rurik, the other to the Turanian drujina of Asparukh — were brought into conflict by Greek diplomacy. Sviatoslaf descended on Bulgaria with a thoroughly equipped fleet, reassured the Byzantines by bringing sixty thousand men to their assistance, took Pereiaslaf, the Bulgarian capital, and all their fortresses.

The Tsar Peter yielded to his evil destiny at the moment the Petchenegi were besieging Kief. This lesson was, however, lost on Sviatoslaf. He was overjoyed at his conquest, and wished to transport his capital to Pereiaslaf on the Danube, a city distinct from Pereiaslaf, or Prislaf, the modern Eski-Stambul, which was the capital of the Bulgarians in the tenth century. "This place," he said to his mother, "is the central point of my possessions, and abounds in wealth. From Greece come precious stuffs, wine, gold, and all kinds of fruit; from the country of the Tcheki and Hungarians, horses and silver; from Russia, furs, honey, wax, and slaves." This resolution of Sviatoslaf was fraught with immense danger to the Greek Empire. If Byzantium feared the neighborhood of an enfeebled Bulgaria, how was it to resist a power that extended from the Baltic to the Balkans, and which could add to the Bulgarian legions, disciplined after the Roman fashion by the Tsar Simeon, the Variagi of Scandinavia, the Russian Slavs, the Finnish hordes of the Ves, Tchudi, and Meria, and even the light cavalry of the Petchenegi?

The formation of a great Slav Empire so close to Constantinople would have been rendered more formidable by the

ethnographical constitution of the peninsula. Ancient Thrace and ancient Macedon were peopled by Slav tribes, some of whom were offshoots from the Russian tribes; for example, Dregovitchi and Smolens were to be found there as much as at Minsk and Smolensk. Thessaly, Attica, and the Peloponnesos were invaded by these emigrants, who became the subjects of the Greek Empire. The famous mountain Taygetus, in Laconia, was inhabited by two Slav tribes, still unsubdued, — the Milingians and the Ezerites. We must not forget that Bulgaria extended as far as the Okhrid, and that the ancient provinces, under the names of Kroatia, Servia, and Dalmatia, had become almost entirely Slav. This great race extended then almost unbroken from the Peloponnesos, already called by the Slav name of Morea, to Novgorod. Thus, if the town of Pereiaslaf on the Danube had really become the centre of the Russian dominions, according to the wish of Sviatoslaf, the Greek race and the Roman domination in the Balkan peninsula would speedily have come to an end. The Greek emperors had been able to resist Askold, Oleg, and Igor. The Russians of their day had lived far from the empire, and were obliged to go by water, which limited greatly the number of their armies. With their canoes hollowed out of the trunks of trees, such as are still to be seen in the Russian villages, they had to descend the Dnieper, disembark at each of the seven cataracts, or rapids, carry their boats around till they could re-embark farther on, and all the while give battle to the Petchenegi, who were in ambush behind the rocks. After they had escaped these perils, they had to brave with their frail skiffs the tempests of the Black Sea, the powerful Roman galleys manned by the best sailors of the East, and the mysterious Greek fire which filled them with terror. Few reached the walls of Constantinople, and their defeat was certain. Now, on the contrary, masters of the Danube, masters of the land-route, they could bring against Constantinople all the hordes of Scythia.

Fortunately for the Greek Empire, it then chanced to be renewing its youth. A series of great captains succeeded each other on this tottering throne. In John Zimisces the Russian prince was to find an adversary worthy of him. Sviatoslaf, recalled to Bulgaria, had been obliged to reconquer it. It was at this moment that Zimisces summoned him to execute the conditions of the treaty concluded with his predecessor; that is, to evacuate the country. Sviatoslaf, who had just taken Philippopolis and exterminated the inhabitants, replied haughtily that he hoped soon to be at Constantinople. Zimisces then began his preparations. In the beginning of March, nine hundred and seventy-two, he despatched a fleet to the north of the Danube, and himself marched to Adrianople. He surprised the Russians, who had not expected him so soon, in the defiles of the Balkans; appeared suddenly under the walls of Pereiaslaf, defeated a body of many thousand Russians, and obliged them to retire within the walls; then he gave the order for the assault, and took the town by escalade. Eight thousand Russians shut up in the royal castle made a desperate resistance, refused to surrender, and perished in the flames.

When the news of this disaster reached Sviatoslaf, he advanced with the greater part of his army to meet the emperor, and came up with him near Dorostol in Silistria. The Greek historians make the Russian army to have consisted of at least sixty thousand men; Nestor reckons only ten thousand. Here a bloody battle took place, and twelve times victory appeared to shift from one side to the other. The solidity of the Russian infantry defied the charges of the mail-clad cavalry. At last they gave way under a desperate charge, and fell back on Dorostol. There they were besieged by the emperor, and displayed a wild courage in their sallies. Even their women, like the ancient Amazons, or the heroines of the Scandinavian sagas or Russian songs, took part in the combat. The Russians slew themselves rather than ask for

mercy. The night following an action they were seen to leave the town by moonlight to burn their dead. On their ashes they sacrificed prisoners of war, and drowned cocks and little children in the Danube. Provisions failed, and Sviatoslaf stole out one stormy night with canoes manned by two thousand warriors, rowed round the Greek fleet, collected millet and corn in the neighboring villages, and, falling suddenly on the Greeks, re-entered the town victoriously. Zimisce then took measures to prevent any boat from getting out. This epic siege was signalized by some strange combats. One of the bravest of the Russian chiefs was slain by Apemas, a baptized Arab, son of an Emir of Crete, one of Zimisce's body-guard.

Sviatoslaf resolved to make one last effort, and issued from the town with all his forces. Before the battle Zimisce proposed to Sviatoslaf to terminate the war by a duel between themselves. It was the barbarian who refused: "I know better than my enemy what I have to do," said Sviatoslaf. "If he is weary of life, there are a thousand means by which he can end his days." This battle was as obstinate and bloody as the former. Sviatoslaf came near being slain by Apemas. At last the Russians gave way, leaving on the battle-field, says Leo the Deacon, fifteen thousand five hundred dead and twenty thousand shields. The survivors retired into the town. They were forced to treat. Zimisce allowed them to retire from Bulgaria, and they swore by Perun and Volos never again to invade the empire, but to help to defend it against all enemies. If they broke their vows, might they "become as yellow as gold, and perish by their own arms." Nestor gives us the text of this convention, which was really a capitulation, and confirms the account of the Greek historians rather than his own. These relate that Zimisce sent deputies to the Petchenegi to beg them to grant a free passage to the remnant of the Russian army. It is certain that the barbarians awaited the Russians at the Cataracts, or Rapids, of the

Dnieper. They killed Sviatoslaf, cut off his head, and his skull was used by their prince, Kuria, as a drinking-cup. Sviatoslaf was, in spite of his Slav name, the very type of a Variag prince of the intrepid, wily, and ambitious Northmen. Nestor boasts his good faith. When he wished to make war on a people, he sent to warn them. "I am coming against you," he would say.

After the surrender of Dorostol, he had an interview with his enemy Zimisce. Leo the Deacon profits by the occasion to give us his portrait. The emperor being on horseback by the shore, Sviatoslaf approached him by boat, handling the oar like his companions. He was of middle height, but very robust; he had a wide chest, a thick neck, blue eyes, thick eyebrows, a flat nose, long mustaches, a thin beard, and a tuft of hair on his shaven head as a mark of his nobility. He wore a gold ring in one of his ears, ornamented with a ruby and two pearls. Let us notice this portrait; we shall have to search far into Russian annals to find another. Between the description given by Leo the Deacon and those of the Russian annalists there is the same difference as between the image of a saint and an authentic likeness.

## CHAPTER V.

### THE CLOVIS AND CHARLEMAGNE OF THE RUSSIANS, SAINT VLADIMIR AND IAROSLAF THE GREAT.

972 - 1054.

VLADIMIR (972-1015).—CONVERSION OF THE RUSSIANS.—IAROSLAF THE GREAT (1016-1054).—UNION OF RUSSIA.—SPLENDOR OF KIEF.—VARIAG-RUSSIAN SOCIETY AT THE TIME OF IAROSLAF.—PROGRESS OF CHRISTIANITY.—SOCIAL, POLITICAL, LITERARY, AND ARTISTIC RESULTS.

---

#### VLADIMIR.—CONVERSION OF THE RUSSIANS.

THE Slav tribes owe their organization to a twofold conquest,—a military conquest which came from the North, an ecclesiastical conquest which came from the South. The Variagi sent them chiefs of war, who welded their scattered clans into a nation; the Byzantines sent missionaries, who united the Slavs among themselves and to their civilized neighbors by the bond of a common religion.

The man destined to conclude the work of propagandism begun by Olga did not at first seem fitted for this great task. Vladimir, like Clovis, was at first nothing but a barbarian,—wily, voluptuous, and bloody. Only while Clovis after his baptism is not perceptibly better than he was before, and becomes the assassin of his royal Frankish relations, the Russian annalist seems to wish to establish a contrast between the life led by Vladimir prior to his conversion and the life he led after it. Sviatoslaf left three sons: Iaropolk at Kief, Oleg, ruler of the Drevliané, Vladimir at Novgorod. In the civil

wars which followed, and which recall the bloody Merovingian anarchy, Iaropolk slew Oleg, and in his turn died by the hand of Vladimir. He fell in love with Rogneda, Iaropolk's betrothed, and demanded her in marriage from the Variag Rogvolod, who ruled over Polotsk. The princess answered that she would never marry the son of a slave, in allusion to Vladimir's mother having been a servant, though he himself had always been treated by his father as his brothers' equal. Maddened by this insult, Vladimir sacked Polotsk, killed Rogvolod and his two sons, and forced Rogneda to marry him. After the murder of Iaropolk, Vladimir also took the wife whom Iaropolk had left pregnant, a beautiful Greek nun, captured in an expedition against Byzantium. These two women he had deprived, one of her husband, the other of her father and brothers. He had, besides, a Bohemian and a Bulgarian wife, and another, all of whom bore him sons. Finally this bastard, this "son of a slave," was so abandoned in his profligacy, that he kept three hundred concubines at Vuishegorod, three hundred at Bielgorod, near Kief, and two hundred at Berestof. Lusting no less after war and plunder, he reconquered Red Russia from the Poles, quelled a revolt of the Viatitchi and Radimitchi, and exacted tribute from the Lithuanian Iatvagi and Livonian tribes of Letts, or Finns.

This sensual and passionate barbarian's soul was troubled, notwithstanding, by religious aspirations. At first he turned to the Slav gods, and his reign was inaugurated by a new growth of paganism. On the high sandy cliffs of Kief, which tower above the Dnieper, he erected idols; among them one of Perun, with a head of silver and a beard of gold. Two Variagi, father and son, both Christians, were stabbed at the feet of Perun. But the day of the ancient gods was passed; Vladimir was undergoing the religious crisis in which all Russia labored. He felt that he must have another form of belief; so, according to the testimony of Nestor, he took it into his

head, like the Japanese of to-day, to institute a search after the best religion. His ambassadors forthwith visited Mussulmans, Jews, and Catholics: the first represented by the Bulgarians of the Volga, the second probably by the Khazarui or the Jewish Kharaites, the third by the Poles and Germans. Vladimir declined Islamism, which prescribed circumcision and forbade "the wine, which was dear to the Russians"; Judaism, whose disciples wandered through the earth; and Catholicism, whose ceremonies appeared wanting in magnificence. The deputies that he sent to Constantinople, on the contrary, returned awe-stricken. The splendors of Saint Sophia, the brilliancy of the priestly vestments, the magnificence of the ceremonies, heightened by the presence of the emperor and his court, the patriarch and the numerous clergy, the incense, the religious songs, had powerfully appealed to the imagination of the barbarians. One final argument triumphed over the scruples of Vladimir. "If the Greek religion had not been the best, your grandmother Olga, the wisest of mortals, would not have adopted it," said the boyars. The proud Vladimir did not intend to beg for baptism at the hands of the Greeks, — he would conquer it by his own arms, and ravish it like booty. He descended into the Taurid and besieged Kherson, the last city of this region that remained subject to the emperors. A certain Anastasius, possibly from religious motives, betrayed his country. Rendered prouder than ever by this important conquest, Vladimir sent an embassy to the Greek emperors, Basil and Constantine, demanding their sister Anna in marriage, and threatening, in case of refusal, to march on Constantinople. It was not the first time the barbarians had made this proposal to the Greek Cæsars, and Constantine Porphyrogenitus himself teaches his successors how to get rid of these inconvenient demands. But on this occasion the emperors, who were occupied with revolts in the interior, thought themselves driven to consent, on condition that Vladimir should be baptized. It was in Kherson that the Russian

prince received baptism, and celebrated his marriage with the heiress of the emperors of Rome. The priests he brought to Kief were his captives; the sacred ornaments, the holy relics with which he enriched and sanctified his capital, were his booty. When he returned to Kief it was in the character of an apostle, but of an armed apostle, that he catechized his people. The idols were overthrown amid the tears and fright of the people. Perun was flogged and thrown into the Dnieper. They still show on the side of the Kievan cliffs the rock called "The Devil's Leap"; and farther away, the place where Perun was thrown up by the waters on the shore. The people instantly rushed to worship him, but the soldiers of Vladimir cast him back into the river. Then, by Vladimir's order, all the Kievans, men and women, masters and slaves, old people and little children, plunged naked into the consecrated waters of the old pagan stream, while the Greek priests standing on the bank with Vladimir read the baptismal service. After a sturdy resistance, the Novgorodians were in like manner forced to hurl Perun into the Volkhof, and then be immersed in it themselves.

We have already seen that the Russians had not lost all recollections of their ancient gods, and that nature was still the home of a whole world of deities. A long time had to pass before Christianity could penetrate into their hearts and customs. M. Buslaef assures us that, even in the twelfth century, Christian rites were practised only by the higher classes. The peasants kept their old pagan ceremonies, and continued to contract their marriages "around the bush of broom." They preserved even longer their faith in magicians and sorcerers, who were often of more authority than the priests. Vladimir, at any rate, wished to prepare the transformation. It does not appear that he persecuted the idolaters, but he occupied himself in adorning the churches of his capital, which he had shorn of its idols. On the spot where Perun stood he built the Church of Saint Basil, the Greek

name which he had taken at his baptism. On the place where the two Variag martyrs had been slain by his orders he raised the Church of the Desiatina or the Tithe, embellished and ornamented with Greek inscriptions by artists who came from the South. He founded schools, where boys studied the Holy Books translated into Slavonic, but he was obliged to compel the attendance of the children, whose parents, convinced that writing was a dangerous kind of magic, shed tears of despair. Nestor cannot sufficiently praise the reformation of Vladimir after his baptism. He was faithful to his Greek wife, he no longer loved war, he distributed his revenues to the churches and to the poor, and, in spite of the increase of crime, hesitated to inflict capital punishment. "I fear to sin," he replied to his councillors. It was the bishops who had to recall to him the fact that "criminals must be chastised, though with discretion," and that the country must not be left a prey to the Petchenegi. Vladimir, who in his earlier life reminded us of a Northman of the type of Robert the Devil, suddenly becomes the "good King Robert" of Russia.

His wars with the Petchenegi are recorded by Nestor with all kinds of episodes borrowed from the epic poetry. There is the Russian champion who tears in pieces the furious bull, or stifles a Petcheneg giant in his arms; there are the inhabitants of Bielgorod, who, having been reduced to famine by the barbarians, let down into wells two large caldrons, one full of hydromel and the other of meal, to make the Petchenegi believe these were natural productions of the soil. We see in the popular songs of what a marvellous cycle of legends Vladimir has become the centre; but in these poems he is neither Vladimir the Baptist, nor the Saint Vladimir of the orthodox Church, but a solar hero, successor of the divinities whom he destroyed. To the people, still pagans at heart, Vladimir is always the "Beautiful Sun" of Kief.

## IAROSLAF THE GREAT. — UNION OF RUSSIA. — SPLENDOR OF KIEF.

Vladimir died in ten hundred and fifteen, leaving a large number of heirs by his numerous wives. The partition that he made among them of his states tells us what was the extent of Russia at that epoch. To Iaroslaf he gave Novgorod; Polotsk to Isiaslaf, son of Rogneda, and grandson of the Variag Rogvolod; to Boris, Rostof; to Gleb, Murom, these last two principalities being in the Finn country; to Sviatoslaf, the Drevliané; to Vsevolod, Vladimir in Volhynia; to Mstislaf, Tmutorakan, the Tamatarchia of the Greeks; finally, to his nephew Sviatopolk, the son of his brother and victim Iaropolk, the principality of Turof, in the country of Minsk, founded by a Variag named Tur, who did not belong to the "blood of princes" any more than Askold and Dir. The history of Vladimir's successors recalls that of the heirs of Clovis. The murder of the sons of Clodomir is paralleled by the assassination of Boris and Gleb, sons of Vladimir, by the order of Sviatopolk, who usurped the throne of Kief. His two victims were canonized, and henceforth became inseparable in the orthodox calendar. The prince of the Drevliané perished by the same hand. Iaroslaf resolved to avenge his brothers and to save himself. At this moment, however, he had alienated his Novgorodian subjects, having enticed the principal citizens into his castle, and then treacherously slain them. When he learnt the crimes of Sviatopolk, he trembled for his own life, and threw himself on the generosity of those he had so cruelly outraged. He wept for his sins before them, and besought their help. "Prince," replied the Novgorodians, with one voice, "you have destroyed our brethren, but we are ready to fight for you." After a bloody war, in which Boleslas the Brave, king of Poland, took part, the usurper fled, and died miserably in exile. Iaroslaf had still to defend himself against the Prince of Polotsk and Mstislaf of Tmutorakan. The latter

had acquired great fame from his wars with the Khazarui, whom, with the aid of the Greek emperor, Basil the Second, he finally annihilated, and with the Tcherkesui, whose chief, a giant named Rhededia, he slew in single combat. At last, Iaroslaf remained the sole master of Russia, and reigned gloriously at Kief. He recalls Charles the Great by some successful wars, but particularly by his code of laws, his taste for building, and his love of letters in a barbarous age. He owes part of his reputation to the anarchy which followed his death, and which caused his reign to be regretted as the climax of Kievan greatness.

In Poland Iaroslaf revenged on the son of Boleslas the Brave his father's invasions, and took from him the towns of Red Russia. He fought a bloody battle with the Petchenegi under the walls of Kief, and in their flight part of the vanquished barbarians were drowned in crossing the rivers. It was as fatal a blow to the Petchenegi as that struck by Sviatoslaf at the Khazarui: they never recovered from it. But in the same manner as the defeat of the Khazarui opened the way to the Petchenegi, the ruin of the Petchenegi opened the way to the Polovtsui. The steppes of the Don were incessantly filled by new hordes from Asia. Iaroslaf also fought against the Finnish and Lithuanian tribes. In the country of the Tchudi he founded Iurief, or Saint George, called Dorpat by the Germans, on the Embach, near the Peïpus; in the country of the Meria he founded Iaroslavl on the Upper Volga. Finally, his reign was marked by a new war with Greece, brought on by mercantile disputes. His son Vladimir, leader of the expedition, rejected proudly the propositions of the Emperor Constantine Monomachus. A naval battle was fought in the Bosphorus; Greek fire and the tempests of the Black Sea dispersed the Russian armament. Part of the army, a body of eight thousand men, which was retreating into Russia by land, was attacked and exterminated by a Greek force: eight hundred prisoners were sent to Constantinople, where their eyes were

put out. Notwithstanding the bonds of religion which had been riveted between the Byzantines and their neophytes on the Dnieper, the Russians were always dreaded by Constantinople. An inscription hidden in the boot of one of the equestrian statues of Byzantium announced that the day would come when the capital of the empire would fall a prey to the men of the North. The decay of Kievan Russia after the death of Iaroslaf put off to a later day or nullified the fulfilment of this prophecy.

The legislation of the Russian Charlemagne is comprised in the Code entitled *Russkaia Pravda*, the Russian Right or Verity. This Code strangely recalls the Scandinavian. It sanctions private revenge, and the pursuit of an assassin by all the relatives of the dead ; it fixes the fine for different crimes, as well as the fine paid into the royal treasury ; it allows the judicial duel ; the ordeal by red-hot iron and boiling water ; the oath corroborated by those of the Compurgatores ; it also established by the side of the judges nominated by the Prince a jury of twelve citizens. In the "*Russkaia Pravda*" there is not, properly speaking, any criminal law. Capital punishment, death by refinements of cruelty, corporal chastisement, torture to wring out confessions, even a public prison, were all unknown. These are Scandinavian and German principles in all their purity. At this period Russia had almost the same laws as the West.

Iaroslaf occupied a glorious place among the princes of his time. His sister Maria was married to Kasimir, King of Poland ; his daughters also became the wives of kings : Elisabeth, of Harold the Brave, King of Norway ; Anna, of Henry the First, King of France ; Anastasia, of Andrew the First, King of Hungary. Of his sons, Vladimir, the eldest, is said to have married Githa, daughter of Harold, King of England ; Isiaslaf, a daughter of Micislas the Second, King of Poland ; Vseslaf, a Greek princess, daughter of Constantine Monomachus ; Viatcheslaf and Igor, two German princesses. Iaroslaf gave an

asylum to the proscribed princes, Saint Olaf, King of Norway, and his two sons ; a prince of Sweden ; Edwin and Edward, sons of Edmund Ironside, King of England, expelled from their country by Knut the Great. The Variag dynasty was thus mingled with the families of the Christian princes, and we may say of the Russia of the eleventh century, what we can no longer say of the Russia of the sixteenth century, that it was a European state.

To Kief was destined the lot of Aachen, the capital of Charles the Great, which, glorious in his life, after his death fell into decay. Under Iaroslaf, Kief reached the highest pinnacle of splendor. He wished to make his capital the rival of Constantinople ; like Byzantium, it had its cathedral and its Golden Gate. The Grand Prince also founded the monastery of Saint Irene, of which only a few ruins now remain, and those of Saint George and the Catacombs, the latter made illustrious by the virtues of its first superiors, Saint Theodosius and Saint Antony. He repaired the church of the Tithe, and surrounded the city with ramparts. The population began to increase, and the lower town to grow at the feet of the upper. Kief, situated on the Dnieper, the great road to Byzantium, seemed to be part of Greece. Adam of Bremen calls it *æmula sceptri Constantinopolitani et clarissimum decus Græciæ*. It was the rendezvous of the merchants from Holland, Hungary, Germany, and Scandinavia, who lived in separate quarters of the town. It had eight markets, and the Dnieper was constantly covered with merchant-ships. Iaroslaf had not enough Greek artists to decorate all the churches, nor enough priests to serve them, for Kief was at that time "the city of four hundred churches," so much admired by the writers of the West. What it was then we may partly realize by seeing what it is still at certain seasons of the year. The Monastery of the Catacombs, with the incorruptible bodies of its ascetics and miracle-workers, some of whom bricked themselves up, while living, in the cell which was to be their sepulchre, draws

annually, and especially at the Feast of the Assumption, fifty thousand pilgrims. Saint Sophia was the pride of Kief; the mosaics of the time of Iaroslaf still exist, and the traveller may admire, on the "indestructible wall," the colossal image of the Mother of God, the Last Supper, with a double apparition of Christ, presenting to six of his disciples his body, and to six others his blood, the images of Saints and Doctors, and the Angel of the Annunciation. The frescos which have been preserved or carefully restored are still numerous, and everywhere cover the pillars, the walls, and the vaulted ceilings of gold. The inscriptions are not in Slavonic, but in Greek. Iaroslaf did not forget Novgorod, his first residence, and there he built another Saint Sophia, one of the most precious monuments of Russian antiquity. Like Charles the Great, he set up schools. Vladimir had founded one at Kief; Iaroslaf instituted that of Novgorod for three hundred boys. He sent for Greek singers from Byzantium, who taught the Russian clergy. Coins were struck for him by Greek artists, with his Slavonic name, Iuri, in Slav on one side, and his Christian name, Georgios, on the other. Like all other barbarian neophytes, Iaroslaf carried devotion into superstition. He caused the bones of his uncles, who had died unconverted, to be disinterred and baptized. He died in ten hundred and fifty-four, and his stone sarcophagus is one of the most precious ornaments of Saint Sophia.

#### VARIAG-RUSSIAN SOCIETY AT THE TIME OF IAROSLAF.

Variag-Russian society presents more than one analogy with the society which was developed in Gaul after the Frank conquest. The government of the Variag princes somewhat resembled that of the Merovingian kings.

The germ of the future state lay in the *drujina*, the band of warriors surrounding the prince, as in Gaul it lay in the *truste*. The *drujinniki*, like the *antrustions*, were the faithful followers, the men of the prince. They formed his guard,

and were his natural council in all affairs, public or private. He could constitute them a court of justice, nominate them individually voïevodui, or governors of fortresses, or posadniki, or lieutenants in the large towns. In the same way as the body surrounding the Merovingian kings was not composed so entirely of Franks but that shortly Gallo-Romans crept into the antrustions, so the drujina of the Russian princes admitted many different elements, not only Variag but Slav. Mstislaf, prince of Tmutorakan, had enrolled Iasui and Kasogans ; a Lithuanian Iatviag is mentioned as being in the drujina of Igor, a Hungarian in that of Boris. The military class did not form at that time a close caste in Russia any more than in Gaul ; Saint Vladimir took into his service the son of a leather-worker who had vanquished the Petcheneg giant ; his maternal uncle, Dobruina, was not even a free man.

The prince in the midst of his drujina seems to be only the first among his equals ; all that he had seems to have belonged to his men. We see them eat at the same table, and listen together to the songs of the blind poets who accompanied themselves on the gusli. It was, as it were, a family of soldiers, from which one day the Russian administration was to come. The prince had great respect for the demands of his men. Those of Vladimir complained one day that they had to eat from wooden bowls. He gave them silver ones, and added, " I could not buy myself a drujina with gold and silver ; but with a drujina I can acquire gold and silver, as did my father and my grandfather." The prince did nothing without consulting his drujinniki. It was this that prevented Sviatoslaf from listening to the exhortations of Olga ; he said that " his drujina would mock him " if he became a Christian.

The administration of the Variag princes was very elementary. Let us see what the Arab writer Ibn-Dost says of the way they distributed justice : " When a Russian has a grievance with another, he summons him before the tribunal of the

prince, where both present themselves. When the prince has given sentence, his orders are executed ; if both parties are displeased by the judgment, the affair must be decided by arms. He whose sword cuts sharpest gains his cause. At the moment of the combat the relations of the two adversaries appear armed, and surround the space shut off. The combatants then come to blows, and the victor may impose any conditions he pleases."

After justice, the most important of the princely functions was the collection of the tributes. The amount was fixed by the prince himself. Oleg imposed on the Drevliané a tax of a marten's skin for every house. The levy of taxes was always very arbitrary. Nestor's account of the death of Igor is a lively picture of the political customs of the time ; we might imagine ourselves reading a page of Gregory of Tours about the sons of Clovis, for example, Thierry's expedition in Arvernia. "In the year nine hundred and forty-five the drujina of Igor said to him, 'The men of Sventeld are richly provided with weapons and garments, while we go naked ; lead us, prince, to collect the tribute, so that thou and we may become rich.' Igor consented, and conducted them to the Drevliané to raise the tribute. He increased the first imposts, and did them violence, he and his men ; after having taken all he wanted, he returned to his city. While on the road he bethought himself and said to his drujina, 'Go on with the tribute ; I will go back to try and get some more out of them.' Leaving the greater part of his men to go on their way, he returned with only a few, to the end that he might increase his riches. The Drevliané, when they learnt that Igor was returning, held council with Mal, their prince. 'When the wolf enters the sheepfold he slays the whole flock, if the shepherd does not slay him. Thus it is with us and Igor ; if we do not destroy him, we are lost.' Then they sent deputies and said to him, 'Why dost thou come anew unto us ? Hast thou not collected all the tribute ?' But Igor

would not hear them, so the Drevliané came out of the town of Korosten, and slew Igor and his men, for they were but a few."

For the government and defence of the country the prince established the chief of his drujinniki in different towns, supported by adequate forces. Thus Rurik distributed the towns of his appanage; he gave to one of his men Polotsk, to another Rostof, to a third Bielozersk. A principality was in some sort divided into fiefs, but the fiefs were only temporary, and always revocable. For the defence of the frontiers new towns were built, where native soldiers kept watch.

Social conditions from the ninth to the twelfth century were as unequal as in the West. The prince's drujina, which speedily absorbed all the Slav and Finn chiefs, constituted an aristocracy. Still we must distinguish in it three orders of rank, the simple guards, the men corresponding to the French barons, and the boyars, who were the most illustrious of all. The freemen of the Russian soil were "the people." The merchants were not at this period a distinct class; it was, in fact, the warriors or the princes who pursued commerce with arms in their hands. Oleg was disguised as a merchant when he surprised Kief and slew Askold and Dir; the Byzantines mistrusted these terrible guests, and assigned them a separate quarter, in Constantinople, which was strictly watched.

The rural population, on whom the weight of the growing state was beginning to rest, was already less free than in primitive times. The peasant was called *smerd*, a word perhaps derived from *smerdiet'*, to stink, or *muzhik*, the insulting diminutive of *muzh*, man. Later he became the Christian par excellence, *krestianin*.

Below the peasant, whose situation recalls that of the Roman *colonus*, were the slaves properly so called. The slave might have been taken in war, bought in a market, born in the house of his master, or have lost his liberty by the mere fact of filling certain offices, such as that of house-steward. War was, however, the principal source of slavery. Ibn-Dost relates that the

Russians, when they marched against another people, did not depart without having destroyed everything; they carried off the women, and reduced the men to slavery. They maintained a great slave-trade with foreign nations. "From Russia," said Sviatoslaf, the conqueror of Bulgaria, "will be brought skins, wax, honey, and slaves."

✓  
PROGRESS OF CHRISTIANITY.—SOCIAL, POLITICAL, LITERARY, AND ARTISTIC RESULTS.

Russia had become Christian: it is the chief event in its primitive history. An important fact is that its Christianity was received not from Rome, like that of the Poles and other Western Slavs, but from Constantinople. Although the separation between the churches of the East and West was not yet fully consummated, it was evident that Russia would be engaged in what the Latins called "the schism." It is usually considered in the West that this fact exercised an evil influence on Russia. But let us see the opinion of a Russian historian, M. Bestujef-Riumin, on the subject. "What is no less important is, that Christianity came to us from Byzantium, where the Church put forth no pretensions of governing the State, a circumstance which preserved us from struggles between the secular, a national, and the spiritual, a foreign power. Excluded from the religious unity of the Romano-Germanic world, we have perhaps gained more than we have lost. The Roman Church made its appearance with German missionaries in Slavonic lands; and if it did not everywhere bring with it material servitude, at least it introduced an intellectual slavery by forcing men to support foreign interests; by bringing among them foreign elements, and by establishing in all parts a sharp division between the higher classes who wrote and spoke in Latin, and the lower classes who spoke the national tongue and were without literature."

No doubt an ecclesiastical language which, thanks to Cyril

and Methodius, mingled with the national language, and became intelligible to all classes of society; a purely national Church, which was subject to no foreign sway; the absolute independence of the civil power and of national development, were the inestimable advantages that Byzantine Christianity brought into Russia. But if the Russian State was free from all obligations to Rome, it had nothing to hope for from Rome. It could not reckon in its days of peril on the help that Spain received when it grappled with the Moors; Germany in its crusades against the Slavs and Finns; Hungary in its national war with the Turks. Separated from the West by difference of faith, Russia in the time of the Mongols, like Greece at the epoch of the Ottoman invasion, saw no Europe arming in its defence.

Its princes were neither laid under the pontifical interdicts, like Robert of France, nor reduced to implore pardon at the feet of a Gregory the Seventh, like Henry the Fourth of Germany; humiliations always followed by a swift revenge, as on the day when Barbarossa expelled Alexander the Third from Italy, and Philip the Handsome caused Boniface to be arrested in Anagni. Humiliations still more cruel awaited the Russians at the Court of the Mongols. Another misfortune attending the entrance of the Russians into the Greek Church is, that they found themselves separated by religion from the races to whom they were bound by a common origin, and who spoke almost their own tongue. It was the difference of religion which inflamed their long rivalry with the Poles, and which at present deprives them of much influence over part of the Slavs. This same difference of religion delayed for them the benefits of civilization resulting from the Renaissance of the West, but it spared them the terrible crisis of the wars of the Reformation.

Oriental Christianity, with the Byzantine civilization that was inseparable from it, produced in time a considerable transformation in Russia. The first effect of Christianity was to reform society, and draw closer family ties. It condemned

polygamy, and forbade equal divisions between the children of a slave and those of the lawful wife. Society resisted this new principle for some time. Saint Vladimir, even after his conversion, divided his possessions equally between the children the Church regarded as natural and those she considered legitimate. In the long run Christianity prevailed, and by the abolition of polygamy the Russian family ceased to be Asiatic, and became European.

Christianity prescribed new virtues, and gave the ancient barbaric virtues of hospitality and benevolence a more elevated character.

Vladimir Monomakh charged his children to receive strangers hospitably, because, says he, they have it in their power to give you a good or evil reputation. The hospitality of primitive peoples may often be explained by their need of merchants and foreigners. Pagan Slavs were obliged to help only those of the same association; warriors would assist the members of the same *drujina*; peasants, members of the same commune; merchants or artisans, members of the same union. Christianity enjoined benevolence to all the world, without hope of reward in this life. It rendered weakness, poverty, manual labor, honorable. If it prescribed excessive humility, it was useful at least as a reaction against the brutality of overweening pride. Between these two societies, aristocratic and religious, which rest on opposite and equally exaggerated principles, there would one day be room for lay and civil society.

The influence of Christian principles was rather slow among these excitable and ardent natures, but at last we see in Russia, as in the West, princes abjure their pride and seek the peace of the cloister, like the good King Robert, or Saint Henry. In the end it became an established custom with the Russian sovereigns that, on the approach of death, they should be tonsured, change their worldly for a monkish name, and so die in the garb of one of the religious orders.

From a political point of view the influence of Byzantine Christianity was bound in the long run to cause a complete revolution. For what was a Russian prince, after all, but the head of a band, surrounded by the men of his *druжина*, and in a sense a stranger in the land he governed and on which he levied tribute? Properly speaking, a Russian prince had no subjects. The natives had the power at any time to expel him, — his *drujinniki* were always free to forsake him.

The princes of Kief were no more sovereigns in the modern or Roman sense of the term than Merwig or Clodowig the Long-haired. But the priests who came from Constantinople brought with them an ideal of government; in a little while it was that of the Russians who entered the ranks of the clergy. This Greek ideal was the Emperor, the Tsar of Constantinople, heir of Augustus and Constantine the Great, God's Vicar upon earth, the typical monarch on whom the eyes of the barbarians of Gaul as well as those of Scythia were fixed. He was a sovereign in the fullest sense of the word. He had subjects, and subjects only. He alone made the law; he was the law. He had neither *drujinniki* nor antrustions that he placed in such and such a town, but a host of movable functionaries, the inviolate Roman hierarchy, by means of whom his all-powerful will penetrated to the remotest parts of his dominions. He was not the leader of a band of exacting soldiers, free to quit his service for that of another, but master of a standing army, to guard both frontiers and capital. He did not consider his states as a patrimony to be divided between his children, but transmitted to his successor the Roman Empire in its integrity. He inherited his power, not only from his people, but from God. His imperial ornaments had, like his person, a sacred character: and whenever the barbarian kings demanded one of them at Constantinople, either the crown enriched with precious stones, the purple mantle, the sceptre, or the leggings, they were answered, that when God gave the empire to Constantinople, he sent these vestments by a holy angel; that

they were not the work of man, and that they were laid on the altar, and worn, even by the emperor, only on solemn occasions. Leo the Khazar was said to have been smitten with a fatal ulcer for having put on the crown without permission of the patriarch.

An empire one and indivisible, resting on a standing army, a hierarchy of functionaries, a national clergy, and a body of jurisconsults, — such was the Roman Empire, and on the same model the monarchies of the seventeenth century were constructed. This was the conception of the State, unknown to both Slavs and Variagi, that the Greek priests brought to Russia. For a long time the reality showed little to correspond with the ideal; the princes continued in their wills to divide their soldiers and their lands among their children; but the idea did not perish, and if it was never realized in Kievan Russia, it found a more propitious soil in Muscovite Russia. Legislation likewise felt the influence of Christianity. Theft, murder, and assassination were not looked upon by the Church as private offences, for which the aggrieved persons could take reprisals or accept money in commutation. They were crimes to be punished by human justice in the name of God.

For private revenge Byzantine influence substituted a public penalty; for the fine it substituted corporal punishment, repugnant to the free barbarian, and to the instinctive sentiment of human dignity. Imprisonment, convict labor, flogging, torture, mutilation, death itself, inflicted by more or less cruel means, — such was the penal code of the Byzantines.

The Greek bishops of the time of Saint Vladimir wished that brigands should be put to death, but it was long before popular objection to such punishment was overcome. Vladimir, after having employed this supreme means of repression, returned to the system of fines, which besides helped to fill the treasury. The Byzantine mode of procedure likewise rejected the judicial duel, the judgment of God, and the Compurgatores long upheld by custom. But, as in Gaul, Roman

law existed for church officers and part of the natives side by side with the Frank or Burgundian law, so in Russia the Byzantine codes of Justinian and Basil the Macedonian were established at the side of the Scandinavian code of Iaroslaf.

During many centuries the two systems of legislation existed together, each being slightly influenced by the other, until the time when they were mingled in a new code, the *Ulojenie* of Ivan the Great, and the *Sudebnik* of Ivan the Terrible.

The Byzantine literature which found its way into Russia consisted not only of the Sacred Books, but also of the Fathers of the Church, among whom we may reckon some writers of the first order, like Saint Basil and Saint John Chrysostom; lives of the saints, an inexhaustible source of new poetry; chronicles destined to serve as models to the Russian annalists; philosophical and scientific books; even romances such as "*Barlaam and Josaphat*," "*Salomon and Kitovras*," and others. Though this literature was partly the fruit of Byzantine decay, we may perceive how it implanted fresh ideas in the mind of a young nation, and would largely influence the moral life of the individual, and public and family life. We shall see up to what point Russian society, of the Middle Ages was modelled on the examples afforded by this literature. Finally, it must not be forgotten that Christianity brought music in its train to a people whose music was highly primitive, and architecture to a people who had absolutely none. It was Christianity which, to use a Western expression, illuminated the Russian cities with magnificent churches, and caused golden cupolas to tower above the ramparts of mud that begirt the towns.

## CHAPTER VI.

### RUSSIA DIVIDED INTO PRINCIPALITIES. — SUPREMACY AND FALL OF KIEF.

1054 - 1169.

DISTRIBUTION OF RUSSIA INTO PRINCIPALITIES. — UNITY IN DIVISION. —  
THE SUCCESSORS OF IAROSLAF THE GREAT. — WARS ABOUT THE RIGHT  
OF HEADSHIP OF THE ROYAL FAMILY, AND THE THRONE OF KIEF. —  
VLADIMIR MONOMAKH. — WARS BETWEEN THE HEIRS OF VLADIMIR  
MONOMAKH. — FALL OF KIEF.

---

#### DISTRIBUTION OF RUSSIA INTO PRINCIPALITIES. — UNITY IN DIVISION.

THE period that extends from ten hundred and fifty-four, the year of Iaroslaf's death, to twelve hundred and twenty-four, the year of the first appearance of the Tatars, or, to take the French chronology, from the reign of Henry the First to the death of Philip Augustus, is one of the most confused and troubled in Russian history. As the barbarian custom of division continued to prevail over the Byzantine ideal of political unity, the national territory was ceaselessly partitioned.

The princely anarchy of Eastern Europe has its parallel in the feudal anarchy of the West. M. Pogodin reckons during this period sixty-four principalities which had an existence more or less prolonged, two hundred and ninety-three princes who disputed the throne of Kief and other domains, and eighty-three civil wars, in some of which the whole country was engaged. There were, besides, foreign wars to augment this enormous mass of historical facts. Against the Polovtsui

alone the chroniclers mention eighteen campaigns, while these barbarians made no less than forty-six invasions of Russia. It is impossible to follow the national chroniclers in the minute details of their annals ; we will only treat of the principalities which lasted some time, and of the facts which were most important.

The ancient names of the Slav tribes have everywhere disappeared, or remain only in the names of some of the towns, for example that of the Polotchané in Polotsk, and that of the Severiané in Novgorod-Severski. The elements of which Russia was now composed were no longer tribes, but principalities. We hear no more of the Krivitchi or the Drevliané, but of the principalities of Smolensk and Volhynia. These little states were perpetually dismembered at each new partition between the sons of a prince, and then were reconstituted to be divided anew into appanages.

Notwithstanding all these vicissitudes, some of them maintained a steady existence, corresponding to certain topographical or ethnographical conditions. Without speaking of the distant principality of Tmutorakan, situated at the foot of the Caucasus in the centre of Turkish and Circassian tribes, and reckoning eight successive princes, the following are the great divisions of Russia from the eleventh to the thirteenth century : —

The principality of Smolensk occupied the important territory which is, as it were, the central point in the mountain system of Russia. It comprehends the ancient forest of Okof, where three of the largest Russian rivers, the Volga, the Dnieper, and the Dwina, take their rise. Hence the political importance of Smolensk, attested by all the wars to gain possession of it ; hence, also, its commercial prosperity. It is noticeable that all its towns were built on one or other of these three great rivers ; therefore the entire commerce of ancient Russia passed through its hands. Besides Smolensk we must mention Mojaïsk, Viasma, and Toropets, which was the capi-

tal of a secondary principality, the property of two celebrated princes, Mstislaf the Brave and Mstislaf the Bold.

The principality of Kief was *Rus*, Russia in the strict sense of the word. Its situation on the Dnieper, the neighborhood of the Greek Empire, the fertility of the Black Land, long secured to this state the supremacy over the other Russian principalities. On the south it bordered directly on the nomads of the steppe, against whom her princes were forced to raise a barrier of frontier towns. They often took these barbarians into their pay, granted them lands, and constituted them into military colonies. The principality of Pereiaslavl was a dependence of Kief; Vuishegorod, Bielgorod, Tripoli, Torshok, were at times erected into principalities for princes of the same family.

On the tributaries of the right bank of the Dnieper, notably the Soja, the Desna, and the Seïm, extended the two principalities of Tchernigof, with Starodub and Lubetch; and of Novgorod-Severski, with Putivl, Kursk, and Briansk. The principality of Tchernigof, which reached towards the Upper Oka, had therefore one foot in the basin of the Volga; its princes, the Olgovitchi, were the most formidable rivals of Kief. The princes of Severski were always engaged in war with the Polovtsui, their neighbors on the south. It was a prince of Severski whose exploits against these barbarians formed the subject of a sort of epic poem, called the Song of Igor, or the Account of Igor's Expedition.

Another principality, whose very existence consisted in endless war against the nomads, was the double principality of Riazan and Murom, the principal towns of which were Riazan, Murom, Pereiaslavl-Riazanski, situated on the Oka, Kolomna at the junction of the Moskova with the Oka, and Pronsk on the Prona. The Upper Don formed its western boundary. This principality was placed in the very heart of the Muromians and Meshtcheraki, Finnish tribes. The reputation of its inhabitants, who were reckoned warlike in charac-

ter, and rough and brutal in manners, was no doubt partly the result of the mixture of the Russian race with the ancient inhabitants of the country, and of their perpetual and bloody struggle with the nomad tribes.

The double principalities of Suzdal, with their towns of Suzdal, Rostof, Iurief-Polski on the Kolosha, Vladimir on the Kliazma, Iaroslavl, and Pereiaslavl-Zalieski, were situated on the Volga and the Oka amongst the thickest of northern forests, and in the middle of the Finnish tribes of Muromians, Meria, Vesui, and Tcheremisa. Although placed at the farthest extremity of the Russian world, Suzdal exercised an important influence over it. We shall find its princes now establishing a certain political authority over Novgorod and the Russia of the Lakes, the result of a double economic dependence; now intervening victoriously in the quarrels of the Russia of the Dnieper. The Suzdalians were rough and warlike, like the Riazanese. Already we can distinguish among these two peoples the characteristics of a new nationality. That which divides them from the Kievans and the men of Novgorod-Severski, occupied like themselves in the great war with the barbarians, is the fact that the Russians of the Dnieper sometimes mingled their blood with that of their enemies, and became fused with the nomad, essentially mobile Turkish races, whilst the Russians of the Oka and the Volga united with the Finnish tribes, who were agricultural and essentially sedentary. This distinction between the two foreign elements that entered the Slav blood has doubtless contributed to the difference in the characters of the two branches of the Russian race. From the eleventh to the thirteenth century, in passing from the basin of the Dnieper to the basin of the Volga, we can already watch the formation of Great and Little Russia.

The principalities of Kief, Tchernigof, Novgorod-Severski, Riazan, Murom, and Suzdal, situated on the side of the steppe with its devastating hordes, formed the frontier states

of Russia. The same part to play on the northwest, opposite the Lithuanians, Letts, and Tchudi, fell to the principality of Polotsk, which occupied the basin of the Dwina; and to the republican principalities of Novgorod and Pskof on the lakes Ilmen and Peïpus. To the principality of Polotsk, that of Minsk was attached, which lay in the basin of the Dnieper. The possession of Minsk, thanks to its situation, was often disputed by the Grand Princes of Kief. To Novgorod belonged the towns of Torjok, Volok-Lamski, Izborsk, and Veliki-Luki, which were at times capitals of particular states.

Southeast Russia comprehended: Volhynia, in the fan-shaped distribution of rivers formed by the Pripet and its tributaries, with Vladimir-in-Volhynia, Lutsk, Turof, Brest, and even Lublin, which is certainly Polish; Galicia proper, or Red Russia, in the basins of the San, the Dniester, and the Pripet, whose ancient inhabitants, the White Kroats, seem to have sprung from the stock of the Danubian Slavs. Her chief towns were Galitch, founded by Vladimirkó about eleven hundred and forty-four, Peremuisl, Terebovl, and Zvenigorod. The neighborhood of Hungary and Poland gave a special character to these principalities, as well as a more advanced civilization. The epic songs speak of Galicia, the native land of the hero Diuk Stepanovitch, as a fabulously rich country. The Account of Igor's Expedition gives us a high idea of the power of these princes. "Iaroslaf Osmomuisl of Galicia!" cried the poet to one of them, "thou art seated very high on thy throne of wrought gold; with thy regiments of iron thou sustainest the Carpathians; thou closest the gates of the Danube; thou barrest the way to the king of Hungary; thou openest at thy will the gates of Kief, and with thine arrows thou strikest from afar!"

The disposition of these fifteen or sixteen principalities confirms all that we have said about the essential unity of the configuration of the Russian soil. Not one of the river-basins forms an isolated and closed region. There is no line of

heights to establish barriers between them or political frontiers. The greater number of the Russian principalities belong to the basin of the Dnieper, but extend everywhere beyond its limits. The principality of Kief, with Pereiaslavl, is nearly the only one completely confined within it; but Volhynia puts the basin of the Dnieper in communication with those of the Bug and the Vistula, Polotsk with the basins of the Dnieper and the Dwina, Novgorod-Severski with the basin of the Don, Tchernigof and Smolensk with the basin of the Volga. Watercourses everywhere established communications between the principalities. Already Russia, though broken up into appanages, had the germs of a great united empire. The slight cohesion of nearly all the states, and their frequent dismemberments, prevented them from ever becoming the homes of real nationalities. The principalities of Smolensk, Tchernigof, and Riazan have never possessed as definite an historic existence as the duchy of Bretagne or the county of Toulouse in France, or the duchies of Saxony, Suabia, and Bavaria in Germany.

The interests of the princes, their desire to create appanages for each of their children, caused a fresh division of the Russian territory at the death of every sovereign. There was, however, a certain cohesion in the midst of all these vicissitudes. There was a unity of race and language, the more sensible, notwithstanding all dialectic differences, because the Russian people was surrounded everywhere, except at the southwest, by entirely strange races, Lithuanians, Tchudi, Finns, Turks, Magyars. There was a unity of religion; the Russians differed from nearly all their neighbors, for in contrast with the Western Slavs, Poles, Tcheki, and Moravians, they represented a particular form of Christianity, not owning any tie to Rome, and rejecting Latin as the language of the Church. There was the unity of historical development, as up to that time the Russo-Slavs had all followed the same road, had accepted Greek civilization, submitted to the Vari-

agi, pursued certain great enterprises in common, — such as the expeditions against Byzantium and the war with the nomads. Finally, there was political unity, since after all, in Gallicia as in Novgorod, on the Dnieper as in the forests of Suzdal, it was the same family that filled all the thrones. All these princes descended from Rurik, Saint Vladimir, and Iaroslaf the Great. The fact that the wars that laid waste the country were civil wars, was a new proof of this unity. The different parts of Russia could not consider themselves strangers one to the other, when they saw the princes of Tchernigof and Suzdal taking up arms to prove which of them was the eldest, and which consequently had most right to the title of Grand Prince and the throne of Kief. There were descendants of Rurik who governed, successively, the remotest states of Russia, and who, after having reigned at Tmutorakan on the Straits of Ienikale, at Novgorod the Great, at Toropets in the country of Smolensk, ended by establishing their right to reign at Kief. In spite of the division into appanages, Kief continued to be the centre of Russia. It was there that Oleg and Igor had reigned, that Vladimir had baptized his people, and Iaroslaf had established the metropolis of the faith, of arts, and of national civilization. It is not surprising that it should have been more fiercely disputed than all the other Russian cities. Russia had many princes; but she had only one Grand Prince, — the one who reigned at Kief. He had a recognized supremacy over the others which he owed not only to the importance of his capital, but to his position as eldest of the royal family. Kief, the mother of Russian cities, was always to belong to the eldest of the descendants of Rurik; this was the consequence of the patriarchal system of the Slavs, as was the custom of division. When the Grand Prince of Kief died, his son was not his rightful heir; but his uncle or brother, or whichever of the princes was the eldest. Then the whole of Russia, from the Baltic to the Black Sea, held itself in readiness to support

the claims of this or that candidate. It was the same with the other principalities, where the possessors of different appanages aspired to reign in the metropolis of the region. The civil wars, then, themselves strengthened the sentiment of Russian unity. What were they, after all, but family quarrels?

THE SUCCESSORS OF IAROSLAF THE GREAT. — WARS FOR  
THE RIGHTS OF ELDERSHIP AND THE THRONE OF KIEF.  
—VLADIMIR MONOMAKH.

The persistent conflict between the Byzantine law, by which the son inherited the possessions of the father, and the old national law of the Slavs which caused them to pass to the eldest of all the family, was an inexhaustible source of civil wars. Even had the law been perfectly clear, the princes were not always disposed to recognize it. Thus, although the eldest of Iaroslaf's sons had in his favor the formal will of his father, giving him the throne of Kief, and though Iaroslaf on his death-bed had desired his other sons to respect their elder brother as they had done their parent, and look on him as their father, Isiaslaf at once found his brother Sviatoslaf ready to take up arms and overturn his throne. He was obliged in ten hundred and seventy-three to seek refuge at the Court of Henry the Fourth of Germany, who sent an embassy to Kief, commanding Sviatoslaf to restore the throne of Isiaslaf. Sviatoslaf received the German envoys with such courtesy, made them such a display of his treasures and riches, that, dazzled by the gold, they adopted a pacific policy. Henry the Fourth himself, disarmed by the liberalities of the Russian prince, spoke no more of chastising the usurper. Isiaslaf did not return to Kief till after the death of his rival in ten hundred and seventy-six.

When his own death took place, in ten hundred and seventy-eight, his son Sviatopolk did not succeed him immediately. It

was necessary that all the heirs of Iaroslaf should be exhausted. Vsevolod, a brother of Isiaslaf, whose daughter married the Emperor Henry the Fourth or Henry the Fifth,—it is not quite certain which,—reigned for fifteen years, from ten hundred and seventy-eight until ten hundred and ninety-three. In accordance with the same principle, it was not the son of Vsevolod, Vladimir Monomakh, who succeeded his father; but after the crown had been worn by a new generation of princes, it returned to the blood of Isiaslaf. Vladimir Monomakh made no opposition to the claims of Sviatopolk Isiaslavitch. “His father was older than mine,” he said, “and reigned first in Kief,” so he quitted the principality which he had governed with his father, and valiantly defended against the barbarians. But every one was not so respectful to the national law as Vladimir Monomakh.

Two terrible civil wars desolated Russia in the reign of the Grand Prince Sviatopolk, between ten hundred and ninety-three and eleven hundred and thirteen: one about the principality of Tchernigof, the other about Volhynia and Red Russia. Sviatoslaf had enjoyed Tchernigof as his share, to which Tmutorakan in the Taurid, Murom and Riazan in the Finn country, were annexed. Isiaslaf and Vsevolod, Grand Princes of Kief, had despoiled the sons of Sviatoslaf, their brother, depriving them of the rich territory of Tchernigof, and only leaving them Tmutorakan and the Finnish country. Even Vladimir Monomakh, whom we have seen so disinterested, had accepted a share of the spoil. The injured princes were not people to bear this meekly, especially the eldest, Oleg Sviatoslavitch, one of the most energetic men of the eleventh century. He called the terrible Polovtsui to his aid, and subjected Russia to frightful ravages. Vladimir Monomakh was moved by these misfortunes; he wrote a touching letter to Oleg, expressing his sorrow for having accepted Tchernigof. At his instigation a Congress of Princes met at Lubetch, on the Dnieper, in ten hundred and ninety-seven. Seated on the

same carpet, they resolved to put an end to the civil wars that handed the country as a prey to the barbarians. Oleg recovered Tchernigof, and promised to unite with the Grand Prince of Kief and Vladimir Monomakh against the Polovtsui. The treaty was ratified by the oath of each prince, who kissed the cross and swore, "that henceforth the Russian land shall be considered as the country of us all; and whoso shall dare to arm himself against his brother becomes our common enemy."

In Volhynia the prince, David, was at war with his nephews, Vasilko and Volodar. The Congress of Lubetch had divided the disputed territories between them, but scarcely was the treaty ratified when David went to the Grand Prince Sviatopolk and persuaded him that Vasilko had a design on his life. With the light faith habitual to the men of that date, the Grand Prince joined David in framing a plot to attract Vasilko to Kief on the occasion of a religious festival. When he arrived he was loaded with chains, and the Grand Prince convoked the boyars and citizens of Kief, to denounce to them the pretended projects of Vasilko. "Prince," replied the boyars, much embarrassed, "thy tranquillity is dear to us. Vasilko merits death, if it is true that he is thine enemy; but if he is calumniated by David, God will avenge on David the blood of the innocent." Thereon the Grand Prince delivered Vasilko to his enemy David, who put out his eyes. The other descendants of Iaroslaf the First were indignant at this crime. Vladimir Monomakh united with Oleg of Tchernigof, his ancient enemy, and marched against Sviatopolk. The people and clergy of Kief succeeded in preventing a civil war between the Grand Prince and the confederates of Lubetch. Sviatopolk was forced to disavow David, and swear to join the avengers of Vasilko. David defended himself with vigor, and summoned to his help, first the Poles, and then the Hungarians. At last a new congress was assembled at Vititchevo in the year eleven hundred, on the left bank of the Dnieper, a town of which a

deserted ruin is all that now remains. As a punishment for his crime, David was deprived of his principality of Vladimir in Volhynia, and had to content himself with four small towns. After the new settlement of this affair, Monomakh led the other princes against the Polovtsui, and inflicted on them a bloody defeat; seventeen of their khans remained on the field of battle. One khan who was made prisoner offered a ransom to Monomakh; but the prince showed how deeply he felt the injuries of the Christians, — he refused the gold, and cut the brigand chief in pieces.

When Sviatopolk died, the Kievans unanimously declared they would have no Grand Prince but Vladimir Monomakh. Vladimir declined the honor, alleging the claims of Oleg and his brothers to the throne of Kief. During these negotiations a sedition broke out in the city, and the Jews, whom Sviatopolk had made the instruments of his fiscal exactions, were pillaged. Monomakh was forced to yield to the prayers of the citizens. During his reign, from eleven hundred and thirteen until eleven hundred and twenty-five, he obtained great successes against the Polovtsui, the Petchenegi, the Torki, the Tcherkesui, and other nomads. He gave an asylum to the remains of the Khazarui, who built on the Oster, not far from Tchernigof, the town of Belovega. The ruins of this city that remain to-day prove that this Finnish people, eminently capable of culture, and already civilized by the Greeks, were further advanced in the arts of construction and fortification than even the Russians themselves. According to one tradition, Monomakh also made war on the Emperor Alexis Comnenus, a Russian army invaded Thrace, and the Bishop of Ephesus is said to have brought gifts to Kief, among others a cup of carnelian that had belonged to Augustus, besides a crown and a throne, still preserved in the Museum at Moscow, under the name of the crown and throne of Monomakh. It is now known that they never belonged to Vladimir, but it was the policy of his descendants, the Tsars of Moscow, to propa-

gate this legend. It was of consequence to them to prove that these tokens of their power were traceable to their Kievan ancestor, and that the Russian Monomakh, grandson of the Greek Monomachus, had been solemnly crowned by the Bishop of Ephesus as sovereign of Russia.

The Grand Prince made his authority felt in other parts of Russia. A Prince of Minsk, who had the temerity to kindle a civil war, was promptly dethroned, and died in captivity at Kief. The Novgorodians saw many of their boyars kept as hostages, or exiled. The Prince of Vladimir in Volhynia was deposed, and his states given to a son of the Grand Prince.

Monomakh has left us a curious paper of instructions that he compiled for his sons, and in which he gives them much good advice, enforced by examples drawn from his own life. "It is neither fasting, nor solitude, nor the monastic life, that will procure you the life eternal, — it is well-doing. Do not forget the poor, but nourish them. Do not bury your riches in the bosom of the earth, for that is contrary to the precepts of Christianity.\* Be a father to orphans, judge the cause of widows yourself. . . . Put to death no one, be he innocent or guilty, for nothing is more sacred than the soul of a Christian. . . . Love your wives, but beware lest they get the power over you. When you have learnt anything useful, try to preserve it in your memory, and strive ceaselessly to get knowledge. Without ever leaving his palace, my father spoke five languages, a thing that foreigners admire in us. . . . I have made altogether twenty-three campaigns without counting those of minor importance. I have concluded nineteen treaties of peace with the Polovtsui, taken at least a hundred of their princes prisoners, and afterwards restored them

\* To bury riches in the earth is the custom with which the Emperor Maurice reproaches the Slavs of his time, and which is to this day characteristic of the Russian peasants. Often the head of the family dies without having revealed the hiding-place to his children. Treasure-trove is frequent in Russia.

to liberty ; besides more than two hundred whom I threw into the rivers. No one has travelled more rapidly than I. If I left Tchernigof very early in the morning, I arrived at Kief before vespers. Sometimes in the middle of the thickest forests I caught wild horses myself, and bound them together with my own hands. How many times I have been thrown from the saddle by buffaloes, struck by the horns of the deer, trampled under foot by the elands ! A furious boar once tore my sword from my belt ; my saddle was rent by a bear, which threw my horse down under me ! How many falls I had from my horse in my youth, when, heedless of danger, I broke my head, I wounded my arms and legs ! But the Lord watched over me ! ”

Vladimir completed the establishment of the Slav race in Suzdal, and founded a city on the Kliazma that bore his name, and that was destined to play a great part. Such, in the beginning of the twelfth century, when Louis the Sixth was fighting with his barons of the Isle de France, was the ideal of a Grand Prince of Russia.

#### WARS BETWEEN THE HEIRS OF VLADIMIR MONOMAKH.— FALL OF KIEF.

Of the sons of Vladimir Monomakh, Iuri Dolgoruki became the father of the princes of Suzdal and Moscow, and Mstislaf the father of the princes of Galitch and Kief. These two branches were often at enmity, and it was their rivalry that struck the final blow at the prosperity of Kief. When Isiaslaf, son of Mstislaf, was called to the throne in eleven hundred and forty-six by the inhabitants of the capital, his uncle, Iuri Dolgoruki, put forward his rights as the eldest of the family. Kief, which had been already many times taken and retaken in the strife between the descendants of Oleg of Tchernigof and the descendants of Vladimir Monomakh, was fated to be disputed anew between the uncle and the nephew. It was

almost a war between the Old and New Russia, the Russia of the Dnieper and that of the Volga. The princes of Suzdal, who dwelt afar in the forests in the northwest, establishing their rule over the remnants of the Finnish races, were to become greater and greater strangers to Kievan Russia. If they still coveted the "mother of Russian cities," because the title of Grand Prince was attached to it, they at least began to obey and to venerate it less than the other princes.

Iuri Dolgoruki found an ally against Isiaslaf in one of the Olgovitchi, Sviatoslaf, who thirsted to avenge his brother Igor, dethroned and kept prisoner in Kief by the Grand Prince. The Kievans hesitated to support the sovereign they had chosen; they hated the Olgovitchi, but in their attachment to the blood of Monomakh they respected his son and his grandson equally. "We are ready," they said to Isiaslaf, "we and our children, to make war on the sons of Oleg. But Iuri is your uncle, and can we dare to raise our hands against the son of Monomakh?" After the war had lasted some time, a decisive battle was fought. At the battle of Pereiaslavl Isiaslaf was completely defeated, and took refuge, with two attendants, in Kief. The inhabitants, who had lost many citizens in this war, declared they were unable to stand a siege. The Grand Prince then abandoned his capital to Iuri Dolgoruki, and retired to Vladimir in Volhynia, whence he demanded help from his brother-in-law, the King of Hungary, and the kings of Poland and Bohemia. With these reinforcements he surprised Kief, and nearly made his uncle prisoner. Understanding that the national law was against him, he opposed eldest with eldest, and declared himself the partisan of another son of Monomakh, the old Viatcheslaf, Prince of Turof. He was proclaimed Grand Prince of Kief, adopted his nephew Isiaslaf as his heir, and during his reign, from eleven hundred and fifty to eleven hundred and fifty-four, gave splendid fêtes to the Russians and Hungarians. Iuri returned to the charge, and was beaten under the walls of Kief. Each of these princes

had taken barbarians into his pay : Iuri, the Polovtsui ; Isiaslaf, the Black Caps, that is, the Torki, the Petchenegi, and the Berendians.

The obstinate Prince of Suzdal did not allow himself to be discouraged by this check. The old Viatcheslaf, who only desired peace and quiet, in vain addressed him letters, setting forth his rights as the eldest. " I had already a beard when you entered the world," he said. Iuri proved himself intractable, and went into Gallicia to effect a junction with his ally, Vladimirkó, Prince of Galitch. This Vladimirkó had violated the oath he had taken and confirmed by kissing the cross. When they reproached him, he said, with a sneer, " It was such a little cross ! " To prevent this dangerous co-operation, Isiaslaf, without waiting the expected arrival of the Hungarians, began the pursuit of Iuri, and came up with him on the borders of the Rut, a small tributary of the Dnieper. A bloody battle was fought, where he himself was wounded and thrown from his horse, but the Suzdalians and their allies the Polovtsui were completely defeated in eleven hundred and fifty-one. Isiaslaf survived this victory only three years. After his death and that of Viatcheslaf, Kief passed from hand to hand. Iuri finally reached the supreme object of his desires. He made his entry into the capital in eleven hundred and fifty-five, and had the consolation of dying Grand Prince of Kief, at the moment that a league was being formed for his expulsion, in eleven hundred and fifty-seven. " I thank thee, great God," cried one of the confederates on learning the news, " for having spared us, by the sudden death of our enemy, the obligation of shedding his blood ! "

The confederates entered the town ; one of them assumed the title of Grand Prince, the others divided his territories. Henceforth there existed no grand principality, properly speaking, and with the growing power of Suzdal, Kief ceased to be the capital of Russia. A final disaster was still reserved for it.

In eleven hundred and sixty-nine Andrei Bogoliubski, son of Iuri Dolgoruki, and Prince of Suzdal, being disaffected to Mstislaf, Prince of Kief, formed against him a coalition of eleven princes. He confided to his son Mstislaf and his voïevod Boris an immense army of Rostovians, Vladimiriens, and Suzdalians to march against Kief. This time the Russia of the forests triumphed over the Russia of the steppes, and after a three days' siege Kief was taken by assault. "This mother of Russian cities," says Karamsin, "had been many times besieged and oppressed. She had often opened her Golden Gate to her enemies, but none had ever yet entered by force. To their eternal shame, the victors forgot that they too were Russians! During three days not only the houses, but the monasteries, churches, and even the temples of Saint Sophia and the Tithe, were given over to pillage. The precious images, the priestly ornaments, the books, and the bells, all were taken away."

From this time the lot of the capital of Saint Vladimir, pillaged and dishonored by his descendants, ceases to have a general interest for Russia. Like other parts of Slavonia, it has its princes, but the heads of the reigning families of Smolensk, Tchernigof, and Galitch assume the once unique title of Grand Prince. The centre of Russia is changed. It is now in the basin of the Volga, at Suzdal. Many causes conspired to render the disaster of eleven hundred and sixty-nine irremediable. The chronic civil wars of this part of Russia, and the multitudes and growing power of the nomad hordes, rendered the banks of the Dnieper uninhabitable. In twelve hundred and three Kief was again sacked by the Polovtsui, whom the Olgovitchi of Tchernigof had taken into their pay. On this soil, incessantly the prey of war and invasion, it was impossible to found a lasting order of things; it was impossible that a regular system of government should be established,—that civilization should develop and maintain itself. Less richly endowed by nature, and less civilized, the Russia

of the forests was at least more tranquil. It was there that a grand principality was formed, called to fulfil high destinies, but which, unhappily, was to be separated for three hundred years, by the southern steppes and the nomads who dwelt there, from the Black Sea; that is, from Byzantine and Western civilization.

## CHAPTER VII.

### RUSSIA AFTER THE FALL OF KIEF. — POWER OF SUZDAL AND GALLICIA.

1169 — 1264.

ANDREI BOGOLIUBSKI OF SUZDAL (1157 — 1174) AND THE FIRST ATTEMPT AT AUTOCRACY. — IURI THE SECOND (1212 — 1238). — WARS WITH NOVGOROD. — BATTLE OF LIPETSK (1216). — FOUNDATION OF NIJNI-NOVGOROD (1220). — ROMAN (1188 — 1205) AND HIS SON DANIEL (1205 — 1264) IN GALLICIA.

---

#### ANDREI BOGOLIUBSKI OF SUZDAL AND THE FIRST ATTEMPT AT AUTOCRACY.

AFTER the fall of the grand principality of Kief Russia ceased to have a centre round which its whole mass could gravitate. Its life seemed to be withdrawn to the extremities ; and, during the fifty-four years which preceded the arrival of the Mongols, all the interest of Russian history is concentrated on the principality of Suzdal, on that of Galitch, and on the two republics of Novgorod and Pskof.

Iuri Dolgoruki was the founder of Suzdal, but we have seen him expend all his energy in securing possession of the throne of Kief. His son Andrei Bogoliubski was, on the contrary, a true prince of Suzdal. From him are descended the Tsars of Moscow ; with him there appears in Russian history quite a new type of prince. It is no longer the chivalrous, light-hearted, careless prince, in turn a prey to all kinds of opposing passions, the joyous prince of the happy land of Kief, — but an ambitious, restless, politic, and imperious sovereign, going straight to his goal without scruple and without

pity. Andrei had taken an aversion to the turbulent cities of the Dnieper, where the assemblies of citizens sometimes held the power of the prince in check. In Suzdal, at least, he found himself in the centre of colonists planted by the prince, who never dreamed of contesting his authority; he reigned over towns which, for the most part, owed their existence to his ancestors or himself. During the lifetime of his father Iuri he had quitted the Dnieper and his palace at Vuishegorod, had established himself on the Kliazma, bringing with him a Greek image of the Mother of God, had enlarged and fortified Vladimir, and founded a quarter that he called Bogoliubovo.

When after the death of Iuri the grand principality became vacant, he allowed the princes of the south to dispute it among themselves. He wished to mix with their quarrels only so far as would suffice for the recognition of his authority, not at Kief, but at Novgorod the Great, then bound by the closest ties to Suzdal. He established one of his nephews as his lieutenant at Novgorod. A glorious campaign against the Bulgarians increased his reputation in Russia. He deserved more than any one to be Grand Prince of Kief, but we have seen that he preferred to pillage it, — that he preferred a sacrilegious spoil to the throne of Monomakh.

After having destroyed the splendor and power of Kief, and guided by the sure instinct that afterwards led Ivan the Great and Ivan the Terrible against Novgorod, he longed to subdue the great republic to a narrower dependence. “The fall of Kief,” says Karamsin, “seemed to presage the loss of Novgorod liberty; it was the same army, and it was the same prince, Mstislaf Andreievitch, who commanded it. But the Kievans, accustomed to change their masters, — to sacrifice the vanquished to the victors, — fought only for the honor of their princes, while the Novgorodians were to shed their blood for the defence of the laws and institutions established by their ancestors.” Mstislaf, who had forced the princes of Smolensk,

Riazan, Murom, and Polotsk, to join him, laid waste the territories of the republic with fire and sword, but succeeded only in exasperating the courageous citizens. When fighting began under the walls of the town, the Novgorodians, to inflame themselves for the combat, reminded each other of the pillage and the sacrilege with which their adversaries had polluted the holy city of Kief. All swore to die for Saint Sophia of Novgorod; their archbishop, Ivan, took the image of the Mother of God and paraded it with great pomp round the walls. It is said that an arrow shot by a Suzdalian soldier having struck the image of the Virgin, her face turned towards the city, and inundated the vestments of the archbishop with miraculous tears. Instantly a panic seized the besiegers. The victory of the Novgorodians was complete; they slew a multitude of their enemies, and made so many prisoners that Suzdalian slaves became a drug upon the market." Their dependence on Suzdal for corn forced them to make peace in eleven hundred and seventy. They abandoned none of the ancient rights of the republic, but of "their own free will," according to the consecrated expression, they accepted as sovereign the prince nominated for them by Andrei of Suzdal.

Andrei about this time lost his only son, his heir, Mstislaf. The knowledge that in future he would be working for his collateral relatives no whit diminished his ambition or his arrogance. The princes of Smolensk, David, Rurik, and Mstislaf the Brave, could not endure his despotic ways, and, in spite of his threats, took Kief. The Olgovitchi of Tchernigof, delighted to see discord kindled between the descendants of Monomakh, incited Andrei to revenge this injury. So he sent a herald to the princes of Smolensk, to say to them: "You are rebels; the principality of Kief is mine. I order Rurik to return to his patrimony of Smolensk, and David to retire to Berlad; I can no longer bear his presence in Russia, nor the presence of Mstislaf, the guiltiest of you all."

Mstislaf the Brave, say the chroniclers, "feared none but

God.” When he received Andrei’s message, he shaved the beard and hair of the messenger, and answered him: “Go, and repeat these words unto your prince: ‘Up to this time we have respected you like a father, but since you do not blush to treat us as your vassals and common people, since you have forgotten that you speak to princes, we mock at your menaces. Execute them,—we appeal to the judgment of God.’” The judgment of God was an encounter under the walls of Vuishegorod, besieged by more than twenty princes, allies or vassals of Andrei of Suzdal. Mstislaf succeeded in dividing the assailants, and completed their defeat by a victorious sortie in eleven hundred and seventy-three.

When Andrei came to establish himself in the land of Suzdal, the inhabitants themselves elected him their prince, to the exclusion of other members of the family. But this enemy of municipal liberty had no intention of fixing his residence either at Rostof or Suzdal, the two most ancient cities of the principality, which had their assembly of citizens, their *vetché*. From the beginning he had conceived the project of raising above them a new town, Vladimir on the Kliazma, considered by Rostof and Suzdal merely a subject borough. To give a plausible pretext to this resolution he had his tent pitched on the road to Suzdal ten versts from Vladimir, and installed himself there with his miraculous image of the Virgin which came from Constantinople, and was, we are assured, the work of Saint Luke. The next day he announced that the Mother of God had appeared to him in a dream, and had commanded him to place her image, not at Rostof, but at Vladimir. He was likewise to build a church and a monastery to the Virgin on the spot where she made herself manifest; this was the origin of the village of Bogoliubovo. Andrei preferred Vladimir to the old cities, but it was in his house at Bogoliubovo that he best liked to live. He tried to make of Vladimir a new Kief, as Kief herself was a new Byzantium. There were at Vladimir a Golden Gate, a Church of the Tithe

consecrated to the Virgin, and numerous monasteries built by the artists summoned by Andrei from the West.

Andrei sought the friendship of the priests, whom he felt to be one of the great forces of the future. He posed as a pious prince, rose often by night to burn tapers in the churches, and publicly distributed alms in abundance. After a victory over the Bulgarians of the Volga, he obtained leave from the Patriarch of Constantinople to establish a commemorative feast. It happened that on the same day that Andrei triumphed over the Bulgarians, thanks to the image of the Virgin, the Emperor Manuel had won a victory over the Saracens by means of the true cross and the image of Christ represented on his standard. One anniversary served for both victories of orthodoxy, and Vladimir was in harmony with Byzantium. Andrei was anxious to make Vladimir a metropolitan city. At the same time that he robbed Kief of the grand principality, he would have deprived it of the religious supremacy of Russia, and given his new city the spiritual as well as the temporal power. This time the patriarch refused, but the attempt was one day to be renewed by the princes of Moscow.

What more particularly proves this prince — who had risen from the conception of appanages to that of the indivisible modern state — to have been superior to his century, to have had sure instincts as to the future, is that he declined to share his dominions with his brothers and nephews. In spite of Iuri's testamentary directions, he expelled his three brothers from Suzdal, and they retired with their mother, a Greek princess, to the court of the Emperor Manuel. It appears that this measure was advised by the men of Suzdal. The subjects then had the same instinct of unity as the prince. If he broke with the patriarchal custom of appanages, and wished to reign alone in Vladimir, he broke equally with the Variag tradition of the *drujina*; he treated his men, his boyars, not as companions, but as subjects. Those who refused to bow to his will had to leave the country. We may say that Andrei

Bogoliubski created autocracy three hundred years before its time. He indicated in the twelfth century all that the Grand Princes of Moscow had to do in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, to attain absolute power. His mistrust of municipal liberty, his despotic treatment of the boyars, his efforts to suppress the appanages, his proud attitude towards the other Russian princes, his alliance with the clergy, and his project of transporting to the basin of the Oka the religious metropolis of all the Russias, are the indications of a political programme that ten generations of princes did not suffice to carry out. The moment was not yet come; Andrei had not enough power, nor Suzdal resources sufficient to subjugate the rest of Russia. Andrei succeeded against Kief, but he endured a double check from Novgorod the Great, and from Mstislaf the Brave, and the princes of the south. His despotism made him terrible enemies. His boyars, whom he tried to reduce to obedience, assassinated him in his favorite residence of Bogoliubovo in eleven hundred and seventy-four.

**IURI THE SECOND. — WARS WITH NOVGOROD. — BATTLE OF LIPETSK. — NIJNI-NOVGOROD FOUNDED.**

The death of this remarkable man was followed by great troubles. The common people attacked the houses of rich men and magistrates, gave them up to pillage, and committed so many murders that to establish quiet the clergy were forced to have a procession of images. The unpunished murders show how premature was the autocratic attempt of Andrei. His succession was disputed between his nephews and his two brothers, Mikhail and Vsevolod, who had returned from Greece. The nephews were supported by the old cities of Rostof and Suzdal, which were animated by a violent hatred of the upstart city of Vladimir, that had torn from them the title of capital, and had taken up the cause of Mikhail and Vsevolod. "The Vladimirians," said the Rostovians, "are

our slaves, our masons ; let us burn their town, and set up there a governor of our own." The Vladimirians had the advantage in the first war, and caused Mikhail, the elder of Andrei's brothers, to be recognized Grand Prince of Suzdal. At his death the Rostovians refused to recognize the other brother, Vsevolod, surnamed the Big-Nest on account of his numerous posterity. They resisted all proposals of compromise, declaring that "their arms alone should do them right on the vile populace of Vladimir." It was, on the contrary, the vile populace of Vladimir who put the boyars of Rostof in chains. The two ancient cities were forced to submit ; Vladimir remained the capital of Suzdal. Vsevolod, in his reign from eleven hundred and seventy-six to twelve hundred and twelve, managed to secure himself on the throne by defeating the princes of Riazan and Tchernigof. He extended his influence to the distant Galitch, and contracted matrimonial alliances with the princes of Kief and Smolensk. He reduced the Novgorodians to beg for one of his sons as their prince. "Lord and Grand Prince," said the envoys of the republic to him, "our country is your patrimony ; we entreat you to send us the grandson of Iuri Dolgoruki, the great-grandson of Monomakh, to govern us." The princes of Riazan having incurred his displeasure, he united their states to his principality. Riazan rebelled, and was reduced to ashes, and the inhabitants transported to the solitudes of Suzdal. This prince, who has likewise been called "the Great," exhibited in his designs the prudence, the spirit of intrigue, constancy, and firmness which characterized the princes of the Russia of the forests. At his death, in twelve hundred and twelve, the troubles began again. Dissatisfied with his eldest son, Konstantin, Prince of Novgorod, Vsevolod had given the grand principality of Novgorod to his second son, Iuri the Second. Konstantin had to content himself with Rostof ; a third brother, Iaroslaf, Prince of Pereiaslavl-Zalieski, had been sent to Novgorod.

Iaroslaf quarrelled with his turbulent subjects, left their town, and installed himself at Torjok, a city in the territory of Novgorod, where he betook himself to hindering the passage of the merchants and boyars. Their communications with the Volga were intercepted; he prevented the arrival of corn, and reduced the town to starvation. The Novgorodians were obliged to eat the bark of pines, moss, and lime-leaves. The streets were filled with the bodies of the wretched inhabitants, which the dogs devoured. Iaroslaf was implacable. He persisted in remaining at Torjok, refused to return to Novgorod, and arrested all envoys sent to him. He treated Novgorod as his father had treated Rostof and Suzdal. But help arrived to the despairing citizens in the person of a Prince of Smolensk, Mstislaf the Bold, son of Mstislaf the Brave. "Torjok shall not hold herself higher than Novgorod," he cried; "I will deliver your lands and your citizens, or leave my bones among you." Thus Mstislaf became Prince of Novgorod; and as he saw that the Grand Prince of Vladimir supported his brothers, he sought an ally in Konstantin of Rostof, who was discontented with his inheritance. The Novgorodian quarrel speedily expanded into a general war, and Mstislaf contrived to make Suzdal the scene of strife. Before a battle he tried to effect a reconciliation between the two princes of Vladimir and Rostof. But Iuri answered, "If my father was not able to reconcile me with Konstantin, has Mstislaf the right to judge between us? Let Konstantin be victorious, and all will be his." This strife between the three sons of Big-Nest had all the usual fierceness of fraternal warfare. Before the battle Iuri and Iaroslaf issued orders that quarter was to be given to no one, to kill even those who had "embroideries of gold on their shoulders," that is, the princes of the blood. Already they had decided on the partition of Russia. But the troops of Novgorod, Pskof, and Smolensk attacked them with such fury that those of Suzdal and Murom gave way, and it was the soldiers of Mstislaf who in their



THE LOWER TOWN, NIJNI NOVGOROD



THE KREMLIN, NIJNI NOVGOROD



turn gave no quarter. Nine thousand men were killed, and only sixty prisoners taken. Iuri threw off his royal clothes, wore out the strength of three horses, and with the fourth just managed to reach Vladimir. This was the battle of Lipetsk, near Pereiaslavl-Zalieski in twelve hundred and sixteen. Konstantin then became Grand Prince of Vladimir, and ceded Suzdal to his brother Iuri. Iaroslaf was obliged to renounce Novgorod and release the captive citizens.

At Konstantin's death, in twelve hundred and seventeen, Iuri regained the throne of Vladimir. Under him the expeditions against the Bulgarians of the Volga and the Mordva were continued. These expeditions were organized both by land and water; the infantry descended the Oka and the Volga in boats, the cavalry marched along the banks. They attacked and burnt the wooden forts of the Bulgarui, and destroyed the population.

During a campaign, conducted by Iuri in person along the whole length of the Volga, he noticed a small hill on its right bank, near its junction with the Oka. Here, in the midst of the Mordvan tribes, he founded Nijni-Novgorod in twelve hundred and twenty. A Mordvan tradition gives its own account of this important event: "The prince of the Russians sailed down the Volga; on the mountain he perceived the Mordva in a long white coat, adoring her god; and he said to his warriors, 'What is that white birch that bends and sways up there, above its nurse, the earth, and inclines towards the east?' He sent his men to look nearer, and they came back and said, 'It is not a birch that bends and sways, it is the Mordva adoring her god. In their vessels they have a delicious beer, pancakes hang on sticks, and their priests cook their meat in caldrons.' The elders of the Mordva, hearing of the arrival of the Russian prince, sent young men with gifts of meat and beer. But on the road the young men ate the meat and drank the beer, and brought the Russian prince only earth and water. The prince was

rejoiced at this present, which he considered as a mark of submission of the Mordva. He continued to descend the Volga: where he threw a handful of this earth on the bank, a town sprang up; where he threw a pinch of this earth, a village was born. It was thus that the Mordvan land became subject to the Russians."

#### ROMAN AND HIS SON DANIEL IN GALITCH.

Galitch offers a remarkable contrast to Suzdal; peopled by Khorvats, or White Kroats, it had preserved a purely Slavonic character, in spite of its conquest by Variag princes. "The prince," says M. Kostomarof, "was a prince of the old Slavonic type. He was elected by a popular assembly, and kept his crown by its consent."

The assembly itself was governed by the richest men of the country, the boyars. Under the influence of Polish and Hungarian ideas the boyars had raised themselves above the mass of the people, and formed a strong aristocracy, which really ruled the country. When Iaroslaf Osmomuisl, a hero glorified in the Song of Igor, neglected his lawful wife Olga for his mistress Anastasia, the nobles rose, burnt Anastasia alive, and obliged the prince to send away his natural son, and to recognize his legitimate son Vladimir as his heir.

When Vladimir became prince, he lost no time in incurring their hatred. He was accused of abandoning himself to vice and drunkenness, of despising the councils of wise men, of dishonoring the wives and daughters of the nobles, and of having married as his second wife the widow of a priest. It did not need all this to exhaust the patience of the Gallicians. They summoned Vladimir to give up the woman that they might punish her. Vladimir took fright, and fled to Hungary with his family and his treasures. This was all the boyars desired, and they offered the throne to Roman, Prince of Vollhynia, in eleven hundred and eighty-eight. But Bela,

King of Hungary, brought back the fugitive prince with an army, and entered Galitch. There he suddenly changed his mind, and coveted this beautiful country, rich in salt and minerals, for himself. He threw his protégé, Vladimir, into prison, and proclaimed his own son Andrei. The Hungarian yoke seemed naturally more heavy to the Gallicians than the authority of their easy-going princes. They expelled the strangers, and recalled Vladimir, who had found means to escape, and had taken refuge with Frederick Barbarossa. When Vladimir died, Roman of Volhynia resolved at all hazards to enter Galitch. His rival had previously appealed to the Hungarians, so he applied to the Poles, and, with an auxiliary army given him by Kasimir the Just, he reconquered Galitch. The turbulent boyars had at last found their master.

This time Roman held the crown, not by election, but by conquest. He resolved to subdue the proud aristocracy. The Polish bishop, Kadlubek, a contemporary writer, who sympathized with the oligarchs, draws a frightful picture of the vengeance exercised by Roman on his enemies. They were quartered, buried alive, riddled with arrows, delivered over to horrible tortures. He had promised pardon to those who had fled; but when they returned, he accused them of conspiracy, condemned them to death, and confiscated their goods. "To eat a drop of honey in peace," he said cynically, "you must first kill the bees." The Russian chroniclers, on the contrary, praise him highly. He was another Monomakh, an invincible and redoubtable hero, who "walked in the ways of God, exterminated the heathen, flung himself like a lion upon the infidels, was savage as a wild-cat, deadly as a crocodile, swooped on his prey like an eagle." More than once he vanquished the Lithuanian tribes and the Polovtsui; in the civil wars of Russia he was likewise victorious, and gave to one of his relations the throne of Kief. He attracted the attention of the great Pope, Innocent the Third, who sent missionaries

to convert him to the Catholic faith, promising to make him a great king by the sword of Saint Peter. Drawing his own sword, Roman proudly answered the envoys of Innocent: "Has the Pope one like mine? While I wear it at my side, I have no need of another's blade." In twelve hundred and five, when he was engaged in a war with Poland, he imprudently ventured too far from his army on the banks of the Vistula, and perished in an unequal combat. His exploits were long remembered in Russia, and the "Chronicle of Volhynia" gives him the surname of "the Great," and "the Autocrat of all the Russias." A historian of Lithuania relates that, after his victories over the barbarous inhabitants of that country, he harnessed the prisoners to the plough. Hence the popular saying, "Thou art terrible, Roman; the Lithuanians are thy laboring oxen." Roman of Volhynia is a worthy contemporary of the autocrat of the northwest, Andrei of Suzdal.

Roman left two sons, minors. Daniel, the elder, was proclaimed Prince of Galitch in twelve hundred and five, but in such a turbulent country, rent as it was by factions, it was impossible for a child to reign under the guardianship of his mother. Red Russia fell a prey to a series of civil wars, complicated by the intervention of Poles and Hungarians. The ferocity shown by the Gallicians in their intestine struggles has gained for them the name of atheists in the Kievan Chronicles. The princes of the blood of Saint Vladimir were tortured and hung by the boyars. Daniel was first replaced on the throne, then expelled, then again recalled. His infancy was the toy of intriguing factions. Mstislaf the Bold also came hither in search of adventures. He chased the Hungarians from Galitch, took the title of Prince, and married his daughter to Daniel. Both were immediately obliged to turn their arms against the Poles. Daniel, whose character had been formed in such a rough school, displayed remarkable energy and courage in these campaigns. The aid of the Polovtsui had to be sought against these enemies from the west, the

Hungarians and the Poles, — now rivals, now allies. At the death of Mstislaf the Bold in twelve hundred and twenty-eight, Daniel, who five years previously had taken part in the battle of Kalka against the Tatars, became Prince of Galitch. Towards the boyars, whose turbulence had ruined the country, he acted with the salutary policy of Roman, though without employing the same severity.

The great Mongol invasion once more expelled him from Galitch, which it covered with ruins. Daniel, who had fled to Hungary, did his best to help his unhappy country. To fill up the void made by the Mongols in the population, he invited Germans, Armenians, and Jews, whom he loaded with privileges. The economic consequence of this measure was a rapid development of commerce and industry; the ethnographic consequence was the introduction into Gallicia of a Jewish element, very tenacious and very persistent, but alien to the dominant nationality, and forming a separate people in the midst of the Russians. Daniel was one of the last princes to make his submission to the horde. "You have done well to come at last," said the khan of the Mongols. Batui treated him with distinction, allowed him to escape the ordinary humiliations, and, seeing that the fermented milk of the Tatars was not to his taste, gave him a cup of wine. Daniel, however, bore with impatience the yoke of these barbarians.

Feeling himself isolated in the general abasement of the orthodox world, the Prince of Galitch turned towards Rome, and promised to do his best for the union of the two churches, and to add his contingent to the crusade preached in Europe against the Mongols. Innocent the Fourth called him his dear son, accorded him the title of King, and sent him a crown and sceptre. Daniel was solemnly crowned at Droguitchin by the Abbot of Messina, Legate of the Pope, in twelve hundred and fifty-four. Both the crusade against the Asiatics and the reconciliation between the two churches came to nothing. Daniel braved the reproaches and threats of Alexander the

Fourth, but kept the title of King. He took part in the European wars with great success. "The Hungarians," says a chronicler, "admired the order that reigned among his troops, their Tatar weapons, the magnificence of the prince, his Greek habit embroidered with gold, his sabre and his arrows, his saddle enriched with jewels and precious metals richly chased." Encouraged by the Hungarians and the Poles, he tried to shake off the yoke of the Mongols, and expelled them from a few places; but he was soon obliged to bow to superior force, and dismantle his fortresses. No prince better deserved to free Southern Russia, but his activity and talents struggled in vain against the fate of his country. He terminated in twelve hundred and sixty-four one of the most memorable and most checkered careers in the history of Russia. The civil wars of his youth, the Tatar invasion in his ripe age, the negotiations and wars with Western Europe, left him no repose. After him, Russian Galitch passed to different princes of his family. In the fourteenth century it was absorbed into the kingdom of Poland and was lost to Russia.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE RUSSIAN REPUBLICS: NOVGOROD, PSKOF, AND VIATKA.

Until 1224.

NOVGOROD THE GREAT. — STRUGGLES WITH THE PRINCES. — NOVGORODIAN INSTITUTIONS. — COMMERCE. — THE NATIONAL CHURCH. — LITERATURE. — PSKOF AND VIATKA.

---

#### NOVGOROD THE GREAT. — STRUGGLES WITH THE PRINCES.

NOVGOROD has been, from the most remote antiquity, the political centre of the Russia of the northwest. The origin of the Slavs of the Ilmen, who laid the foundations of it, is still uncertain. Some learned Russians, such as M. Kostomarof, suppose them to belong to the Slavs of the south, others to the Slavs of the Baltic; others, again, like M. Bielaef and M. Ilovaïski, make them a branch of the Krivitch or Smolensk Slavs. We find the Novgorodians, at the opening of Russian history, at the head of the confederation of tribes which first expelled and then recalled the Variagi to reign over Russia.

Novgorod, from very ancient times, was divided into two parts, separated by the course of the Volkhof, which rises in Lake Ilmen and falls into the Ladoga. On the right bank was the side of Saint Sophia, where Iaroslaf the Great built his celebrated cathedral; where the Novgorod kreml was situated, enclosing both the palaces of the archbishop and the prince; and where the famous Russian monument was consecrated in eighteen hundred and sixty-two. On the left bank

is the side of commerce, with its Court of Iaroslaf; the bridge which joins the two halves of the city is celebrated in the annals of Novgorod. The side of Saint Sophia includes the Nerevsky or Nerevian quarter, as well as those of Zagorodni, or the suburbs, and of the potters. The side of commerce comprised the quarters of the carpenters and Slavs. Ancient documents also speak of a Prussian or Lithuanian quarter. Some of these names seem to indicate that many races have concurred, as in ancient Rome, to form the city of Novgorod. Gilbert of Lannoy, who visited the republic about fourteen hundred and thirteen, has left us this description of it: "Novgorod is a prodigiously large town, situated in a beautiful plain, in the midst of vast forests. The soil is low, subject to inundations, marshy in places. The town is surrounded by imperfect ramparts, formed of gabions; the towers are of stone." Portions of these ramparts still exist, and allow us to form an idea of the immense extent of the ancient city. The kreml forms its acropolis. The cathedral has preserved its frescos of the twelfth century; the pillars painted with images of saints on a golden ground; the imposing figure of Christ on the cupola; the banner of the Virgin, which was to revive the courage of the besieged, on the ramparts; the tombs of Saint Vladimir Iaroslavitch, of the Archbishop Nikita, by whose prayers a fire was extinguished, of Mstislaf the Brave, the devoted defender of Novgorod, and of many other saints and illustrious people. Without counting the tributary cities of Novgorod, such as Pskof, Ladoga, Izborsk, Veliki-Luki, Staräia-Rusa, or Old Russia, Torjok, Biejitchi, its primitive territory was divided into five counties, which included the land to the south of the lakes Ladoga and Onega. Its conquests formed five bailiwicks or cantons, occupying the whole of Northern Russia, and extending as far as Siberia. These bailiwicks were the Zavolotché, or the land lying beyond the canton, between the Onega and the Mezen; Russian Lapland; Permia, on the Upper Kama; Petchora, on the river of the

same name; and Iugria, on the other side of the Ural Mountains. To these we must add Ingria, Karelia, and part of Livonia and Esthonia.

Novgorod, which had summoned the Variag princes, was too powerful, with one hundred thousand inhabitants and three hundred thousand subjects, to allow itself to be tyrannized over. An ancient tradition speaks vaguely of a revolt against Rurik the Old under the hero Vadim. Sviatoslaf, the conqueror of the Bulgaria of the Danube, undertook to govern it by mere agents, but Novgorod insisted on having one of his sons for its prince. "If you do not come to reign over us," said the citizens, "we shall know how to find ourselves other princes." Iaroslaf the Great, as a reward for their devotion, accorded them immense privileges, of which no record can be found, but which are constantly invoked by the Novgorodians, as were the true or false charters of Charles the Great by the German cities. These republicans could not exist without a prince, but they rarely kept one long. The assembly of the citizens, the *vetché*, convoked by the bell in the Court of Iaroslaf, was the real sovereign. The republic called itself "My Lord Novgorod the Great." "Who can equal God and the great Novgorod?" was a popular saying. From the distance of the city from the Russia of the Dnieper, and its position towards the Baltic and Western Europe, it took little part in the civil wars of which Kief was the object and the centre. The Novgorodians profited by this in a certain sense; for, in the midst of the strifes of princes and of frequent changes in the grand principality, no sovereign was strong enough to give them a master. They could choose between princes of the rival families. It could impose conditions on him whom they chose to reign over them. If discontented with his management, they expelled the prince and his band of antrustions. According to the accustomed formula, "they made a reverence, and showed him the way" to leave Novgorod. Sometimes, to hinder his evil designs, they kept him

prisoner in the archbishop's palace, and it was left to his successor to set him at liberty. Often a revolution was accompanied by a general pillage of the partisans of the fallen prince, and they were even drowned in the Volkhof. A Grand Prince of Kief, Sviatopolk, wished to force his son on them. "Send him here," said the Novgorodians, "if he has a spare head." The princes themselves contributed to the frequent changes of reign. They felt themselves only half-rulers in Novgorod, so they accepted any other appanage with joy. Thus, in eleven hundred and thirty-two, Vsevolod Gabriel abandoned Novgorod to reign at Pereiaslavl. When his hopes of Kief were crushed, and he wished to return to Novgorod, the citizens rejected him. "You forgot your oath to die with us, you have sought another principality; go where you will." Presently they thought better of it, and took him back. Four years afterwards he was again obliged to fly. In a great vetché, to which the citizens of Pskof and Ladoga were summoned, they solemnly condemned the exile, after reading the heads of very characteristic accusations: "He took no care of the poorer people; he desired to establish himself at Pereiaslavl; at the battle of Mount Idanof, against the men of Suzdal, he and his drujina were the first to leave the battle-field; he was fickle in the quarrels of the princes, sometimes uniting with the Prince of Tchernigof, sometimes with the opposite party."

The power of a prince of Novgorod rested not only on his drujina, which always followed his fortunes, and on his family relations with this or that powerful principality, but also on a party formed for him in the heart of the republic. It was when the opposing party grew too strong that he was dethroned, and popular vengeance exercised on his adherents. Novgorod being above all a great commercial city, its divisions were frequently caused by diverging economic interests. Among the citizens, some were occupied in trade with the Volga and the East, others with the Dnieper and Greece.

The former naturally sought the alliance of the princes of Suzdal, masters of the great Oriental artery; the latter that of the princes of Kief or Tchernigof, masters of the road to the south. Each of the two parties tried to establish a prince of the family whose protection they sought. If he fell, yet succeeded in escaping from the town, he would try to regain his throne by the arms of his family, or to install himself and his *drujina* either at Pskof, like Vsevolod-Gabriel, who became prince of that town, or at Torjok, like Iaroslaf of Suzdal, and thence he would blockade and starve the great city. The Prince of Suzdal was soon the most formidable neighbor of Novgorod. We have seen that Andrei Bogoliubski sent an army against it, then that his nephew Iaroslaf besieged his ancient subjects till Mstislaf the Bold freed them by the battle of Lipetsk in twelve hundred and sixteen. He was the son of Mstislaf the Brave, who had defended them against Vsevolod Big-Nest, and against Suzdal and the Tchudi. The remains of "the Brave" rest at Saint Sophia, in a bronze sarcophagus. His son, "the Bold," was of far too restless a nature to die also at Novgorod. He reduced the principality to order, and then assembled the citizens in the Court of Iaroslaf, and said to them, "I salute Saint Sophia, the tomb of my father, and you, Novgorodians. I am going to reconquer Galitch from the strangers, but I shall never forget you. I hope I may lie by the tomb of my father, in Saint Sophia." The Novgorodians in vain entreated him to stay. This was in twelve hundred and eighteen. We have seen him use his last armies in the troubles of the southeast, and die Prince of Galitch.

After his departure the republic summoned his nephew, Sviatoslaf, to the throne; but he could not come to terms with magistrates and a populace equally turbulent. The *posadnik*, Tverdislaf, caused one of the boyars of Novgorod to be arrested. This was the signal for a general rising; some took the part of the boyar, others that of the *posadnik*. Dur-

ing eight days the bell of the kreml sounded. Finally both factions buckled on their cuirasses and drew their swords. Tverdislaf raised his eyes to Saint Sophia, and cried, "I shall fall first in the battle, or God will justify me by giving the victory to my brothers." Ten men only perished in this skirmish, and then peace was re-established. The prince, who accused Tverdislaf of being the cause of the trouble, demanded that he should be deposed. The vetché inquired what crime he had committed. "None," replied the prince, "but it is my will." "I am satisfied," exclaimed the posadnik, "as they do not accuse me of any fault; as to you, my brothers, you can dispose alike of posadniki and princes." The assembly then gave their decision. "Prince, as you do not accuse the posadnik of any fault, remember that you have sworn to depose no magistrate without trial. He will remain our posadnik, — we will not deliver him to you." On this Sviatoslaf quitted Novgorod, in twelve hundred and nineteen. He was replaced by Vsevolod, one of his brothers, who was expelled two years later.

The Suzdalian party having made some progress, they recalled the same Iaroslaf who was beaten at Lipetsk, but the princes of Suzdal were too absolute in their ideas to be able to agree with the Novgorodians. Iaroslaf was again put to flight, and replaced by Vsevolod of Smolensk, who was expelled in his turn. The Grand Prince of Suzdal now interposed, levied a contribution on Novgorod, and a prince of Tchernigof was imposed on them, who hastened in twelve hundred and twenty-five to return to the south of Russia. In seven years the Novgorodians had five times changed their rulers. Iaroslaf himself came back for a third and even a fourth time. A famine so much reduced the Novgorodians that forty-two thousand corpses were buried in two cemeteries alone. These proud citizens implored strangers to take them as slaves for the price of a morsel of bread. The same year a fire destroyed the whole of one quarter of Novgorod. These calamities sub-

duced their turbulence. Iaroslaf succeeded in governing them despotically till he was called to fill the throne of the Grand Prince in twelve hundred and thirty-six. He left them, as their prince, his son, Alexander Nevski.

NOVGORODIAN INSTITUTIONS. — COMMERCE. — THE NATIONAL CHURCH. — LITERATURE.

From the fact that no dynasty of princes could establish itself at Novgorod, that no princely band could take a place among the native aristocracy, it follows that the republic kept its ancient liberties and customs intact under the short reigns of its rulers. In all Russian cities, it is true, the country existed side by side with the prince and boyars, the assembly of citizens side by side with the prince's men, and the native militia side by side with the foreign drujina ; but at Novgorod the country, the vetché, and the municipal militia had retained more vigor than elsewhere. The town was more powerful than the prince, who reigned by virtue of a constitution, traces of which may be observed, no doubt, in other regions of Russia, but which is found in its original form at Novgorod alone. Each new monarch was compelled to take an oath, by which he bound himself to observe the laws and privileges of Iaroslaf the Great. This constitution, like the *pacta conventa* of Poland, signified distrust, and was intended to limit the power of the prince and his men. The revenues to which he had a right, and which formed his civil list, were carefully limited, as also were his judicial and political functions. He levied tribute on certain cantons, and was entitled to the commutation for crimes as well as to certain fines. In some bailiwicks he had his lieutenant, and Novgorod had its own. He could not execute justice without help of the posadnik, nor reverse any judgment ; nor, above all, take the suit beyond Novgorod. This was what the Novgorodians feared most, and with reason. The day when the people of Novgorod bethought themselves

of appealing to the tribunal of the Grand Prince of Moscow was fatal to the independence of the republic. In the conflicts between the men of the prince and those of the city, a mixed court delivered judgment. The prince, no more than his men, could acquire villages in the territory of Novgorod, nor create colonies. He was forbidden to hunt in the woods of Staraia Rusa except in the autumn, and had to reap his harvests at a specified season. Though they thus mistrusted their prince, the Novgorodians had need of him to moderate the ancient Slav anarchy. As in the days of Rurik, "family armed itself against family, and there was no justice." In Novgorod the vetché had more extensive powers, and acted more regularly than in the other Russian cities. It was the vetché which nominated and expelled princes, imprisoned them in the archiepiscopal palace, and formally accused them; elected and deposed the archbishops, decided peace and war, judged the State criminals. According to the old Slav custom, preserved in Poland till the fall of the republic, the decisions were always made, not by a majority, but by unanimity of voices. It was a kind of *liberum veto*. The majority had the resource of drowning the minority in the Volkhof. The prince as well as the posadnik, the boyars as well as the people, had the right of convoking the vetché. It met sometimes in the Court of Iaroslaf, sometimes in Saint Sophia's. As Poland had its confederations, its "diets under the shield," Novgorod occasionally saw on the banks of the Volkhof two rival and hostile assemblies, which often came to blows on the bridge. Before being submitted to the general assembly, the questions were sometimes deliberated in a smaller council, composed of notable citizens, of acting or past magistrates.

The chief Novgorodian magistrates were, first, the posadnik, called by contemporary German writers the burgomaster, who was changed nearly as often as the prince. The posadnik was chosen from some of the influential families, one of which alone gave a dozen posadniki to Novgorod. The first

magistrate was charged to defend civic privileges, and shared with the prince the judicial power and the right of distributing the taxes. He governed the city, commanded its army, directed its diplomacy, sealed the acts with its seal. The second officer was the *tvisatski*, who was a military chief, a colonel who had the captains of the town militia under his orders. He had a special tribunal, and seems to have been specially intrusted with the defence of the rights of the people, thus recalling the Roman tribunes. And besides the captains there was a *starosta*, a sort of district mayor, for each quarter of the town.

The chief document of the Novgorodian law is the *Letter of Justice*, of which the definite publication may be placed at fourteen hundred and seventy-one. It contains the same principles as the Code of Iaroslaf the Great. As in all the early Germanic and Scandinavian laws, we find the right of private revenge, the fixed price of blood, the "boot," or fine for injury inflicted, the oath admitted as evidence, the judgment of God, the judicial duel, which was still resorted to by Novgorod even after its decadence, in the sixteenth century. We also find records of corporal punishments. The thief was to be branded; on the second relapse into crime, he was to be hung. Territorial property acquires a greater importance, and, a sure evidence of Muscovite influence, a second court of appeal is admitted, — the appeal to the tribunal of the Grand Prince.

From a social point of view, the constitution of Novgorod presents other analogies with the constitution of Poland. Great inequality then existed between the different classes of society. An aristocracy of boyars had ultimately formed itself, whose internal quarrels agitated the town. Below the boyars came the *diéti boyarskié*, a kind of inferior nobility; then the different classes of citizens, the merchantmen, the *black people*, and the peasants. The merchants formed an association of their own, a sort of guild, round the Church of Saint

John. Military societies also existed, bands of independent adventurers or followers of some boyar who, impelled by hunger or a restless spirit, sought adventures afar on the great rivers of Northern Russia, pillaging alike friends and enemies, or establishing military colonies in the midst of Tchud or Finnish tribes.

The soil of Novgorod was sandy, marshy, and unproductive: hence the famines and pestilences that so often depopulated the country. Novgorod was forced to extend itself in order to live; it became therefore a commercial and colonizing city. In the tenth century Konstantin relates how the Slavs left Nemogard, or Novgorod, descended the Dnieper by Miliuisca, or Smolensk, Teliutza, or Lubetch, Tchernigof, Vuishegorod, Kief, and Vititchevo; crossed the Cataracts of the Dnieper, passed the naval stations of Saint Gregory and Saint Etherius, at the mouth of the river, and spread themselves over all the shores of the Greek Empire. The Oriental coins and jewels found in the barrows of the Ilmen show that the Novgorodians had an early and extensive commerce with the East. We see them exchange iron and weapons for the precious metals found by the Iugrians in the mines of the Urals. They traded with the Baltic Slavs; and when the latter lost their independence, and a flourishing centre, Wisby, was formed in the Isle of Gothland, Novgorod turned to this side also. In the twelfth century there was a Gothic market and a Variag Church at Novgorod, and a Novgorodian Church in Gothland. When the Germans began to dispute the commerce of the Baltic with the Scandinavians, Novgorod became the seat of a German market, which finally absorbed the Gothic one. When the Hanse League became the mistress of the North, we find the Germans established not only at Novgorod, but at Pskof and Ladoga, at all the outlets of the network of Novgorodian lakes. There they obtained considerable privileges, even the right to acquire pasture-land. They were masters, and at home in their fortified markets, in their stockade of thick planks,

where no Russian had the right to penetrate without their leave. This German trading company was governed by the most narrow and exclusive ideas. No Russian was allowed to belong to the company, nor to carry the wares of a German, an Englishman, a Walloon, or a Fleming. The company authorized a wholesale commerce only, and, to maintain its goods at a high price, it forbade imports beyond a certain amount. "In a word," says a German writer, Riesenkampf, in "*Der Deutsche Hof*," "during three centuries the Hanse League held a monopoly of all the external commerce of Northern Russia. If we inquire what profit or loss it brought this country, we must recognize that, thanks to it, Novgorod and Pskof were deprived of a free commerce with the West. Russia, in order to satisfy the first wants of civilization, fell into a state of complete independence. It was abandoned to the good pleasure and pitiless egotism of the German merchants."

The ecclesiastical constitution of Novgorod presents a special character. In the rest of Russia the clergy was Russian-orthodox. At Novgorod it was Novgorodian before everything. It was only in the twelfth century that the Slavs of Ilmen, who had been the last to be converted, could have an archbishop that was neither Greek nor Kievan, but of their own race. From that time the archbishop was elected by the citizens, by the *vetché*. Without waiting to be invested by the metropolitan bishop at Kief, he was at once installed in his episcopal palace. He was one of the great personages, the first dignitary of the republic. In public acts his name was placed before the others. "With the blessing of Archbishop Moses," says one letter-patent, "*posadnik Daniel and tuisatski Abraham salute you.*" He had a superiority over the prince on the ground of being a native of the country, whilst the descendant of Rurik was a foreigner. In return, the revenues of the archbishop, the treasures of Saint Sophia, were at the service of the republic. In the fourteenth century we find

an archbishop building at his own expense a krenl of stone. In the fifteenth century the riches of the cathedral were employed to ransom the Russian prisoners captured by the Lithuanians. The Church of Novgorod was essentially a national church; the ecclesiastics took part in the temporal affairs, the laity in the spiritual. In the fourteenth century the vetché put to death the heretical *strigolniki*, proscribed ancient superstitions, and burnt the sorcerers. As the citizens of Novgorod nominated their archbishop, they could also depose him. The orthodox religion extended with the Novgorod colonization among the Finnish tribes. In opposition to the Finns, the interests of the Church and the republic were identical. It was religion that contributed to the splendor of the city, and that specially profited by its wealth. Novgorod was full of churches and monasteries, founded by the piety of private individuals. Novgorod, which had shaken off the political supremacy of Kief, wished also to free itself from its religious domination, and no longer to be obliged to seek on the Dnieper the investiture of its archbishop, but to make him an independent metropolitan. It failed. When Moscow became of importance, she threatened not only the political, but the religious supremacy of Novgorod. Religion was, in the hands of the Muscovite princes, an instrument of government. The Novgorodian prelate always made common cause with his fellow-citizens, and endured with them their master's bursts of anger.

The literature of Novgorod was as national as the Church herself. The pious chronicles of the Novgorodian convents shared all the quarrels and all the passions of their fellow-citizens. "Even their style," says M. Bestujef, "reflects vividly the active, business-like character of the Novgorodians. It is short, and sparing of words; but their narratives embrace more completely than those of other Russian countries all the phases of actual life. They are the historians, not merely of the princes and boyars, but of the whole city. The

lives of the saints are the lives of Novgorodian saints; the miracles they relate are to the glory of the city. They tell you, for example, that Christ appeared to the artist charged with the paintings under the dome of Saint Sophia, and said to him: 'Do not represent me with my hand extended for blessing, but with my hand closed, because in it I hold Novgorod, and when it is opened it will be the end of the city.' The tale of the panic excited among the soldiers of Andrei Bogoliubski by the image of the Virgin wounded by a Suzdalian arrow was spread abroad. Novgorod has its own cycle of epic songs. Its heroes are not those of the Kievan poems. There is Vasili Buslaévitch, the bold boyar, who with his faithful drujina stood up to his knees in blood on the bridge of the Volkhof, holding in check all the muzhiki of Novgorod, whom he had defied to combat. Vasili Buslaévitch is the true type of these proud adventurers, who knew neither friend nor enemy, — a true Novgorodian oligarch, a hero of civil war. Still more popular was Sadko, the rich merchant, a kind of Novgorodian Sindbad or Ulysses, a worthy representative of a people of merchants and adventurers, who sought his fortunes on the waves. A tempest rose, and men drew lots to decide who should be sacrificed to the wrath of the gods. Sadko threw a little wooden ring into the water, the others flung in iron rings: O prodigy! the others swam, his sank. He obeyed his destiny, and threw himself into the waves, but he was received in the palace of the king of the sea, who tested him in various ways and wished him to marry his daughter. Then suddenly Sadko found himself on the shore with great treasures, but what were these compared to the treasures of the city? "They see that I am a rich merchant of Novgorod, but Novgorod is still richer than I."

## PSKOF AND VIATKA.

Of all the towns subject to Novgorod, Pskof was the most important. On the point formed by the junction of the Pskova and the Velikaïa rises its kreml, with its crumbling ramparts, its ruined gates and towers. These once famous walls are to-day a mass of ruins, and the street-boys amuse themselves by throwing stones in the Pskova to frighten the laundresses. Pskof is only a poor little place with ten thousand souls. Scarce anything remains of its past splendor save the Cathedral of the Trinity at one end of the kreml. There rest in metal coffins the bones of the best-loved princes, Vsevolod-Gabriel and Dovmont, a converted Lithuanian who came in the thirteenth century to defend the republic against his own compatriots. This old town has still many churches and monasteries ; the distant view of it is beautiful, and on fête-days the dead city seems to awake at the chimes of its innumerable bells, which ring as merrily as in the days of its glorious past.

Nestor makes Pskof the native land of Saint Olga. Its whole history is summed up in these two facts : first, the struggle against the Tchudi, and, later, against the Germans of Livonia ; second, its efforts to become free from Novgorod. The independence of the city was ultimately secured by its wealth and commerce. The first prince who ruled it as a separate state, Vsevolod-Gabriel, was expelled by his subjects, and therefore was welcomed with the greater eagerness by the Pskovians. When the Suzdalian party ruled at Novgorod, it was generally the contrary party that triumphed in Pskof. About twelve hundred and fourteen the little republic contracted an offensive and defensive alliance with the Germans ; Pskof undertook to help them against the Lithuanians, and they were to support Pskof against Novgorod. This was playing rather a dangerous game. In twelve hundred and forty, one Tverdillo delivered the city up to the Livonians,

and it was not set free till twelve hundred and forty-two. From this moment Pskof ceased to mix in the civil wars of Novgorod. It had enough to do with its own affairs and its struggle against the Germans, Swedes, and Lithuanians. It also claimed the title "My Lord Pskof the Great"; but it was only in thirteen hundred and forty-eight that the Novgorodians, needing its help against Magnus, King of Sweden, formally recognized its independence, by the treaty of Bolstof, and concluded a bond of fraternal friendship. Novgorod became the elder brother, and Pskof the younger. The organization of Pskof is almost that of its ancient metropolis. We again find the prince, the vetché, the division into quarters, up to the number of six, each one having its mayor.

In the twelfth century a new Novgorodian colony was formed between the Kama and the Viatka, which remained a republic till the end of the fifteenth century. "This distant country," says M. Bestujef-Riumin, "is still quite Novgorodian. When the traveller has passed the Viatka, he meets with a peculiar mode of constructing the huts. There are no longer whole lines of hovels joined one to the other, as on this side of the river, but there is a high house, where the court, rooms, and offices are surrounded by a rampart of pales, and united under the same roof; in a word, it is a Novgorodian house. You hear the Novgorodian dialect; you see the Novgorodian cap. It is the Novgorod colonization still living." In eleven hundred and seventy-four some adventurers from the Great Republic came from the Kama to the Viatka, and advanced from east to west, and founded a colony on this river, which is today the village of Nikulitsuin. Another band defeated the Tcheremisa, and on their territory raised Koshkarof, at present called Kotelnitch. Then the two bands reunited, and penetrated into the Votiak country. On the right bank of the Viatka, on the summit of a high mountain, they perceived a city surrounded by a rampart and a ditch, which contained one of the sanctuaries of the people. As pious as the compan-

ions of Cortez and Pizarro, the Russian adventurers prepared themselves for the assault by a fast of several days, then invoked Saints Boris and Gleb, and captured the town. Next, at the mouth of the Khluinovitsa, in the Viatka, not very far off, they built the city of Khluinof, which became, under the name of Viatka, the capital of all their colonies. It had no walls, but the houses, built close together, formed an unbroken rampart against the enemy, a wall and defence. At the news of this success, other colonists flocked from Novgorod and the forests of the north, and founded other centres of population. These bold pioneers had more than once to reunite, sometimes against the aboriginal Finns or the Tatar invaders, sometimes against the pretensions of Novgorod, or the Grand Prince of Moscow. We find among them, as in the metropolis, boyars, merchants, and citizens. They had voïevodui or atamans for their military chiefs. Their spirit of religious independence equalled their political independence. Jonas, Metropolitan of Moscow, writes angrily about the indocility of their clergy, and avenges himself by blaming their morals. "Your spiritual sons," he wrote to the priests of Viatka, "live contrary to the law. They have five, six, or even seven wives. And you dare to bless these marriages!"

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE LIVONIAN KNIGHTS. — CONQUEST OF THE BALTIC PROVINCES BY THE GERMANS.

1187 — 1237.

CONVERSION OF LIVONIA. — RISE OF THE LIVONIAN KNIGHTS. — UNION  
WITH THE TEUTONIC KNIGHTS.

---

#### CONVERSION OF LIVONIA. — RISE OF THE LIVONIAN KNIGHTS.

THREE new races of men, three invasions, from the twelfth to the thirteenth century, were to modify the historical development of the different parts of Slavonia; the Russia of the northwest was to make acquaintance with the Germans, Russia of the east and south with the Tatar-Mongols, Russia of the west with the Lithuanians.

Part of the Tchud or Lett tribes of the Baltic were considered by the Russian princes and republics of the northwest as their subjects or tributaries. If the Danish Cnut the Great had conquered Esthonia, Iaroslaf the Great had founded Iurief, or Dorpat, on the Embach which falls into the Peipus, and then separated the Danish and Russian dominions. It separates to-day the country of the Finns into two peoples speaking different dialects, the dialect of Revel and that of Dorpat. A Mstislaf, son of Vladimir Monomakh, had conquered from the Tehudi the city of Odenpaeh. In the Lett country the princes of Polotsk had captured the native fortresses of Gersiké and Kokenhausen on the Dwina, and extended their influence along this river to Thoreïda and Ascheraden.

With the German merchants Latin missionaries soon began to make their appearance on the Baltic. The monk Meinhard, sent by the Archbishop of Bremen, converted the Livonians, and was created Bishop of Livonia. What the Germans really brought, under the cloak of Christianity, to the Letts and descendants of the Tchud hero Kalevy, and to many other Slav, Lithuanian, or Finnish tribes, now extinct, was the ruin of their national independence and servitude. The German merchant and the German missionary appeared almost at the same time on the Dwina. The apostle Meinhard built a church at Uexküll, and a fortress round the church, in eleven hundred and eighty-seven. From this fatal day these brave tribes lost their lands and their liberty. The Livonians soon saw to what this mission tended. They rose against the missionaries, and in eleven hundred and ninety-eight the second Bishop of Livonia perished in battle. The natives returned to their gods, and plunged in the Dwina to wash off the baptism they had received, and to send it back to Germany. Then Innocent the Third preached a crusade against them, and Albert of Buxhœwden, bishop from eleven hundred and ninety-eight till twelve hundred and twenty-nine, entered the Dwina with a fleet of twenty-three ships, and built the town of Riga, which he made his capital in twelve hundred. He was their third bishop, and the true founder of the German rule in Livonia. The following year he installed the Order of the Brothers of the Army of Christ, or the Sword-bearers, to whom the Pope gave the statutes of the Templars. They wore a white mantle, with a red cross on the shoulders. The greater number were natives of Westphalia and Saxony. Vinno de Rohrbach was their first grand master. The Livonians, after having implored the help of the princes of Polotsk, marched on Riga, and suffered an entire defeat in twelve hundred and six. The Prince of Polotsk in his turn besieged the city during the bishop's absence, but it was saved by the arrival of a German flotilla.

Three causes were particularly favorable to the success of the knights of the sword, namely : the weakness of the princes of Polotsk, the intestine quarrels of Novgorod, which prevented it from watching over Russian interests, and the divisions among the natives, who had not yet been able to raise their minds from the conception of the tribe to that of the nation. The knights were likewise far superior in their arms and tactics. The German fortresses were solidly built in cemented stone, while those of the natives were ramparts of earth, wood, or loose stones. In vain they tried to drag down with ropes the palisades of the German ramparts. The Sword-bearers afterwards undertook a series of campaigns against the Livonians and the Semigals of the Dwina, and against the Tchudi of the north and the Letts of the southeast. If a tribe declined baptism and obedience, it was delivered a prey to fire and sword ; when it submitted, hostages were taken, and castles built on its territory, these being often merely German reconstructions of the ancient native fortresses.

It was in this manner that Riga, Kirchholm, Uexküll, Lennewarden, Ascheraden, and Kreuzburg were built on the Dwina ; Neuhausen, near the Peïpus, Wolmar, Wenden, Segevold, and Kremon on the Aa ; Fellin and Weissenstein among the Northern Tchudi. The strangers managed to take Kokenhausen and Gersiké from the princes of Polotsk, Odenpæh and Dorpat from the Novgorodians ; Pskof was threatened. In the north, Kolyvan was bought from the King of Denmark, after the fiercest disputes. Under its rock lies Kolyvan, a Titan hero of Finnish mythology. The town is now called Revel.

The conquered country was divided into fiefs, some of which belonged to the Order by whom they were distributed among the knights, the rest were at the disposal of the archbishop, who enfeoffed his own men. The new towns received the constitution of the merchant cities of Lübeck, Bremen, or Hamburg. Riga was the most powerful of them. The

Archbishop of Riga, the chapter, the town, and the grand master of the Order often quarrelled over their respective rights. Their divisions were one day to bring about the decline of the institution.

#### UNION WITH THE TEUTONIC KNIGHTS.

About twelve hundred and twenty-five another military fraternity was established among the Prussian Lithuanians, the Teutonic Order, which, on the remains of the subject pagan tribes, built the towns of Thorn, Marienberg, Elbing, and Königsberg. The Teutons of Prussia and the knights of Livonia were certain to be friendly; the black cross fraternized with the red, and, in twelve hundred and thirty-seven, the two orders united into one association. The Teutonic landmeister, Hermann de Balk, became landmeister of Livonia. The grand master of the Teutonic Order took precedence of all the landmeisters. Strengthened by this alliance, the "brothers of the army of Christ" were able to impose the most cruel servitude on the aboriginal Letts, Livonians, and Finns. These brave barbarians soon became peasants attached to the glebe. The German nobility restored them their liberty at the beginning of this century, but it did not restore them their lands.

The conquering and conquered races are always separate. To the Tchud the word *Saxa*, meaning Saxon, or German, always signifies the master. A song of the Tchud country of Pskof, called "The Days of Slavery," deplores the time when "the banners of the strangers waved, when the intruders made us slaves, enchained us as the serfs of tyrants, forced us to be their servants. Brother, what can I sing? Sadly sounds the song of tears. The lot of the slave is too hard." Another song of Wiesland is entitled "The Days of the Past." "The past, that was the time of massacre, a long time of suffering. . . . Destroying fiends were unchained against us. The

priests strangled us with their rosaries, the greedy knights plundered us, troops of brigands ravaged us, armed murderers cut us in pieces. The father of the cross stole our riches, stole the treasure from the hiding-place, attacked the tree, the sacred tree, polluted the waters and the fountain of salvation. The axe smote on the oak of Tara, the woful hatchet on the tree of Kero."

In the Kalevy-poeg, or "The Son of Kalev," the national poem of the Tehud-Esthonians, the hero, who is the personification of the race, displays in his various adventures a wonderful Titanic force. He swam the Gulf of Finland, he rooted up oak-trees to make his clubs; with his horse and his colossal harrow he ploughed up the land of Esthonia; he exterminated the bears and the beasts of prey; he conquered the magician of Finland, and the genii of the caves; he descended into hell and fought with Sarvig the horned; he sailed away to explore the utmost limits of the world, and when the hot breath of the spirits of the North burnt up his wooden vessel, he continued his voyage in a vessel of silver. He braved whirlwinds at sea; discovered the isle of flame, of smoke, and boiling water, which is perhaps Iceland, where the three volcanoes vomit forth fire; he encountered a gigantic woman who plucked up several sailors with the grass for the kine, as if the men had been insects; he rallied the courage of his pilot, horror-stricken by the flames with which the spirits of the North filled heaven, and said to him, "Let them send their darts of fire, they will only lighten us on our way, since the daylight would not accompany us, and the sun has long since gone to rest." He fought with men whose bodies were like dogs, possibly the Esquimaux of Greenland, and retraced his steps only because a magician assured him "that the wall of the world's end was still far off." It is at the close of the poem, when he is told that the men of iron have landed, that his unconquerable heart is troubled. The spear cannot penetrate their armor, nor the axe break it. In

vain he seeks counsel at the tomb of his father ; the tomb is silent, “ the leaves murmur plaintively, the winds sigh drearily, the dew itself is troubled, the eye of the clouds is wet ” ; all Esthonian nature shares in the sinister forebodings of the national hero. He raised, however, the battle-cry, and his warriors assembled on the Embach. Bloody is the battle ! The Esthonians gain the victory, but what a victory ! The bravest of them are dead, the two brothers of Kalevy-poeg perish, his charger is struck down by the axe of a stranger. The end of Esthonia, the age of slavery, has arrived ; it is time that Kalevy-poeg, the representative of the heroic age, should disappear ; he who had vanquished the demon Sarvig, the sorcerers of Finland, and the spirits of the pole, could not subdue these men whom an unknown, irresistible force sustained superior to that of the gods. Behold him, the captive of Mana, god of death, his wrist held fast in a rock, which is the gate of hell. Long his sons trusted that Mana would give him back his liberty, and that once again the iron men would feel the weight of his arm ; but, like King Arthur, he has never appeared, bringing to his people the liberty that the Germans have taken from them.

## CHAPTER X.

### THE TATAR MONGOLS. — ENSLAVEMENT OF RUSSIA.

1224 — 1264.

ORIGIN AND CUSTOMS OF THE MONGOLS. — BATTLES OF THE KALKA, OF  
RIAZAN, OF KOLOMNA, AND OF THE SIT. — CONQUEST OF RUSSIA. —  
ALEXANDER NEVSKI. — THE MONGOL YOKE. — INFLUENCE OF THE  
TATARS ON RUSSIAN DEVELOPMENT.

---

#### ORIGIN AND CUSTOMS OF THE MONGOLS.

UP to this time the history of Russia has presented some analogy with that of the West. Slavonia, like Gaul, had received Roman civilization and Christianity from the South. The Northmen had brought it an organization which recalls that of the Germans ; and it had enjoyed a certain semblance of unity under Iaroslaf, like the West under Charles the Great, while it was afterwards dismembered and divided like France in feudal times. But in the thirteenth century Russia suffered an unprecedented misfortune ; it was invaded and subjugated by Asiatic hordes. This fatal event contributed quite as much as the disadvantage of the soil and the climate to retard its development by many centuries. "Nature," as M. Solovief says, "has been a step-mother to Russia" ; fate was another step-mother.

"In those times," say the Russian chroniclers, "there came upon us for our sins, unknown nations. No one could tell their origin, whence they came, what religion they professed. God alone knew who they were, God and perhaps wise men

learned in books." When we think of the horror of the whole of Europe at the arrival of the Mongols, and the anguish of a Frederick, of a Saint Louis, an Innocent the Fourth, we may imagine the terror of the Russians. They bore the first shock of those mysterious foemen, who were, so the people whispered, Gog and Magog, who, according to Joinville, "were to come at the end of the world, when Antichrist is to destroy everything."

The Ta-ta, or Tatars, seem to have been a tribe of the great Mongol race, living at the foot of the Altai, who in spite of their long-continued discords frequently found means to lay waste China by their invasions. The portrait drawn of them recalls in many ways those already traced by Chinese, Latin, and Greek authors, of the Huns, the Avars, and other nomad peoples of former invasions. "The Ta-tzis, or the Das," says a Chinese writer of the thirteenth century, "occupy themselves exclusively with their flocks; they go wandering ceaselessly from pasture to pasture, from river to river. They are ignorant of the nature of a town or a wall. They are unacquainted with writing and books; their treaties are concluded orally. From infancy they are accustomed to ride, to aim their arrows at rats and birds, and thus acquire the courage essential to their life of wars and rapine. They have neither religious ceremonies nor judicial institutions. From the prince to the lowest among the people all feed upon the flesh of the animals the skins of which they use for clothing. The strongest among them have the largest and fattest morsels at feasts; the old men are put off with the fragments that are left. They respect nothing but strength and bravery; age and weakness they despise. When the father dies, the son marries his youngest wives." A Mussulman writer adds, that they adore the sun, and practise polygamy and the community of wives. This pastoral people did not take an interest in any phenomenon of nature except the growth of grass. The names they gave to their months were suggested by the different aspects of the prairie. Born horsemen, they had no infantry in war. They

were ignorant of the art of sieges. "But," says a Chinese author, "when they wish to take a town, they fall on the suburban villages. Each leader seizes ten men, and every prisoner is forced to carry a certain quantity of wood, stones, and other materials. They use these for filling up fosses, or digging trenches. In the capture of a town the loss of ten thousand men was thought nothing. No place could resist them. After a siege all the population was massacred, without distinction of old or young, rich or poor, beautiful or ugly, those who resisted or those who yielded; no distinguished person escaped death, if a defence was attempted."

It was these rough tribes that Temutchin, or Genghis Khan, who ruled from eleven hundred and fifty-four until twelve hundred and twenty-seven, succeeded in uniting into one nation after forty years of obscure struggles. Then in a general congress of their princes he proclaimed himself emperor, and declared that, as there was only one sun in heaven, there ought to be only one emperor on the earth. At the head of their forces he conquered Mantchuria, the kingdom of Tangut, Northern China, Turkestan, and Great Bokhara, which never recovered from this disaster, and the plains of Western Asia as far as the Crimea. When he died, he left to be divided between his four sons the largest empire that ever existed.

It was during his conquest of Bokhara that his lieutenant Tchep and Subudai-bagadur subdued in their passage a multitude of Turkish peoples, passed the Caspian by its southern shore, invaded Georgia and the Caucasus, and in the southern steppes of Russia came in contact with the Polovtsui.

#### BATTLES OF THE KALKA, OF RIAZAN, OF KOLOMNA, AND OF THE SIT.—CONQUEST OF RUSSIA.

The hereditary enemies of the Russians proper, the Polovtsui, asked the Christian princes for help against these Mongols and Turks, who were their brothers by a common

origin. "They have taken our country," said they to the descendants of Saint Vladimir; "to-morrow they will take yours." Mstislaf the Bold, then Prince of Galitch, persuaded all the dynasties of Southern Russia to take up arms against the Tatars: his nephew Daniel, Prince of Volhynia, Mstislaf Romanovitch, Grand Prince of Kiev, Oleg of Kursk, Mstislaf of Tchernigof, Vladimir of Smolensk, Vsevolod, for a short time Prince of Novgorod, responded to his appeal. To cement his alliance with the Russians, Basti, khan of the Polovtsui, embraced orthodoxy. The Russian army had already arrived on the Lower Dnieper, when the Tatar ambassadors made their appearance. "We have come by God's command against our slaves and grooms, the accursed Polovtsui. Be at peace with us; we have no quarrel with you." The Russians, with the promptitude and thoughtlessness that characterized the men of that time, put the ambassadors to death. They then went farther into the steppe, and encountered the Asiatic hordes on the Kalka, a small river running into the Sea of Azof. The Russian chivalry on this memorable day showed the same disorder and the same ill-advised eagerness as the French chivalry at the opening of the English wars. Mstislaf the Bold, Daniel of Galitch, and Oleg of Kursk were the first to rush into the midst of the infidels, without waiting for the princes of Kiev, and even without giving them warning, in order to gain for themselves the honors of victory. In the middle of the combat the Polovtsui were seized with a panic and fell back on the Russian ranks, thus throwing them into disorder. The rout became general, and the leaders spurred on their steeds in hopes of reaching the Dnieper.

Six princes and seventy of the chief boyars, or voïevodui, remained on the field of battle. It was the Crecy and Poitiers of the Russian chivalry. Hardly a tenth of the army escaped; the Kievans alone left ten thousand dead. The Grand Prince of Kiev, however, Mstislaf Romanovitch, still occupied a fortified camp on the banks of the Kalka. Aban-

done by the rest of the army, he tried to defend himself. The Tatars offered to make terms; he might retire on payment of a ransom for himself and his drujina. He capitulated, and the conditions were broken. His guard was massacred, and he and his two sons-in-law were stifled under planks. The Tatars held their festival over the inanimate bodies in twelve hundred and twenty-four.

After this thunderbolt, which struck terror into the whole of Russia, the Tatars paused and returned to the East. Nothing more was heard of them. Thirteen years passed, during which the princes reverted to their perpetual discords. Those in the northeast had given no help to the Russians of the Dnieper; perhaps the Grand Prince, Iuri the Second of Suzdal, may have rejoiced over the humiliation of the Kievans and Gallicians. The Mongols were forgotten; the chronicles, however, are filled with fatal presages: in the midst of scarcity, famine and pestilence, of incendiaries in the towns and calamities of all sorts, they remark on the comet of twelve hundred and twenty-four, the earthquake and eclipse of the sun of twelve hundred and thirty.

The Tatars were busy finishing the conquest of China, but presently one of the sons of Genghis, Ugudei or Oktaï, sent his nephew Batui to the West. As the reflux of the Polovtsui had announced the invasion of twelve hundred and twenty-four, that of the Saxin nomads, a tribe akin to the Khirghiz, who took refuge on the lands of the Bulgarians of the Volga, warned men of a new irruption of the Tatars, and indicated its direction. It was no longer South Russia, but Suzdalian Russia that was threatened. In twelve hundred and thirty-seven Batui conquered the Great City, capital of the half-civilized Bulgarui, who were, like the Polovtsui, ancient enemies of Russia, and who were to be included in its ruin. Bolgary was given up to the flames, and its inhabitants were put to the sword. The Tatars next plunged into the deep forests of the Volga, and sent a sorcerer and two officers as

envoys to the princes of Riazan. The three princes of Riazan, those of Pronsk, Kolomna, Moscow, and Murom advanced to meet them. "If you want peace," said the Tatars, "give us the tenth of your goods." "When we are dead," replied the Russian princes, "you can have the whole." Though abandoned by the princes of Tchernigof and the Grand Prince Iuri the Second, of whom they had implored help, the dynasty of Riazan accepted the unequal struggle. They were completely crushed; nearly all their princes remained on the field of battle. Legend has embellished their fall. It is told how Feodor preferred to die rather than see his young wife, Euphrasia, the spoil of Batui, and how, on learning his fate, she threw herself and her son from the window of her chamber. Oleg the Handsome, found still alive on the battle-field, repelled the caresses, the attention, and religion of the khan, and was cut in pieces. Riazan was immediately taken by assault, sacked, and burned. All the towns of the principality suffered the same fate.

It was now the turn of the Grand Prince, for the Russia of the northeast had not even the honor of falling in a great battle like the Russia of the southwest, united for once against the common enemy. The Suzdalian army, commanded by a son of Iuri the Second, was beaten on the day of Kolomna, on the Oka. The Tatars burned Moscow, then besieged Vladimir on the Kliazma, which Iuri the Second had abandoned to seek for help in the North. His two sons were charged with the defence of the capital. Princes and boyars, feeling there was no alternative but death or servitude, prepared to die. The princesses and all the nobles prayed Bishop Metrophanes to give them the tonsure; and when the Tatars rushed into the town by all its gates, the vanquished retired into the cathedral, where they perished, men and women, in a general conflagration. Suzdal, Rostof, Iaroslavl, fourteen towns, a multitude of villages in the Grand Principality, were all given over to the flames in twelve hundred and thirty-eight. The

Tatars then went to seek the Grand Prince, who was encamped on the Sit, almost on the frontier of the possessions of Novgorod. Iuri the Second could neither avenge his people nor his family. After the battle the Bishop of Rostof found his headless corpse. His nephew Vasilko, who was taken prisoner, was stabbed for refusing to serve Batui. The immense Tatar army, after having sacked Tver, took Torjok; there "the Russian heads fell beneath the sword of the Tatars as grass beneath the scythe." The territory of Novgorod was invaded; the great republic trembled, but the deep forests and the swollen rivers delayed Batui. The invading flood reached the Cross of Ignatius, about fifty miles from Novgorod, then returned to the Southeast. On the way the small town of Kozelsk, near Kaluga, checked the Tatars for so long, and inflicted on them so much loss, that it was called by them the wicked town. Its population was exterminated, and the prince, Vasili, still a child, was "drowned in blood."

The two following years were spent by the Tatars in ravaging Southern Russia. They burnt Pereiaslaf, and Tchernigof, defended with desperation by its princes. Next Mangu, grandson of Genghis Khan, marched against the famous town of Kief, whose name resounded through the East and in the books of the Arab writers. From the left bank of the Dnieper the barbarian admired the great city on the heights of the right bank, towering over the wide river with its white walls and towers adorned by Byzantine artists, and innumerable churches with cupolas of gold and silver. Mangu offered the Kievans terms of surrender; the fate of Riazan, of Tchernigof, of Vladimir, the capitals of powerful states, announced to them the lot that awaited them in case of refusal, yet the Kievans dared to massacre the envoys of the khan. Mikhail, their Grand Prince, fled; his rival, Daniel of Galitch, did not care to remain. On hearing the report of Mangu, Batui came to assault Kief with the bulk of his army. The grinding of the wooden chariots, the bellowings of the buffaloes, the cries of

the camels, the neighing of the horses, the howlings of the Tatars, rendered it impossible, says the annalist, to hear your own voice in the town. The Tatars assailed the Polish Gate, and knocked down the walls with a battering-ram. "The Kievans, supported by the brave Dmitri, a Gallician boyar, defended the fallen ramparts till the end of the day, then retreated to the Church of the Tithe, which they surrounded by a palisade. The last defenders of Kief found themselves grouped around the tomb of Iaroslaf. Next day they perished. The khan gave the boyar his life, but 'the Mother of Russian cities' was sacked. This third pillage, which took place in twelve hundred and forty, was the most terrible. Even the tombs were not respected. All that remains of the Church of the Tithe is only a few fragments of mosaic in the Museum at Kief. Saint Sophia and the Monastery of the Catacombs were delivered up to be plundered."

Volhynia and Gallicia still remained, but their princes could not defend them, and Russia found itself, with the exception of Novgorod and the northwest country, under the Tatar yoke. The princes had fled or were dead; hundreds of thousands of Russians were dragged into captivity. Men saw the wives of boyars, "who had never known work, who a short time ago had been clothed in rich garments, adorned with jewels and collars of gold, surrounded with slaves, now reduced to be themselves the slaves of barbarians and their wives, turning the wheel of the mill, and preparing their coarse food."

If we look for the causes which rendered the defeat of the brave Russian nation so complete, we may, with Karamsin, indicate the following:—

Though the Tatars were not more advanced, from a military point of view, than the Russians, who had made war in Greece and in the West against the most warlike and civilized people of Europe, yet they had an enormous superiority of numbers. Batui probably had with him five hundred thousand warriors.

This immense army moved like one man; it could succes-

sively annihilate the small armies of the princes, or the militia of the towns, which presented themselves one at a time to its blows. The Tatars had found Russia divided against itself.

Even though Russia had wished to form a confederation, the sudden irruptions of an army entirely composed of horsemen did not leave it time.

In the tribes ruled by Batui every man was a soldier; in Russia the nobles and citizens alone bore arms: the peasants, who formed the bulk of the population, allowed themselves to be stabbed or bound without resistance.

It was not by a weak nation that Russia was conquered. The Tatar-Mongols, under Genghis Khan, had filled the East with the glory of their name, and subdued nearly all Asia. They arrived, proud of their exploits, animated by the recollection of a hundred victories, and reinforced by numerous peoples whom they had vanquished, and hurried with them to the West.

When the princes of Galitch, of Volhynia, and of Kief arrived as fugitives in Poland and Hungary, Europe was terror-stricken. The Pope, whose support had been claimed by the Prince of Galitch, summoned Christendom to arms. Louis the Ninth prepared for a crusade. Frederick the Second, as Emperor, wrote to the sovereigns of the West: "This is the moment to open the eyes of body and soul, now that the brave princes on whom we reckoned are dead or in slavery." The Tatars invaded Hungary, gave battle to the Poles in Liegnitz in Silesia, had their progress a long while arrested by the courageous defence of Olmütz in Moravia, by the Tchek voïevod, Iaroslaf, and stopped finally, learning that a large army, commanded by the King of Bohemia and the dukes of Austria and Karinthia, was approaching. The news of the death of Oktaï, second emperor of all the Tatars, in China, recalled Batui from the West, and during the long march from Germany his army necessarily diminished in number. The Tatars were no longer in the vast plains of Asia and Eastern Europe, but in a broken

hilly country, bristling with fortresses, defended by a population more dense and a chivalry more numerous than those in Russia. To sum up, all the fury of the Mongol tempest spent itself on the Slavonic race. It was the Russians who fought at the Kalka, at Kolomna, at the Sit; the Poles and Silesians at Liegnitz; the Bohemians and Moravians at Olmütz. The Germans suffered nothing from the invasion of the Mongols but the fear of it. It exhausted itself principally on those plains of Russia which seem a continuation of the steppes of Asia. Only in Russian history did the invasion produce great results. About the same time Batui built on one of the arms of the Lower Volga a city called Sarai, or the Castle, which became the capital of a powerful Tatar Empire, the Golden Horde, extending from the Ural and Caspian to the mouth of the Danube. The Golden Horde was formed not only of Tatar-Mongols, or Nogaïs, who even now survive in the Northern Crimea, but particularly of the remains of ancient nomads, such as the Petchenegi and Polovtsui, whose descendants seem to be the present Kalmucks and Bashkirs; of Turkish tribes tending to become sedentary, like the Tatars of Astrakhan in the present day; and of the Finnish populations already established in the country, and which mixed with the invaders. Okaï, Kuïuk, and Mangu, the first three successors of Genghis Khan, elected by all the Mongol princes, took the title of Great Khans, and the Golden Horde recognized their authority; but under his fourth successor, Khubulaï, who usurped the throne and established himself in China, this bond of vassalage was broken. The Golden Horde became an independent state in twelve hundred and sixty. United and powerful under the terrible Batui, who died in twelve hundred and fifty-five, it fell to pieces under his successors; but in the fourteenth century the Khan Uzbek reunited it anew, and gave the Horde a second period of prosperity. The Tatars, who were pagans when they entered Russia, embraced the faith of Islam about twelve hundred and seventy-two, and became its most formidable apostles.

## ALEXANDER NEVSKI.

Iaroslaf, after his defeat at Lipetsk, entered Suzdal on the tragic death of his brother, the Grand Prince Iuri the Second, in twelve hundred and thirty-eight, and found his inheritance in the most deplorable condition. The towns and villages were burnt, the country and roads covered with unburied corpses; the survivors were hiding in the woods. He recalled the fugitives and began to rebuild. Batui, who had completed the devastation of South Russia, summoned Iaroslaf to do him homage at Saraï, on the Volga. Iaroslaf was received there with distinction. Batui confirmed his title of Grand Prince, but invited him to go in person to the Great Khan, supreme chief of the Mongol nation, who lived on the banks of the river Sakhalian, or Amur. To do this was to cross the whole of Russia and Asia. Iaroslaf bent his knees to the new master of the world, Oktaï, succeeded in refuting the accusations brought against him by a Russian boyar, and obtained a new confirmation of his title. On his return, in twelve hundred and forty-six, he died in the desert of exhaustion, and his faithful servants brought his body back to Vladimir. His son Andrei succeeded him in Suzdal, and ruled until twelve hundred and fifty-two. His other son, Alexander, reigned at Novgorod the Great.

Alexander was as brave as he was intelligent. He was the hero of the North, and yet he forced himself to accept the necessary humiliations of his terrible situation. In his youth we see him fighting with all the enemies of Novgorod, Livonian knights and Tchudi, Swedes and Finns. The Novgorodians found themselves at issue with the Scandinavians on the subject of their possessions on the Neva and the Gulf of Finland. As they had helped the natives to resist the Latin faith, King John obtained the promise of Gregory the Ninth that a crusade, with plenary indulgences, should be preached against the Great Republic and its protégés, the

pagans of the Baltic. His son-in-law, Birger, with an army of Scandinavians, Finns, and Western Crusaders, took the command of the forces, and sent word to the Prince of Novgorod, "Defend yourself if you can: know that I am already in your provinces." The Russians on their side, feeling they were fighting for orthodoxy, opposed the Latin crusade with a Greek one. Alexander humbled himself in Saint Sophia, received the benediction of the Archbishop Spiridion, and addressed an energetic harangue to his warriors. He had no time to await reinforcements from Suzdal. He attacked the Swedish camp, which was situated on the Ijora, one of the southern affluents of the Neva, which has given its name to Ingria. Alexander won a brilliant victory, which gained him his surname of Nevski, and the honor of becoming one of the patrons of Saint Petersburg under Peter the Great, the second conqueror of the Swedes. By the orders of his great successor, his bones repose in the Monastery of Alexander Nevski. The battle of the Neva was preserved in a dramatic legend. An Ingrian chief told Alexander how, on the eve of the combat, he had seen a mysterious barque, manned by two warriors with shining brows, glide through the night. They were Boris and Gleb, who came to the rescue of their young kinsman. Other accounts have preserved to us the individual exploits of the Russian heroes, — Gabriel, Skuilaf of Novgorod, James of Polotsk, Sabas, who threw down the tent of Birger, and Alexander Nevski himself, who with a stroke of the lance "imprinted his seal on his face." Notwithstanding the triumph of such a service, Alexander and the Novgorodians could not agree; a short time after he retired to Pereiaslavl-Zalieski. The proud republicans soon had reason to regret the exile of this second Camillus. The Order of the Sword-bearers, the indefatigable enemy of orthodoxy, took Pskof, their ally; the Germans imposed tribute on the Vojané, vassals of Novgorod, constructed the fortress of Koporié on the territory of the Neva, took the Russian town of Tessof in

Esthonia, and pillaged the merchants of Novgorod within seventeen miles of their ramparts. During this time the Tchudi and the Lithuanians captured the peasants, and the cattle of the citizens. At last Alexander allowed himself to be touched by the prayers of the archbishop and the people, assembled an army, expelled the Germans from Koporié, and next from Pskof, hung as traitors the captive Vojané and Tchudi, and put to death six knights who fell into his hands. This war between the two races and two religions was cruel and pitiless. The law of nations was hardly recognized. More than once Germans and Russians slew the ambassadors of the other side. Alexander Nevski finally gave battle to the Livonian knights on the ice of Lake Peïpus, killed four hundred of them, took fifty prisoners, and exterminated a multitude of Tchudi. Such was the Battle of the Ice, which took place in twelve hundred and forty-two. He returned in triumph to Novgorod, dragging with him his prisoners loaded with irons. The Grand Master expected to see Alexander at the gates of Riga, and implored help of Denmark. The Prince of Novgorod, satisfied with having delivered Pskof, concluded peace, recovered certain districts, and consented to the exchange of prisoners. At this time Innocent the Fourth, deceived by false information, addressed a bull to Alexander, as a devoted son of the Church, assuring him that his father Iaroslaf, while dying among the Horde, had desired to submit himself to the throne of Saint Peter. Two cardinals brought him this letter from the Pope in twelve hundred and fifty-one.

It is this hero of the Neva and Lake Peïpus, this vanquisher of the Scandinavians and Livonian knights, that we are presently to see grovelling at the feet of a barbarian. Alexander Nevski perceived that, in presence of this immense and brutal force of the Mongols, all resistance was madness, all pride ruin. To brave them was to complete the overthrow of Russia. His conduct may not have been chivalrous, but it

was wise and humane. Alexander disdained to play the hero at the expense of his people, like his brother Andrei of Suzdal, who was immediately obliged to fly, abandoning his country to the vengeance of the Tatars. The Prince of Novgorod was the only prince in Russia who had kept his independence, but he knew Batui's hands could extend as far as the Ilmen. "God has subjected many peoples to me," wrote the barbarian to him: "will you alone refuse to recognize my power? If you wish to keep your land, come to me; you will see the splendor and the glory of my sway." Then Alexander went to Saraï with his brother Andrei, who was disputing the Grand Principality of Vladimir with his uncle, Sviatoslaf. Batui declared that fame had not exaggerated the merit of Alexander, that he far excelled the common run of Russian princes. He enjoined the two brothers to show themselves, like their father Iaroslaf, at the Great Horde; they returned from it in twelve hundred and fifty-seven. Kúïuk had confirmed the one in the possession of Vladimir, and the other in that of Novgorod, adding to it all South Russia and Kief.

The year twelve hundred and sixty put Alexander's patience and his politic obedience to the Tatars to the proof. Ulavtchi, to whom the Khan Berkaï had confided the affairs of Russia, demanded that Novgorod should submit to the census and pay tribute. It was the hero of the Neva who was charged with the humiliating and dangerous mission of persuading Novgorod. When the posadnik expressed in the vetché the opinion that it was necessary to submit to the strongest, the people raised a terrible cry and murdered him. Vasili himself, Alexander's son, declared against a father "who brought servitude to free men," and retired to the Pskovians. It needed a soul of iron temper to resist the universal disapprobation, and counsel the Novgorodians to the commission of the cowardly though necessary act. Alexander arrested his son, and punished with death or mutilation the boyars

who had led him into the revolt. The vetché decided to refuse the tribute, and sent back the Mongol ambassadors with presents. However, on the rumor of the approach of the Tatars, they repented, and Alexander could announce to the enemy that Novgorod submitted to the census. But when they saw the officers of the khan at work, the population revolted again, and the prince was obliged to keep guard on the officers night and day. In vain the boyars advised the citizens to give in : assembled around Saint Sophia, the people declared they would die for liberty and honor. Alexander then threatened to quit the city with his men, and abandon it to the vengeance of the khan. This menace conquered the pride of the Novgorodians. The Mongols and their agents were allowed to go, register in hand, from house to house in the humiliated and silent city to make the list of the inhabitants. "The boyars," says Karamsin, "might still be vain of their rank and their riches, but the simple citizens had lost with their national honor their most precious possession."

In Suzdal also Alexander found himself in the presence of insolent victors and exasperated subjects. In twelve hundred and sixty-two the inhabitants of Vladimir, of Suzdal, and of Rostof rose against the collectors of the Tatar impost. The people of Iaroslavl slew a renegade named Zozim, a former monk, who had become a Moslem fanatic. Terrible reprisals were sure to follow. Alexander set out with presents for the Horde at the risk of leaving his head there. He had likewise to excuse himself for having refused the Mongols a body of auxiliary Russians, wishing at least to spare the blood and religious scruples of his subjects. It is a remarkable fact that, over the most profound humiliations of the Russian nationality, the contemporary history always throws a ray of glory. At the moment that Alexander went to prostrate himself at Sarai, the Suzdalian army, united to that of Novgorod, and commanded by his son Dmitri, defeated the Livonian knights,

and took Dorpat by assault. The Khan Berkai gave Alexander a kind greeting, accepted his explanations, dispensed with the promised contingent, but kept him for a year near his court. Alexander's health broke down; on his return he died before reaching Vladimir. When the news arrived at his capital, the Metropolitan Kirill, who was finishing the liturgy, turned towards the faithful, and said: "Learn, my dear children, that the Sun of Russia is set." "We are lost," cried the people, breaking forth into sobs. Alexander by this policy of resignation, which his chivalrous heroism does not permit us to despise, had secured some repose for exhausted Russia. By his victories over his enemies of the West he had given it some glory, and hindered it from despairing under the most crushing tyranny, material and moral, which a European people had ever suffered.

#### THE MONGOL YOKE. — INFLUENCE OF THE TATARS ON RUSSIAN DEVELOPMENT.

The Mongol khans, after having devastated and abased Russia, did not introduce any direct political change. They left to each country its laws, its courts of justice, its natural chiefs. The house of Andrei Bogoliubski continued to reign in Suzdal, that of Daniel Romanovitch in Galitch and Volhynia, the Olgovitchi in Tchernigof, and the descendants of Rogvolod the Variag at Polotsk. Novgorod might continue to expel and recall its princes, and the dynasties of the south to dispute the throne of Kiev. The Russian states found themselves under the Mongol yoke, in much the same situation as that of the Christians of the Greco-Slav peninsula three centuries later, under the Ottomans. The Russians remained in possession of all their lands, which their nomad conquerors, encamped on the steppes of the East and South, disdained. They were, like their Danubian kinsmen, a sort of rayahs, over whom the authority of the khans was exerted

with more or less rigor, but whom their conquerors never tried in any way to Tatarize. Let us see exactly in what consisted the obligations of the vanquished, and their relations with their conquerors, during the period of the Mongol yoke.

The Russian princes were forced to visit the Horde, either as evidence of their submission, or to give the khan opportunity of judging their disputes. We have seen how they had to go, not only to the khan of the Golden Horde, but often also to the Grand Khan at the extremity of Asia, on the borders of the Sakhalian, or Amur. They met there the chiefs of the Mongol, Tatar, Thibetan, and Bokharian hordes, and sometimes the ambassador of the Caliph of Bagdad, of the Pope, or of the King of France. The Grand Khans tried to play off against each other these ambassadors, who were astounded to meet at his Court. Mangu Khan desired Saint Louis to recognize him as the master of the world, "for," said he, "when the universe has saluted me as sovereign, a happy tranquillity will reign on the earth." In the case of refusal, "neither deep seas nor inaccessible mountains" would place the King of France beyond the power of his wrath. To the princes of Asia and Russia he displayed the presents of the King of France, affecting to consider them as tributes and signs of submission. "We will send for him to confound you," he said to them, and Joinville assures us that this threat, and "the fear of the King of France," decided many to throw themselves on his mercy. This journey to the Grand Horde was terrible. The road went through deserts, or countries once rich, but changed by the Tatars into vast wastes. Few who went returned. Planus Carpinus, envoy of Innocent the Fourth, saw in the steppes of the Kirghiz the dry bones of the boyars of the unhappy Iaroslaf, who had died of thirst in the sand. Planus Carpinus thus describes the Batui's Court on the Volga: "It is crowded and brilliant. His army consists of six hundred thousand men, one hundred and fifty thousand of whom are Tatars, and four hundred and fifty thousand strangers, Christians as well as infidels.

On Good Friday we were conducted to his tent, between two fires, because the Tatars pretend that a fire purifies everything, and robs even poison of its danger. We had to make many prostrations, and enter the tent without touching the threshold. Batui was on his throne with one of his wives; his brothers, his children, and the Tatar lords were seated on benches; the rest of the assembly were on the ground, the men on the right, the women on the left. . . . The khan and the lords of the Court emptied from time to time cups of gold and silver, while the musicians made the air ring with their melodies. Batui has a bright complexion; he is affable with his men, but inspires general terror." The Court of the Grand Khan was still more magnificent. Planus Carpinus found there a Russian named Kum, who was the favorite and special goldsmith of Gaïuk or Kûiuk, and Rubruquis discovered a Parisian goldsmith, named Guillaume. Much money was needed for success either at the Court of the Grand Khan or of Batui. Presents had to be distributed to the Tatar princes, to the favorites; above all, to the wives and the mother of the khan. At this terrible tribunal the Russian princes had to struggle with intrigues and corruption; the heads of the pleaders were often the stakes of these dreadful trials. The most dangerous enemies they encountered at the Tatar Court were not the barbarians, but the Russians, their rivals. The history of the Russian princes at the Horde is very tragic. Thus Mikhail of Tchernigof perished at the Horde of Sarai in twelve hundred and forty-six, and Mikhail of Tver in thirteen hundred and nineteen, the one assassinated by the renegade Doman, the other by the renegade Romanets, at the instigation and under the eyes of the Grand Prince of Moscow.

The conquered people were obliged to pay a capitation tax, which weighed as heavily on the poor as on the rich. The tribute was paid either in money or in furs; those who were unable to furnish it became slaves. The khans had for some time farmed out this revenue to some Khiva merchants, who

collected it with the utmost rigor, and whom they protected by appointing superior agents called *baskaki*, with strong guards to support them. The excesses of these tax-gatherers excited many revolts : in twelve hundred and sixty-two, that of Suzdal ; in twelve hundred and eighty-four, that of Kursk ; in thirteen hundred and eighteen, that of Kolomna ; in thirteen hundred and twenty-seven, that of Tver, where the inhabitants slew the baskak Shevkak, and brought upon themselves frightful reprisals. Later, the princes of Moscow themselves farmed not only the tax from their own subjects, but also from neighboring countries. They became the farmers-general of the invaders. This was the origin of their riches and their power.

Besides the tribute, the Russians had to furnish to their master the blood-tax, a military contingent. Already at the time of the Huns and Avars, we have seen Slavs and Goths accompanying the Asiatic hordes, forming their vanguards, and being as it were the hounds of Baïan. In the thirteenth century the Russian princes furnished to the Tatars select troops, especially a solid infantry, and marched in their armies each at the head of his *drujina*. It was thus that in twelve hundred and seventy-six Boris of Rostof, Gleb of Biélozersk, Feodor of Iaroslavl, and Andrei of Gorodets followed Mangu Khan in a war against the tribes of the Caucasus, and sacked Dediakof in Daghestan, the capital of the Iasui. The Mongols scrupulously reserved to them their part of the booty. The same Russian princes took part in an expedition against an adventurer named Lachan by the Greek historians, formerly a keeper of pigs, who had raised Bulgaria. The descendants of Monomakh behaved still more dishonorably in the troubles in the interior of Russia. They excited the Mongols against their countrymen and aided the invaders. Prince Andrei, son of Alexander Nevski, in twelve hundred and eighty-one, in concert with the Tatars, pillaged the provinces of Vladimir, Suzdal, Murom, Moscow, and Pereiaslavl, which he was disputing with Dmitri, his elder brother. He helped the bar-

barians to profane churches and convents. In thirteen hundred and twenty-seven it was the princes of Moscow and Suzdal who directed the military execution against Tver. In twelve hundred and eighty-four two Olgovitchi reigned in the land of Kursk; one of them, Oleg, put the other to death in the name of the khan. Servitude had so much abased all characters, that even the annalists share the general degradation. They blame, not Oleg the murderer, but Sviatoslaf the victim. Was it not his unbridled conduct that caused the anger of the khan?

No prince could ascend the throne without having received the investiture and the *iarluik*, or letters-patent, from the khan. The proud Novgorodians themselves rejected Mikhail, their prince, saying, "It is true we have chosen Mikhail, but on the condition that he should show us the *iarluik*."

No Russian state dared to make war without being authorized by the khan. In twelve hundred and sixty-nine the Novgorodians asked leave to march against Revel. In thirteen hundred and three, in an assembly of princes, and in the presence of the Metropolitan Maximus, a decree of the Khan Tokhta was read, enjoining the princes to put an end to their dissensions, and to content themselves with their appanages, it being the will of the Grand Khan that the Grand Principality should enjoy peace. When the Mongol ambassadors brought a letter from their sovereign, the Russian princes were obliged to meet them on foot, prostrate themselves, spread precious carpets under their feet, present them with a cup filled with gold pieces, and listen, kneeling, while the *iarluik* was read.

Even while the Tatars conquered the Russians, they respected their bravery. Matrimonial alliances were contracted between their princes. About twelve hundred and seventy-two Gleb, Prince of Biélozersk, took a wife out of the khan's family, which already professed Christianity, and Feodor of Riazan became the son-in-law of the khan of the Nogais, who

assigned to the young couple a palace in Sarai. In thirteen hundred and eighteen the Grand Prince Iuri married a sister of Uzbek Khan, Kontchaka, who was baptized by the name of Agatha. Towards the end of the fourteenth century the Tatars were no longer the rude shepherds of the steppes. Mingled with sedentary and more cultivated races, they rebuilt fresh cities on the ruins of those they had destroyed: Kruim in the Crimea, Kazan, Astrakhan, and Sarai. They had acquired a taste for luxury and magnificence, honored the national poets who sang their exploits, piqued themselves on their chivalry and even on their gallantry. Notwithstanding the difference of religion, a reconciliation was taking place between the aristocracy of the two countries, between the Russian and the Tatar princes.

The Russian historians are not entirely agreed as to the nature and degree of influence exerted by the Mongol yoke on the Russian development. Karamsin and M. Kostomarov believe it to have been considerable. "Perhaps," says the former, "our national character still presents some blots which are derived from the Mongol barbarism." M. Soloviev, on the contrary, affirms that the Tatars hardly influenced it more than the Petchenegi or Polovtsui. M. Bestujef-Riumin estimates the influence to have been specially exerted on the financial administration and military organization. On one side the Tatars established the capitation-tax, which has remained in the financial system of Russia; on the other, the conquered race had a natural tendency to adopt the military system of the victors. The Russian or Mongol princes formed a caste of soldiers henceforth quite distinct from Western chivalry, to which the Russian heroes of the twelfth century belonged. The warriors of Daniel of Galitch, it is said, astounded the Poles and Hungarians by the Oriental character of their equipment. Short stirrups, very high saddles, a long caftan, or floating dress, a sort of turban surmounted by an aigret, sabres and poniards in their belts, a

bow and arrows, — such was the military costume of a Russian prince of the fifteenth century.

On the other side, many of the peculiarities in which the Mongol influence is thought traceable may be attributed as well or better to purely Slav traditions, or imitations of Byzantine manners. If the Muscovite princes inclined to autocracy, it was not that they formed themselves on the model of the Grand Khans, but that they naturally adopted imperial ideas of absolutism imported from Constantinople. It is always the Roman Emperor of Tsargrad, and not the leader of Asiatic shepherds, who is their typical monarch. If from this time the Russian penal law makes more frequent use of the pain of death and corporal punishment, it is not only the result of imitation of the Tatars, but of the ever-growing influence of Byzantine laws, and the progressive triumph of their principles over those of the ancient Code of Iaroslaf. Now these laws so very easily admitted torture, flogging, mutilation, and the stake, that there is no need to explain anything by Mongol usages. The habit of prostration, of beating the forehead, of affecting a servile submission, is certainly Oriental, but it is also Byzantine. The seclusion of women was common in ancient Russia, the customs of which were moulded by Greek missionaries, and the Russian terem was derived from the Hellenic plan of women's quarters, rather than from the Oriental harem; all the more because the Tatar women, before the conversion of the Mongols to Islamism, do not appear to have been secluded. If the Russians of the seventeenth century seem strange to us in their long robes and Oriental fashions, we must remember that the French and Italians of the fifteenth century, dressed by Venetian merchants, displayed the same taste. But in France fashions made advances, while in Russia, isolated from the rest of Europe, they remained stationary.

From a social point of view, two Russian expressions seem to date from the Tatar invasion : *tchernui*, or the black people,

to designate the lower orders ; and *krestianin*, signifying the peasant, that is, the typical Christian, who was always a stranger to the Mongol customs adopted for a short time by the aristocracy. As to the amount of Mongol or Tatar blood mixed with the blood of the Russians, it must have been very small: the aristocracy of the two countries may have contracted marriages, a certain number of Tatar princes may have become Russian princes by their conversion to orthodoxy, but the two races, as a whole, remained strangers. Even to-day, while the native Finns continue to be Russified, the Tatar cantons, even though converted to Christianity, are still Tatar.

If the Mongol yoke influenced Russian development, it is very indirectly. By separating Russia from the West, by making it a political dependency of Asia, it perpetuated in the country that Byzantine half-civilization whose inferiority to European civilization became daily more obvious. If the Russians of the seventeenth century differ so much from Western nations, it is above all because they have remained at the point whence all set out. Again, the Tatar conquest also favored indirectly the establishment of absolute power. The Muscovite princes, responsible to the khan for the public tranquillity and the collection of the tax, being all the while watched and supported by the baskaki, could the more easily annihilate the independence of the towns, the resistance of the subordinate princes, the turbulence of the boyars, and the privileges of the free peasants. The Grand Prince of Moscow had no consideration for his subjects because no man had any consideration for him, and because his life was always at stake. The Mongol tyranny bore with a terrible weight on all the Russian hierarchy, and subjected more closely the nobles to the princes and the peasants to the nobles. "The princes of Moscow," says Karamsin, "took the humble title of servants of the khans, and it was by this means that they became powerful monarchs." No doubt under any circum-

stances the Russian principalities would have ended by losing themselves in the same dominion, but Russian unity would have been made, like French unity, without the entire destruction of local autonomies, the privileges of the towns, and the rights of the subjects. It was the crushing weight of the Mongol domination that stifled all the germs of political liberty. We may say, with Mr. Wallace, that "the first Tsars of Muscovy were the political descendants, not of the Russian princes, but of the Tatar khans." A third indirect result of the conquest was the growth of the power and riches of the Church. In spite of the saintly legends about the martyrdom of certain princes, the Tatars were a tolerant nation. Rubruquis saw in the presence of the Grand Khan Mangu, Nestorians, Mussulmans, and Shamans celebrating their own particular form of worship.

Kuiuk had a Christian chapel near his palace; Khubilai regularly took part in the feast of Easter. In twelve hundred and sixty-one the Khan of Sarai authorized the erection of a church and an orthodox bishopric in his capital. The Mongols had no sectarian hatred against bishops and priests. With a sure political instinct, the Tatars, like the Sultans of Stambul, understood that these men could excite or calm the people. After the first fury of the conquest was passed, they applied themselves to gaining them over. They excepted priests and monks from the capitation-tax; they received them well at the Horde, and gave pardons at their intercession. They settled disputes of orthodox prelates, and established peace in the Church as well as in the State. In thirteen hundred and thirteen the Khan Uzbek, at the prayer of Peter, Metropolitan of Moscow, confirmed the privileges of the Church and forbade that it should be deprived of its possessions, "for," says the edict, "these possessions are sacred, because they belong to men whose prayers preserve our lives and strengthen our armies." The right of justice was formally granted to the Church. Sacrilege was punished by death.

The convents also increased in numbers and riches. They filled enormously : were they not the safest asylums ? Their peasants and servants multiplied : was not the protection of the Church the surest ? Gifts of land were showered on them, as in France in the year ten hundred. It was thus that the great ecclesiastical patrimony of Russia was founded, a wealthy reserve of revenues and capital, on which more than once in national crises the Russian sovereigns were glad to draw. The Church, which, even in its weakness, had steadily tended to unity and autocracy, was to place at the service of the crown a power which had become enormous. The Metropolitans of Moscow were almost always the faithful allies of the Grand Princes.

## CHAPTER XI.

### THE LITHUANIANS: CONQUEST OF WESTERN RUSSIA.

1240 - 1430.

THE LITHUANIANS. — CONQUESTS OF MINDVOG (1240 - 1263), OF GEDIMIN (1315 - 1340), AND OF OLGERD (1345 - 1377). — IAGELLO. — UNION OF LITHUANIA WITH POLAND (1386). — THE GRAND PRINCE VITOVŤ (1392 - 1430). — BATTLES OF THE VORSKLA (1399) AND OF TANNENBERG (1410).

---

THE LITHUANIANS. — CONQUESTS OF MINDVOG, OF GEDIMIN, AND OF OLGERD.

THE Lithuanian tribes had already been greatly broken up by the German conquest. Russians, Korsi, Semigals, and Letts had been brought into subjection either by the Teutonic or Livonian knights. Two among the tribes, the Jmudi and the Lithuanians properly so called, had preserved in the deep forests and marshes of the Niemen their proud independence, their ferocity, and their ancient gods. A Russian tradition affirms that formerly they had paid the Russians the only tribute their poverty could afford, — bark and brooms. Jmudi and Lithuanians were divided, like the ancient Slavs, into rival and jealous tribes. Although more than once they marched from their forests, blowing long trumpets, careering on rough ponies, — though they had made many incursions into the Russian territory, — they were not really dangerous. This old Aryan people, whom European influences had never modified, had preserved from the time they dwelt in Asia a powerful sacerdotal caste, — the *vaidelots*, above whom were the

*krivits*, whose chief was high-priest of the nation. Their principal divinity was Perkun, the god of thunder, analogous to the Perun of the Russians. The sacred fire burned constantly before this idol. They had also priestesses, the wild Velledas, like that Biruta who, captured by Kestut, became the mother of the great Vitovt. The time had come when the Lithuanians must perish like the Prussians or Letts, if they did not succeed in uniting against Germany. Emigrants from the countries already conquered doubtless brought them new strength and energy. A wily barbarian, Mindvog, created Lithuanian unity at the beginning of the thirteenth century in much the same way as Clovis, — by exterminating the princes. "He began," says a chronicle, "by slaying his brothers and his sons, chased the survivors from the country, and reigned alone over the land of Lithuania." Thence he led his savage warriors against the Russian principalities, now enfeebled by the Mongol invasions, and conquered Grodno and Novogrodek. Happily Western Russia had two great men at its head, Alexander Nevski and Daniel of Volhynia. Threatened on one side by these princes, on the other by the knights of Livonia, Mindvog bethought himself of hastening to the Pope and embracing the Catholic faith. A legate of Innocent the Fourth and the landmeister of the Teutonic order came to Grodno, escorted by a brilliant suite of cavaliers. In presence of an immense concourse of people Mindvog, together with his wife, received baptism, and was consecrated King of Lithuania in twelve hundred and fifty-two. The danger passed, and Rome was forgotten. He and his new co-religionists did not agree, and he was forced to cede the Jmud country to the Livonian knights. Sharing the irritation of his subjects, he washed off his baptism as the unfortunate Livonians had done, re-established paganism, invaded Mazovia, ravaged the lands of the Order, and defeated the landmeister in person. He had taken the wife of one of his princes named Dovmont, and had married her. Dovmont awaited him on the

road, and assassinated him in twelve hundred and sixty-three, and then fled from the vengeance of Mindvog's son to the Pskovians. He became their prince, was baptized, and defended them bravely against his pagan compatriots till he died, and was buried at the Church of the Trinity. Voishel, son of Mindvog, in the first fervor of an ephemeral Christianity had become a monk. When he heard of his father's murder, he abandoned his cowl, and began a war of extermination against the confederates. Lithuania fell back into anarchy during the contest of Mindvog's descendants with the rest of the princes who refused to accept their supremacy.

It recovered itself under the enterprising and energetic Gedimin, who ruled from thirteen hundred and fifteen until thirteen hundred and forty, and was the real founder of its power. He turned the exhaustions and divisions of South Russia to his own profit; and to the conquests of his predecessors — Grodno, Pinsk, Brest, and Polotsk — soon added Tchernigof, and all Volhynia with Vladimir, under whose walls in thirteen hundred and twenty-one he defeated the Russians, aided though they were by an auxiliary army of Tatars. As to Kiev, it is not known in what year it fell under his power; in the universal disorder this memorable event passed almost unnoticed. The old capital of Russia was, however, destined to remain for four hundred years — up to the time of Alexis Romanof — in the hands of strangers. The Russian populations willingly received this new master, who would free them from the heavy yoke of the Mongols and the unceasing civil wars. As he respected their internal constitution and the rights of the orthodox clergy, it appears that many towns readily opened their gates to him. Gedimin sought to legalize his conquests by contracting alliances with the house of Saint Vladimir, allowed his sons to embrace the orthodox faith, and authorized the construction of Greek churches in his residences at Vilna and Novogrodek. In the North he had a perpetual struggle to sustain against the

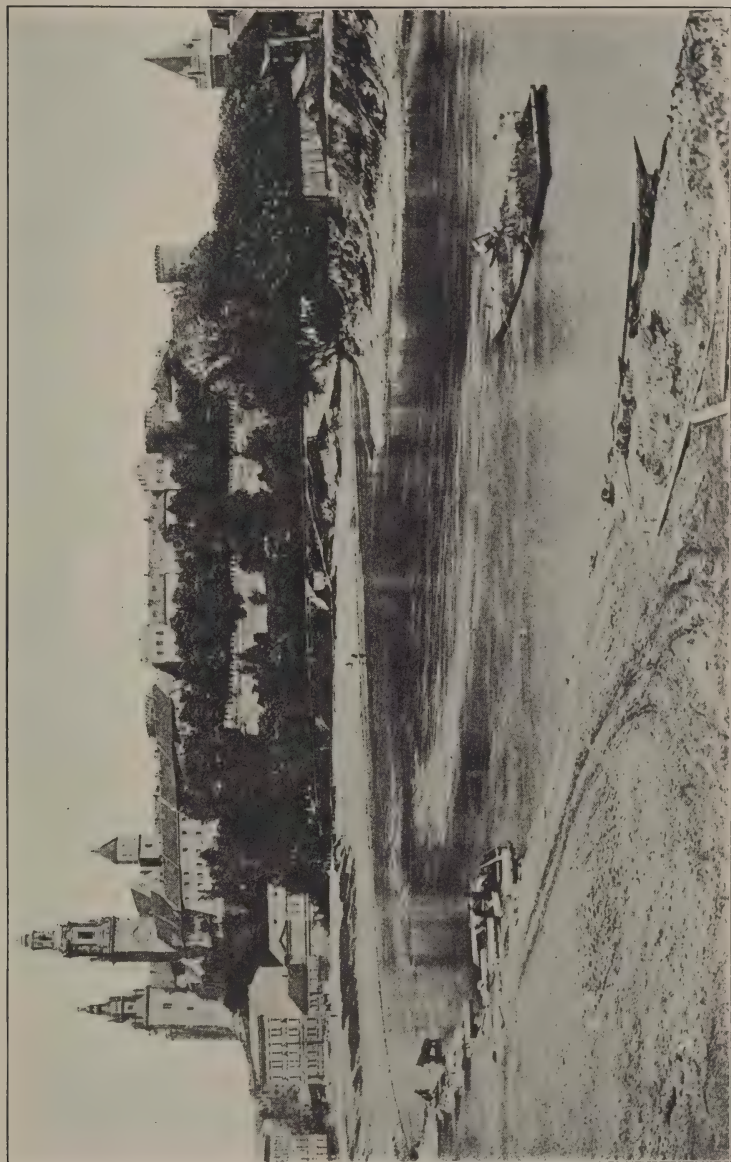
deadly enemies of his race, the military monks of Prussia and Livonia. Like Mindvog, he addressed himself to the Pope, John the Twenty-Second, and informed him that he wished to preserve his independence, that he only asked protection for his religion, that he was surrounded by Franciscans and Dominicans to whom he gave full liberty to teach their doctrine, and that he was ready to recognize the Pope as supreme head of the Church, if he would stop the depredations of the Germans. The French Pope sent him Bartholomew, Bishop of Alais, and Bernard, Abbot of Puy. In the interval he had been exasperated by renewed attacks of the Teutonic knights, and forced the two legates to fly. He had transferred his capital to Vilna on the Vilia, and the ruins of his castle may still be perceived on the height which overlooks the citadel. He drew thither by immunities German artists and artisans, and granted them the rights of Riga and the Hanse towns. A Russian quarter was also formed in his capital. He died, and was buried according to the pagan rite: his body was burned in a caldron together with his war-horse and his favorite groom.

After his death, in thirteen hundred and forty-five, his sons Olgerd and Kestut deprived two of their brothers of their appanages, and together governed Lithuania, now reunited into a single state. Olgerd humiliated Novgorod the Great, which had received another of his fugitive brothers, ravaged its territory, and forced the inhabitants to put to death the posadnik who had been the cause of the war. He extended his possessions to the east and south, and conquered Vitepsk, Mohilef, Briansk, Novgorod-Severski, Kamenets, and Podolia; thus rendering himself master of nearly all the basin of the Dnieper, and obtaining a footing on the coast of the Black Sea, between the mouths of the Dnieper and the Dniester. With the republic of Pskof he maintained relations sometimes friendly, sometimes hostile; gave it help against the Germans, sent his son Andrei to govern it, and occasionally arrested its

merchants and laid waste its territory. The Poles disputed Volhynia with him, oppressed the orthodox faith, and changed the Greek into Latin churches. Olgerd then made advances to Simeon the Proud, Grand Prince of Moscow, and, though a pagan, married Juliana, Princess of Tver. Under Simeon's successors the Lithuanian army three times took the road to Moscow, and, without the check imposed on him by the Poles and the two German orders, Olgerd might have made the conquest of Eastern Russia. In thirteen hundred and sixty-eight he had annihilated the Mongol hordes which infested the Lower Dnieper, and, more destructive than even these barbarians, completed the ruin of Kherson in the Crimea.

#### IAGELLO. — UNION OF LITHUANIA AND POLAND.

Although Olgerd had reconstituted the Lithuanian unity, he fell back into the old error, and divided his states between his sons and his brother, the brave Kestut, who had been his faithful associate. One of his sons, Iagailo, or Iagello, who ruled from thirteen hundred and seventy-seven until fourteen hundred and thirty-four, cruelly repaired his father's fault. He treacherously made his uncle Kestut prisoner, and caused him to be put to death. His brothers and cousins escaped a similar fate only by flying to neighboring states. In spite of this the bloody pagan was the apostle of Lithuania. For a long while Christianity had sought to penetrate by two different channels, under the Latin form from Poland and under the Greek form from Russia. The fierce war waged by the Lithuanians against the military monks of the North had rendered Catholicism particularly hateful to them. Under Olgerd the people of Vilna had risen, and fourteen Franciscans were slain. On the other hand the larger part of the Lithuanian conquests was composed of Russian territory, and Lithuania came under the influence of the Russian religion as well as of the Russian language. Russian became the official tongue; it



THE WAWEL, CRACOW.



even seemed as if orthodoxy were to become the ruling faith, and the victors were to be absorbed by the vanquished, and Russified by their conquest. An unexpected event turned the natural course of history. The Angevin and French dynasty in Poland had lately been extinguished in the person of Louis of Hungary, whose only heir was his daughter Hedviga. The Polish nobles concluded that the best way to put an end to the eternal warfare with the Lithuanians was by marrying their queen to the powerful Prince of Vilna. Hedviga's heart is said to have been elsewhere engaged; but the Catholic clergy set forth her consent to this union as a duty, the fulfilment of which was to insure in Lithuania proper the triumph of the Latin faith, and thus to separate it from the Lithuanian Russian provinces which still remained orthodox.

In thirteen hundred and eighty-six Jagello went to Cracow and received baptism and the crown of Poland.

The conversion of the Lithuanians was then conducted after a fashion as summary as that of the Russians in the time of Vladimir. They were divided into groups, and the priest then sprinkled them with holy water, pronouncing, as he did so, a name of the Latin calendar. To one group he gave the name of Peter, to another that of Paul or John. Jagello overthrew the idol Perkun, extinguished the sacred fire that burned in the Castle of Vilna, killed the holy serpents, and cut down the magic woods. The people, however, worshipped their gods for some time longer; like the Northmen who were converted by the Carolingians, many Lithuanians presented themselves more than once to be baptized, in order to receive again and again the white tunic of the neophyte. By transferring his capital to Cracow, in deference to his new subjects, Jagello necessarily irritated his old subjects. The orthodox, provoked by the king's propaganda in favor of Catholicism, allied themselves to the determined pagans. Lithuania believed that by its union with Poland it had lost its independence.

THE GRAND PRINCE VITOV. — BATTLES OF THE VORSKLA  
AND OF TANNENBERG.

Vitovt, son of the hero Kestut and the priestess Biruta, put himself at the head of the malcontents. He allied himself with the Teutonic knights, and twice besieged the Polish garrison in the Castle of Vilna. Weary of war, Jagello in thirteen hundred and ninety-two finally ceded him Lithuania with the title of Grand Prince.

Vitovt, brother-in-law of Vasili Dmitriévitch, Grand Prince of Moscow, took up Olgerd's plans for the subjugation of the northeast of Russia. Sviatoslaf, the last prince but one of Smolensk, had made himself hated, even in that iron age, by his cruelties. Fighting in the Russian territory, he took pleasure in impaling and burning women and children alive. He was killed in thirteen hundred and eighty-seven in a battle against the Lithuanians, and his son Iuri was only the shadow of a Grand Prince of Smolensk, under Vitovt's guardianship. The latter, who combined perfidy with the courage and energy of his father, made himself master of the town by a stratagem worthy of Cæsar Borgia. He contrived to induce the prince and his brothers to visit him in his tent, embraced and pressed them in his arms, and then declared them prisoners of war, while his army surprised and pillaged Smolensk. This queen city on the Upper Dnieper was lost to Russia. The Lithuanian Empire now bordered on the ancient Suzdal and the principality of Riazan. These two countries, with Novgorod and Pskof, were the only ones which had preserved their independence. It seemed as if one campaign would suffice to annihilate the Russian name. But Vitovt cherished great projects, in which the conquest of Moscow was only an incident. He had already fought against the Mongols, and with the prisoners taken in the environs of Azof had peopled many villages round Vilna, where their posterity still exist. He took under his protection the Khan Tokhtamuish, whom Timur

Kutlui had expelled from Saraï, and resolved to subjugate the Golden Horde, to install a vassal there, and finally add to the conquest of the Tatar Empire that of Moscow and Riazan. The army that he assembled under the walls of Kief was perhaps the most important that had marched against the infidels since the first crusade. To his Lithuanian troops he had united the Polish contingent sent by Jagello under the famous voïevodui Spitko of Cracow, Ioann of Mazovia, Sandivog of Ostorog, Dobrogost of Samotul, and the drujinui of the Russian princes, Gleb of Smolensk, Mikhail and Dmitri of Volhynia, the Mongols of Tokhtamuish, and five hundred knights, "iron men," richly armed, sent by the Grand Master of the Teutonic Order. He came up with the enemy on the banks of the Vorskla, an affluent of the Dnieper, that runs near Poltava. It was almost the battle-field where fought in seventeen hundred and nine the heroes of the North. To Timur's proposals of peace Vitovt answered that God had designed him to be master of the world, and that the khan must recognize him as his father, pay him tribute, and place his armorial bearings on the Mongol coins. The khan negotiated only to gain time till the bulk of the Tatar army, commanded by Ediger, came up. Ediger, in his turn, ironically summoned Vitovt to acknowledge him as father, and to place his arms on the Lithuanian coins. Vitovt, who hoped to make up for his deficiency in numbers by his artillery, gave the signal for battle. A manœuvre of the Tatars on the rear of the enemy assured them the victory. Two thirds of the Lithuanian army, with the princes of Smolensk and Volhynia, remained on the field of battle. Timur pursued the remnant as far as the Dnieper, and levied a war contribution on Kief and the Monastery of the Catacombs. So fell the prestige of Vitovt. Even the princes of Riazan thought that they might safely insult his frontiers. But he was still formidable, and the Grand Prince of Moscow, after having tried to attack him, judged it more prudent to make peace.

When Vitovt began to recover from his disaster, he directed a still more famous expedition against the Teutonic knights. The Grand Prince of Lithuania had more than once found himself at issue with the two German orders. About this time the Teutonic knights had lost their early energy, thanks to the development of the system of fiefs and to the progress of the commercial towns. In fourteen hundred and nine the Jmudi and Oriental Prussia, after having protested against the severity of the yoke imposed on them, revolted, counting on Vitovt to support them. A new Grand Master, the warlike Ulrich of Jungingen, refused the mediation of Vitovt's suzerain, the King of Poland. Upon this the united forces of Poland and Lithuania, with forty thousand Tatars and twenty-one thousand Bohemian, Hungarian, Moravian, and Silesian mercenaries, making a total of ninety-seven thousand infantry, sixty-six thousand cavalry, and sixty cannons, entered Prussia. The Grand Master had only fifty-seven thousand infantry and twenty-six thousand cavalry, with which to oppose them. The battle of Tannenberg in fourteen hundred and ten, gained chiefly by Vitovt, who broke the German centre and left wing, was a blow from which the power of the Teutonic Order never recovered. The Grand Master and nearly all the high dignitaries, two hundred Knights of the Order, and four hundred foreign knights, besides four thousand soldiers, were killed. Nearly all the princes of Western Russia took part in the combat, and the contingent of Smolensk especially distinguished itself. The Jmud country was freed from the Teutonic rule and united to Lithuania.

Three years afterwards, in fourteen hundred and thirteen, the Congress of Horodlo on the Bug, between Iagello, accompanied by the Polish nobles, and Vitovt, accompanied by his Lithuanian chiefs, took place. It was settled that the Lithuanian Catholics should receive the rights and privileges of the Polish nobility; and that the representatives of the two countries should unite in a common diet to elect the Kings of Po-

land and the Grand Dukes of Lithuania, and decide important affairs. Vitovt soon had differences with his own subjects: the Jmudi, so refractory under the Teutonic rule, were pagans and Lithuanians at heart. They hated Catholicism and the Polish domination. They rose and expelled the monks. Vitovt could govern them only by force.

The Russian provinces of Lithuania were orthodox, and depended upon the Metropolitan of Moscow. Vitovt wished to shake off his religious supremacy, and demanded of the Patriarch of Constantinople a special metropolitan for Western Russia. In spite of the patriarch's refusal, he convoked a council of orthodox prelates; a learned Bulgarian monk, Gregory Tsamblak, was elected Metropolitan of Kief. Thus Russia had two religious chiefs, as it had two Grand Princes, — the Metropolitan of Eastern Russia and the Metropolitan of Western Russia; one at Moscow, the other at Kief. Vitovt also wished to free himself on the western side, and deprive Poland of its supremacy over Lithuania. In fourteen hundred and twenty-nine he had an interview with the Emperor Sigismond, who promised to create him King of Lithuania. Vitovt, then eighty years of age, was at the height of his power. We see him at the fêtes of Troki and Vilna, attended by his grandson Vasili Vasiliévitch, Grand Prince of Moscow, who was accompanied by the Muscovite Metropolitan Photius, the Princes of Tver and Riazan, Iagello, King of Poland, the Khan of the Crimea, the exiled Hospodar of Valakhia, the Grand Master of Prussia, the Landmeister of Livonia, and the ambassadors of the Emperor of the East. Daily were seven hundred oxen, fourteen hundred sheep, and game in proportion consumed. In the midst of these fêtes the ambitious old man had to swallow a bitter draught. The Poles had intrigued with the Pope, and he was forbidden to dream of royalty. The ambassadors of Sigismond were stopped as they were bringing him the sceptre and the crown. Vitovt fell ill, and died of disappointment in fourteen hundred and thirty.

After this Lithuania ceased to be formidable. We find it in turns governed by a Grand Duke of its own, united to Poland under Vladislas, separated again, then definitely placed under the Polish sceptre after fifteen hundred and one. Though henceforward it always had the same sovereign as Poland, it remained a state apart, — the Grand Principality, or Grand Duchy, of Lithuania. Its Lithuanian and Russian provinces gradually became Polish, and the princely descendants of Rurik and Saint Vladimir, or of Mindvog and Gedimin, assumed the manners and language of the Polish aristocracy.

## CHAPTER XII.

### THE GRAND PRINCES OF MOSCOW: ORGANIZATION OF EASTERN RUSSIA.

1303 - 1462.

ORIGIN OF MOSCOW. — DANIEL. — IURI DANIELOVITCH (1303-1325) AND IVAN KALITA (1328-1341). — CONTEST WITH THE HOUSE OF TVER. — SIMEON THE PROUD AND IVAN THE DÉBONAIR (1341-1359). — DMITRI DONSKOÏ (1363-1389). — BATTLE OF KULIKOVO. — VASILÏ DMITRIÉVITCH AND VASILÏ THE BLIND (1389-1462).

---

#### ORIGIN OF MOSCOW. — DANIEL.

WHILE Western Russia grouped itself around the Lithuanian state, which had given the conquered Russian provinces a new capital in Vilna, and soon involved them in its own union with Poland, Eastern Russia grouped itself around Moscow. When this double concentration on the Moskova and on the Vilna should be accomplished, Great Russia, proud of its national and religious unity, and Lithuanian Russia, or rather a foreign state composed of the Russian, Lithuanian, and Polish races, and of three religions, the Greek, Roman, and Protestant, besides the Jewish, would find themselves face to face. The contest of these two sister-enemies will fill many centuries of the history of the North. To other sovereigns, in other centuries, will fall the task of reconstituting the Russian unity in its fullest extent. The honor of the princes of Moscow is that they created the living germ which became Great Russia.

Around Moscow, under the Mongol yoke, a race was

formed, patient and resigned, yet energetic and enterprising, born to endure bad fortune and profit by good, which in the long run was to get the upper hand over Western Russia and Lithuania. There grew a dynasty of princes, politic and persevering, prudent and pitiless, of gloomy and terrible mien, whose foreheads were marked by the seal of fatality. They were the founders of the Russian Empire, as the Capets were of the French monarchy.

The means used by the sovereigns of Russia were very different. Here we shall find no sympathetic figures like that of Louis the Sixth careering proudly in the narrow domains of France, capturing rebel castles in the face of the sun, — of a Louis the Ninth, true mirror of chivalry, the noblest incarnation of the kingly ideal. The princes of Moscow gained their ends by intrigue, corruption, the purchase of consciences, servility to the khans, perfidy to their equals, murder, and treachery. They were at once the tax-gatherers and the police of the khans. But they created the germ of the Russian monarchy, and made it grow. Henceforward we have a fixed centre around which gathers that scattered history of Russia which we have had to follow in so many different places, — in Novgorod and Pskof, in Livonia and in Lithuania, at Smolensk and in Gallicia, at Tchernigof and at Kief, at Vladimir and at Riazan. The mutilation of Russia, conquered on the west by the Lithuanians, enslaved on the east by the Mongols, was to facilitate the work of organization. In this diminished fatherland the sovereigns of Moscow could play more easily the part of Grand Princes.

The extent of country which had by the middle of the fifteenth century escaped the Lithuanian conquest was very small. Without counting Smolensk, whose days were numbered, there remained the following principalities: Riazan, with its appanages of Pronsk and Pereiaslavl-Riazanski; Suzdal, with the towns of Vladimir, Nijni-Novgorod, Suzdal, Galitch in Suzdal, Kostroma, and Gorodets; Tver, situated

on the Upper Volga, and chiefly made up of bailiwicks taken from Novgorod by the Grand Princes of Suzdal, with the towns of Rjef, Kashin, and Zubtsof; Moscow, shut in on the north by Tver, on the east by Suzdal, on the south by Riazan, nearly stifled by its powerful neighbors, like the France of the Capets between the formidable states of English Normandy, Flanders, and Champagne.

The name of Moscow appears for the first time in the chronicles at the date of eleven hundred and forty-seven. It is there said that the Grand Prince Iuri Dolgoruki, having arrived on the domain of a boyar named Stephen Kutchko, caused him to be put to death on some pretext, and that, struck by the position of one of the villages situated on a height washed by the Moskova, the very spot whereon the Kreml now stands, he built the city of Moscow. In the Capitol of ancient Rome the founder, Romulus, discovered the head of a man; the Capitol of Moscow, destined to become the centre of an empire, was sprinkled in its beginning by human blood. The name of a still-existing church, "Saint Savior of the Pines," preserves the memory of the thick forests that then clothed both banks of the Moskova, on the space now covered by an immense capital. During the century following its foundation Moscow remained an obscure and insignificant village of Suzdal. The chroniclers do not allude to it except to mention that it was burned by the Tatars in twelve hundred and thirty-seven, or that a brother of Alexander Nevski, Mikhail of Moscow, was killed there in a battle with the Lithuanians. The real founder of the principality of the name was Daniel, a son of Alexander Nevski, who had received this small town and a few villages as his appanage. He increased his state by an important town, Pereiaslavl-Zalieski, that belonged to one of his nephews, and by the addition of Kolomna, which he took from the Riazanese. At his death, in thirteen hundred and three, he was the first to be buried in the Church of Saint Michael the Arch-

angel, which till the time of Peter the Great remained the burying-place of the Russian princes. He was followed, in due course, by his sons Iuri and Ivan.

IURI DANIELOVITCH AND IVAN KALITA. — CONTEST  
WITH THE HOUSE OF TVER.

The first act of Iuri Danielovitch, who reigned from thirteen hundred and three till thirteen hundred and twenty-five, was to capture Mojaïsk from the Prince of Smolensk, and to take the latter prisoner. Almost at the same time began the bloody struggle with the house of Tver, which, transmitted from father to son, lasted for eighty years. When Andrei Alexandrovitch, Grand Prince of Suzdal, died, in thirteen hundred and four, two competitors presented themselves, — Mikhail of Tver, cousin-german of the deceased, and his nephew Iuri of Moscow. The claim of Mikhail was incontestable; was he not the eldest of the family? The boyars of Vladimir and the citizens of Novgorod did not hesitate to acknowledge him as Grand Prince; at Saraï, Tokhta the khan declared in his favor, and ordered him to be installed. Mikhail, who had on his side the national law and the sovereign will of the Mongols, could also use force; he twice besieged Moscow, and obliged the son of Daniel to leave him in peace. In this young man he had an implacable enemy. The chroniclers, indignant at Iuri's revolt against the old hereditary custom, unanimously pronounce against him. While making due allowance for their efforts to blacken his character, we cannot help seeing that he was not a man to shrink from any crime. His father had taken the Prince of Riazan prisoner. He had him assassinated in his dungeon, and would have taken possession of his territories, if the khan had not ordered the rights of the young heir to be respected. Then Iuri caused himself to be recognized as Prince of Novgorod, to the prejudice of Mikhail, but the army of Tver and Vladimir defeated

that furnished him by the republic. An unexpected event suddenly changed the face of things. The Khan Tokhta died ; Iuri managed to gain the good graces of his successor Uzbek, so that the latter gave him his sister Kontchaka in marriage, and, reversing the decision of Tokhta, adjudged him the grand principality. Daniel's son returned to Russia with a Mongol army, commanded by the baskak Kavgadi. Mikhail consented, say the chroniclers, to cede Vladimir, if his hereditary appanage were respected ; but Iuri began to lay waste the country of Tver, and war was inevitable. Mikhail triumphed completely. The Tatar wife of Iuri, his brother Boris, the Mongol general Kavgadi, and nearly all the officers of the khan, fell into his hands. Mikhail covered his prisoners with attentions dictated by prudence. Kavgadi, released with honor, swore to be his friend, but, as the khan's sister died, the enemies of the Prince of Tver set on foot a report that he had poisoned her. The cause of the two princes was carried before the tribunal of the khan. Whilst the indefatigable Muscovite went in person, with his hands full of presents, to the Horde, Mikhail had the imprudence to send his son, a boy twelve years old, in his place. Finding Iuri was occupied in accusing, intriguing, and corrupting, Mikhail at last made up his mind to follow him. Not unprepared for the lot that awaited him, he made his will, and distributed appanages among his children. He was accused of having drawn his sword against a baskak, envoy of the khan, and of having poisoned Kontchaka. These accusations were so manifestly absurd, that Uzbek deferred judgment. This, however, did not meet Iuri's views, and, by means of intrigues, he obtained the arrest of his kinsman. The khan now set out for some months' hunting in the Caucasus. Mikhail was dragged in the train of the court, loaded with irons, from Saraï to Dediakof in Daghestan. One day he was put in the pillory in the market of a thickly populated town, and the spectators crowded to see him, saying, " This prisoner was, a short time ago, a powerful prince in his own

country." Mikhail's boyars had told him to escape; he refused, not wishing his people to suffer for him. Iuri was so energetic, and scattered about so much money, that, finally, the death-warrant was signed. One of Mikhail's pages entered the tent which served him as a prison, in great alarm, to tell him that Iuri and Kavgadi were approaching, followed by a multitude of people. "I know the reason," replied the prince; and he sent his young son Konstantin to one of the khan's wives, who had promised to take him under her protection. His two enemies took their stand near his tent, dismissed the boyars of Tver, and sent their hired ruffians to assassinate the prince. They threw him down, and trampled him under their feet. As in the case of Mikhail of Tchernigof, it was not a Mongol that stabbed him and tore out his heart, but a renegade named Romanets. When Iuri and Kavgadi entered and contemplated the naked corpse, "What," said the Tatar, "will you allow the body of your uncle to be outraged?" One of Iuri's servants threw a mantle over the victim. His death took place in thirteen hundred and nineteen. Mikhail was bewailed by the Tverians. His body, incorruptible as that of a martyr, was afterwards deposited in a silver shrine in the Cathedral of Tver. He became a saint, and the patron of his city. On the walls of the cathedral ancient and modern pictures recall his martyrdom, and condemn the crime of the Muscovite. All the contemporary chroniclers warmly take his part against the assassin. Karamsin has made himself the echo of their apologies and curses. But at the same time that Mikhail became a saint Iuri became the all-powerful sovereign of Moscow, Suzdal, and Novgorod. Mikhail's tragic fate foretold the ruin of Tver.

Some years afterwards things were reversed at the Horde. Dmitri of the Terrible Eyes, son of the unhappy Mikhail, obtained the title of Grand Prince, and the baskak Seventch Bonga was charged to place him on the throne of Vladimir. Iuri found himself obliged to go again to Saraï; there the

two rivals, Dmitri of Tver and Iuri of Moscow, met. Dmitri had his father to avenge ; his sword leaped from the scabbard, and the Prince of Moscow fell mortally wounded, in thirteen hundred and twenty-five. All that his friends could obtain was that Dmitri should be put to death. The latter was succeeded in Vladimir by his brother Alexander.

Unluckily for the house of Tver, the following year the Tverians, exasperated by the baskak Shevkal, rose in rebellion and murdered him and all his suite. Alexander, instead of imitating the firm prudence of his Muscovite neighbors, allowed himself to be carried away by the popular passion. He himself assaulted the palace of the baskak, and lighted the fire. After such an action, he had no pity to expect from the khan ; and if Uzbek could have forgotten the insult to his majesty, the princes of Moscow would have kept him in mind of it. Iuri's brother, Ivan Kalita, offered to complete the ruin of Tver. Uzbek promised him the title of Grand Prince, and gave him an army of fifty thousand Tatars, to whom were joined the contingents of Moscow and Suzdal. Alexander, who had not had the wisdom to resist his people, had likewise not the courage to defend them and die with them. He fled, with his brothers, to Pskof and Ladoga. Pitiless was the vengeance of the khan and the vengeance of Moscow. Tver, Kashin, and Torjok were sacked. Novgorod had to buy itself off by a war indemnity. Not content with exterminating the Tverians, Uzbek put to death at the same time the Prince of Riazan, son of that Prince Iaroslaf whom Iuri Danielovitch had murdered in prison. The Horde and Moscow seemed to have the same enemies, — they struck in concert. It is remarkable that it was in the blood of the martyrs Mikhail of Tver and Dmitri "with the terrible eyes" that "holy Russia" came to her growth.

Ivan Kalita became Grand Prince in thirteen hundred and twenty-eight, and made the journey to the Horde with Mikhail's son Konstantin, who had replaced the fugitive Alexander on

the throne of Tver. Ivan was well received, but Uzbek commanded him to make Alexander appear before him. The ambassadors of the Grand Prince went to Pskof, to conjure Alexander to appear, or to summon the Pskovians to deliver him up. "Do not expose," they said, "a Christian people to the wrath of the infidels." But the Pskovians, touched by the prayers of the Prince of Tver, replied, "Do not go to the Horde, my lord ; whatever happens, we will die with thee." As magnanimous as the Novgorodians at the time of Alexander Nevski, as heroically absurd, they ordered the ambassadors to be gone, took up arms, and built a new fortress near Izborsk. Ivan assembled an army and persuaded the Metropolitan Theognostus to place Alexander and the Pskovians under an interdict. Thus men saw a Christian prince persecute one of his kinsmen by order of the Tatars, and a metropolitan excommunicate the Christians to force them to obey the khan. The Pskovians, though alarmed, would not yield an inch ; but Alexander left them and took refuge in Lithuania in thirteen hundred and twenty-nine. Then they said to the Grand Prince, "Alexander is gone ; all Pskof swears it, from the smallest to the greatest, popes, monks, nuns, orphans, women, and children."

Alexander afterwards returned, and was again recognized by them as their prince, but still regretted his good city of Tver. The protection of the Lithuanian Gedimin was too dangerous and too burdensome. Alexander thought it would be easier to bend the terrible Uzbek. He went to the Horde with his boyars. "Lord, all-powerful Tsar," he said to Uzbek, "if I have done anything against you, I have come hither to receive of you life or death. Do as God inspires you ; I am ready for either." The khan pardoned him, and Alexander returned to Tver. Ivan Kalita had hoped he had forever got rid of him. In Alexander's absence he was the master of Russia, had interfered in the affairs of Tver, married one of his daughters to Vladimir of Iaroslavl and another to Konstantin of Rostof,

brother of the banished prince. The return of Alexander gave a chief to those who were discontented with Ivan. Instead of declaring war, Ivan preferred to resort to his ordinary means. He flew to the Horde, and there represented Alexander as the most dangerous enemy of the Mongols. In consequence of these insinuations Alexander was summoned before the khan; this time he was beheaded, with his son Feodor. The rivalry with Moscow had already cost four princes of the house of Tver their lives. Uzbek, who had confidence only in Moscow, and who wished to govern the rest of Russia by terror, about this time put the Prince of Starodub to death. The princes Konstantin and Vasili of Tver, sons, brothers, and uncles of the victims, felt that they could maintain themselves only by obedience to their terrible father-in-law. As a proof of submission they sent to Kalita the great bell of the Cathedral of Tver. The princes of Riazan and Suzdal were also obliged to fight under his standards. Novgorod, threatened by him, began the course which afterwards proved so fatal, and which almost brought about the ruin of Russia; it allied itself with Lithuania, accepted as prince Narimond, a son of Gedimin, and gave him the Novgorodian possessions in Ingria and Karelia as hereditary appanages. It tried also to make friends with the Grand Prince of Moscow, but Ivan desired only to restrict its liberties, and exacted, in the name of the khan, a double capitation-tax.

This unwarlike prince, at the same time that he strengthened his supremacy, acquired by purchase the towns of Uglitch, Galitch, Biélozersk, and lands in the neighborhoods of Kostroma, Vladimir, and Rostof. He was at once Prince of Moscow and Grand Prince of Vladimir; but Moscow was his inheritance, of which he could not legally be despoiled by the khan, while Vladimir could be given to another house. It was thus that in Germany the archduchy of Austria was hereditary, while the imperial crown might legally pass to another family. It may therefore be imagined how Kalita chose to sacrifice Vla-

dimir to Moscow, as the Hapsburgs sacrificed Frankfort to Vienna. His Tverian rivals, the two grand princes, his predecessors, had acted in the same way. Mikhail and Dmitri of Tver had hardly appeared at Vladimir, except to be crowned in the cathedral. They lived habitually in their appanage towns, one at Tver, the other at Pereiaslavl. Under Kalita, Vladimir remained the legal capital of Russia; Moscow was the real capital, and Kalita was working to make it the legal as well as the actual capital. The Metropolitan of Vladimir, Peter, who had an affection for Moscow, often resided there. His successor, Theognostus, established himself there completely. Then the religious supremacy which had first belonged to Kief, and next to Vladimir, passed to Moscow. Kalita did his best to give it the prestige of a metropolis. He built magnificent churches in the Kreml, among others that of the Assumption, the Uspieski sobor. The first Metropolitans of Moscow, thanks to him and his successors, were beatified. Saint Alexis and Saint Peter are reckoned among the patron-saints of Russia. It is related that the Metropolitan Peter himself marked out the place of his tomb in the new church, and that he said to Ivan, "God will bless thee, and elevate thee above all the other princes, and raise this town above all other towns. Thy race will reign in this place during many centuries; their hands will conquer all their enemies; the saints will make their dwelling here, and here shall my bones repose."

What made the chief glory of Kief, the ancient metropolis, was the famous Petcherski monastery, with its holy catacombs and the tombs of so many ascetics and wonder-workers. Moscow had also its heritage of virtues and glorious austerity. Under Kalita's successor, not far from the capital, in a deep forest, where he had at first no companion but a bear, on water-courses which were haunted only by the beavers, Saint Sergius founded the Troïtsa, or monastery of the Trinity, which became one of the richest and most venerated of Eastern Russia. On

account of its increase of wealth, it was obliged to be surrounded with ramparts; and its thick brick walls with a triple row of embrasures, its nine war-towers, and its still existing fortifications, were afterwards destined to brave the assaults of Catholics and infidels. The princes of Moscow, in spite of their perfidious and pitiless policy, were as pious as good King Robert, — devotees, alms-givers, indefatigable in building churches and monasteries, in honoring the clergy, and in helping the poor. The surname of Kalita given to Ivan comes from the *kalita*, or alms-bag, he wore always at his girdle. This *kalita* may also have been Shylock's purse, — the bag of a prince who was farmer-general and usurer, who demanded from Novgorod double what he intended to pay on its behalf to Uzbek. Ivan liked to converse with the monks in his Convent of the Transfiguration. Like all the other princes of the house, he took care, when at the point of death, to be tonsured and adopt the religious dress and a new name.

If the princes of Moscow labored with fierce energy to bind together the Russian lands under one head, they continued to divide it into appanages among their sons. But many causes contributed to prevent the return of the former anarchy. These princes, as a rule, had few sons; they gradually got into the way of giving only very weak appanages to the younger ones, and these on condition of an absolute dependence on the eldest. Ivan, for example, had only three sons; he gave by far the larger share, Mojaïsk and Kolomna, to Simeon, and forbade Moscow to be divided. The idea of the state as one and indivisible was certain to gain the day.

#### SIMEON THE PROUD AND IVAN THE DÉBONAIR.

Kalita was succeeded by his two sons one after the other: Simeon the Proud reigning from thirteen hundred and forty-one to thirteen hundred and fifty-three, and Ivan the Second from thirteen hundred and fifty-three to thirteen hundred and

fifty-nine. They were all three contemporaries of the early Valois. At the news of Ivan's death many princes at once disputed the throne of Vladimir with his sons. Konstantin of Tver and Konstantin of Suzdal, especially, were supported by the other princes who did not desire the title of Grand Prince to be perpetuated in the house of Moscow. They went to the Horde at the same time that Simeon and his two sons travelled thither. Simeon owed his success neither to his eloquence nor his arguments, but to the treasure of his father, which won over the infidels. After being crowned in the Cathedral of Vladimir, he swore to live in harmony with his two brothers, and exacted from them the same oath. While pushing his submission to the khan to the verge of baseness, he domineered over the Russian princes with a haughtiness that gained for him the surname of "the Proud." He forced Novgorod to pay him a contribution, and, in his capacity of supreme head of Russia, confirmed the liberties of the republic. He was the first who assumed the title of "Grand Prince of all the Russias," which was little justified by the facts, as in thirteen hundred and forty-one Olgerd of Lithuania besieged the town of Mojaïsk, Simeon's own appanage. The friendship of Saint Alexis, third Metropolitan of Moscow, gave him great moral aid. In his reign Boris, a Russian artist, cast bells for the cathedrals of Moscow and Novgorod; three churches of the Kreml were adorned with new paintings, — that of the Assumption, by Greek artists; that of Saint Michael, by the Court painters; that of the Transfiguration, by a foreigner named Goiten. Paper replaced parchment; and it was on paper that Simeon's will was written. Russia then still maintained its old relations with Byzantium, and entered into new ones with Europe. Simeon died of the famous "black death," or "black pestilence," which at this time desolated the West.

Ivan the Second, the brother who succeeded the Proud in thirteen hundred and fifty-three, deserves, on the contrary,

the surname of "the Débonair." He was of a different type from the sinister princes of Suzdal, and was pacific and gentle. The anarchy into which Russia fell during the six years of his reign shows how little his virtues were those of his century. Without attempting to avenge himself, Ivan permitted Oleg of Riazan to insult his territory, burn his villages of the Lopasnia, and ill-treat his lieutenant. He allowed the Novgorodians to despise his authority and obey Konstantin of Suzdal; he let the Grand Duke Olgerd occupy Rjef, and Andrei of Lithuania menace Pskof. He interfered neither in the civil wars of the princes of Riazan, nor in those of the principality of Tver, nor in the troubles excited at Novgorod by the rivalry of the Slavonian quarters and that of Saint Sophia, nor in the storm raised in the Church by the Patriarch of Constantinople, who dared to consecrate a rival of Saint Alexis as Metropolitan. The murder of one of his officers, Alexis, military governor of Moscow, remained unpunished. In this weakness of the prince, the churchmen naturally came to the front, and took up the part abandoned by him. Moses, Archbishop of Novgorod, quelled a revolt in the republic; Saint Alexis reconciled the princes of Tver, and acquired, by a miraculous cure, great power in the Horde, by which he profited to protect his people and his prince. At the death of Ivan the Second the title of Grand Prince, which his three predecessors had made such efforts to perpetuate in the house of Moscow, passed to that of Suzdal. Dmitri of Suzdal, furnished with the iarluk, made his solemn entry into Vladimir in thirteen hundred and fifty-nine. It was again Saint Alexis who saved the supremacy of Moscow. After having blessed the Grand Prince in Vladimir, he returned to his care of the young children of Ivan the Second, and to Moscow, which had for a moment ceased to be the capital. It was by his counsels that Dmitri Ivanovitch, at the age of twelve, dared to declare himself the rival of Dmitri of Suzdal, and determined to appeal to the tribunal of the khan.

The Golden Horde was then a prey to civil wars; the ferocious Mamai harassed Murut, but as the latter reigned at Saraï, and seemed the legitimate successor of Batui, it was to him that the Suzdalian and Muscovite boyars addressed themselves. Murut adjudged the Grand Principality to Dmitri Ivanovitch, Kalita's grandson, whom a Muscovite army led to be consecrated in Vladimir.

#### DMITRI DONSKOÏ. — THE BATTLE OF KULIKOVO.

Dmitri Ivanovitch, who reigned from thirteen hundred and sixty-three until thirteen hundred and eighty-nine, is distinguished from nearly all the Suzdal princes by a warlike and chivalrous character worthy of the West. He proves that the Russian soul had been only repressed, not rendered depraved and servile, by the Tatar yoke, and that Slav chivalry only awaited an opportunity to raise the cry of war, and make their swords flash like the *preux chevaliers* of Louis the Ninth or of John the Good. Dmitri had at once to sustain a series of wars against the neighboring princes; notably against Dmitri of Suzdal, Mikhaïl of Tver, and Oleg of Riazan. As changes took place at the Horde, Dmitri of Suzdal obtained from the Khan Murut a reversal of his first decision, and returned to Vladimir. The Prince of Moscow, who feared this feeble khan no longer, did not hesitate to take up arms, and to expel his rival from Vladimir. A treaty was agreed on between them. The Suzdalian appanage of Nijni-Novgorod having become vacant, Dmitri supported his ancient enemy against his competitor Boris. Like his grandfather Kalita, who had caused Novgorod to be excommunicated, Dmitri Ivanovitch entreated Saint Sergius, the founder of the Troïtsa Monastery, to lay Nijni-Novgorod under an interdict. Then Boris yielded, and Dmitri of Suzdal, now Prince of Nijni-Novgorod, gave the Prince of Moscow his daughter Evdokia in marriage, and henceforward remained his friend. Dmitri Ivanovitch de-

prived the rebel princes of Starodub and Galitch of their appanages, and forced Koustantin Borisovitch to recognize his supremacy. He made, under the guaranty of Saint Alexis, a treaty with his cousin, Vladimir Andriévitch, by which he undertook to hand over to him the appanage that Kalita had secured to his father, and by which Vladimir engaged to acknowledge him as his father and his Grand Prince. Vladimir kept his word, and was always Dmitri's bravest lieutenant and his right arm.

The struggle now recommenced with the house of Tver. Mikhail Alexandrovitch, whose father had been killed at the Horde, disputed the throne with one of his uncles. The Grand Prince and the Metropolitan of Moscow took the part of the latter. Mikhail paid no attention to this decision, took Tver with a Lithuanian army, besieged his uncle in Kashin, and obliged him to renounce his claims. He then took the title of Grand Prince of Tver. It was chiefly the alliance with Olgerd, the husband of his sister Juliana, that rendered him formidable. Thrice — in thirteen hundred and sixty-eight, in thirteen hundred and seventy-one, and in thirteen hundred and seventy-two — Olgerd conducted his brother-in-law, burning and pillaging on his way, up to the walls of the Kreml of Moscow. Neither the Lithuanian nor the Muscovite army on any of these occasions fought a decisive battle. Dmitri's boyars felt that a lost battle would be the ruin of Russia; while Olgerd was too old and experienced to stake all on a hazard. At last, in thirteen hundred and seventy-five, after the death of his brother-in-law, Mikhail found himself besieged in Tver by the united forces of all the vassals and allies of Dmitri and of the Novgorodians who had the sack of Torjok and the devastation of their territory to avenge. Reduced to extremities, and abandoned by Lithuania, he was constrained to sign a treaty by which he engaged to regard Dmitri as his "elder brother," to renounce all claim to Novgorod and Vladimir, not to disquiet the allies of Moscow, and

to imitate Dmitri's conduct towards the Tatars, whether he continued to pay tribute or declared war.

Another enemy, not less dangerous, was Oleg of Riazan, who had formerly braved Ivan the Débonair. In thirteen hundred and seventy-one the Muscovites defeated Oleg and installed a prince of Pronsk in his capital, who was not, however, strong enough to maintain his position. If Tver was sometimes supported by Lithuania, Riazan had often the Horde as an ally.

The Empire of Kiptchak was gradually falling to pieces. Many competitors disputed the throne of Saraï. The Tatars acted after their kind, and invaded the Russian territory in disorderly style. It is true it was no longer a point of honor with the Christian princes to submit to them. Oleg of Riazan himself united with the princes of Pronsk and Kozelsk, and defied the Tatar prince Tagaï, who had burnt Riazan. Dmitri of Suzdal, Prince of Nijni-Novgorod, had defeated Bulat-Temir, who on his return to the Horde had been disavowed and put to death. Finally, Dmitri of Moscow had many times disobeyed the terrible Mamaï. He had, however, the courage to answer to the summons of the khan, and the good fortune or the cleverness to return to Moscow safe and well in thirteen hundred and seventy-one. In thirteen hundred and seventy-six Dmitri sent a great expedition against Kazan by the Volga, and forced two Tatar princes to pay tribute. Conflicts multiplied between the Christians and the infidels. In this manner the princes of Suzdal exterminated a band of Mordva, and delivered up their chiefs to be torn in pieces by the dogs of Novgorod; in return, Mamaï ordered the town to be burnt. In thirteen hundred and seventy-eight, Dmitri of Moscow gained a brilliant victory over Mamaï's lieutenant on the banks of the Voja in Riazan. In the first intoxication of victory he cried, "Their time is past, and God is with us!" The khan in his blind fury caused his anger to fall on Oleg of Riazan, the rival of Dmitri Ivanovitch, who fled, abandoning his lands to the ravages of the enemy.

It took Mamaï two years to mature his plans of vengeance, and he assembled in silence an immense host of Tatars, Turks, Polovtsui, Tcherkesui, Iasui, and Burtanians, or Caucasian Jews. Even the Genoese of Kaffa, settled in the Crimea and on the territory of the khan, furnished a contingent. In these critical circumstances for Russia, Oleg of Riazan, forgetting his grievances against the Tatars, and remembering only his mistrust and jealousy of Moscow, betrayed the common cause. While keeping on good terms with Dmitri, even while warning him of what was preparing, he secretly negotiated an alliance between the two most formidable enemies of Russia, — Jagello of Lithuania and Mamaï. The Grand Prince's army would probably be crushed between them; but Dmitri did not lose heart. The desire of vengeance awakened in the Russians with the force of religious enthusiasm. At the call of the Grand Prince the princes of Rostof, Biélozersk, Iaroslavl, Starodub, and Kashin, with their drujinui; the boyars of Vladimir, Nijni-Novgorod, Suzdal, Pereiaslavl-Zalieski, Kostroma, Murom, Dmitrof, Mojaïsk, Zvenigorod, Uglitch, and Serpukhof, at the head of their contingents, successively made their entrance into the Kreml, amid the acclamations of the Muscovites. At Kostroma, Dmitri was to be joined by two Lithuanian princes, — Andrei and Dmitri, — who brought him troops from Pskof and Briansk. The Grand Prince, with his cousin Vladimir, went to the hermitage of Troitsa to ask the benediction of Saint Sergius. The latter predicted that he would gain the victory, but that it would be a bloody fight. He sent two of his monks, Alexander Peresvet and Oslibaba, formerly a brave boyar of Briansk, to accompany Dmitri. On their cowls he made the sign of the cross. "Behold," he cried, "a weapon which never faileth." The Prince of Tver had taken good care not to send his contingent, and the treason of the Prince of Riazan now became known. The hearts of the Russians beat with joy and enthusiasm at the thought of revenge. In spite of private jealousies, the princes

were animated by the same ardor as the Spanish kings when they marched against the Moors, or the companions of Godfrey of Bouillon on the road for the Holy Land. Never had such an army been seen in Russia. Dmitri is said to have had one hundred and fifty thousand men.

They crossed the country of Riazan, then under a craven prince, and reached the banks of the Don. The princes debated as to whether it was necessary to cross the river immediately; but it was urgent to dispose of the Mongols before having on their hands Iagello, who had already arrived at Odoef, fifteen leagues off. A letter which Dmitri received from Saint Sergius, recommending him to "go forwards," decided the matter. The Don was crossed, and they found themselves on the plain of Kulikovo, or the Field of Woodcocks, watered by the Nepriadva. The centre was occupied by the princes of Lithuania and Smolensk, with Dmitri's drujina; the right was commanded by the princes of Rostof and Starodub, the left by those of Iaroslavl and Vologda; the reserve by Prince Vladimir, the brave Dmitri of Volhynia, and the princes of Briansk and Kashin. The Mongols soon came up, and the battle began. It was bloody and hard fought. The enemy had broken through the Grand Prince's drujina when Vladimir and Dmitri of Volhynia, who had been lying in ambush, suddenly attacked the Tatars. Mamai, from the top of a funeral mound, contemplated the flight of his army. His camp, his chariots, and his camels were all captured. The Mongols were pursued to the Métcha, in which many drowned themselves. If the barbarians lost, as they are said to have done, a hundred thousand men, the Russian loss was also very severe. They counted among the dead the two monks of Saint Sergius; one of them, Peresvet, was discovered in the arms of a Petcheneg giant, who had fought with him hand to hand, and perished along with him. For a long while Dmitri could not be found; at last he was discovered in a swoon, his armor bloody and broken. This memorable battle of Kulikovo has been related

in more than one way by the Russian historians. With the annalists, properly so called, the Grand Prince's official historians, Dmitri is the hero. In the poetical recitals which were inspired by the account of the Pope Sophronius it is Saint Sergius who at each moment supports the courage of Dmitri, whom they represent with rather too much humility for a general-in-chief. The battle of the Don, which gained for Dmitri the surname of Donskoï and for Vladimir that of the Brave, is as celebrated in Russia as that of Las Navas de Tolosa in Spain. It showed the Russians that they could vanquish the invincible; and the Mongol yoke, even after they again fell under it, no longer seemed unconquerable. Dmitri had heroically broken the tradition of slavery; he had proclaimed the future freedom.

Unhappily the event showed the advantages of the policy of resignation over the policy of chivalry, — of the patience of the hero of the Neva over the bravery of the hero of the Don. A man appeared at this moment at the head of the Mongols who was as formidable as Genghis Khan, — Tamerlane, the conqueror of the two Bokharas, of Hindostan, of Iran, and of Asia Minor. Tokhtamuish, one of his generals, caused Mamai to be put to death, and announced to Dmitri that he had triumphed over their common enemy; then he summoned the Russian princes to present themselves at the Horde. Dmitri refused. Was it in vain that the blood of the Christians had flowed at Kulikovo? The khan assembled an immense army. Dmitri found no longer the same wisdom or energy among his counsellors. Not knowing what to do, he left Moscow and went to assemble an army at Kostroma. Tokhtamuish marched straight on the capital, and during three days tried to carry the walls of the Kreml by assault. Then he had recourse to a ruse, and affected to enter into a negotiation. At last the Tatars surprised the gates and delivered up Moscow to fire and sword. A tolerably exact calculation proves that twenty-four thousand men perished, besides the precious documents and earliest archives of the principality.

Vladimir, Mojaïsk, Iurief, and other towns of Suzdal suffered the same fate. When Tokhtamuish had retired, Dmitri came and wept over the ruins of his capital. "Our fathers," he cried, "who never triumphed over the Tatars, were less unhappy than we." Bitter morrow of victory! However, although Russia had to resign itself to its Tatar collectors, it felt that the Horde would never recover its former power.

Dmitri longed at least to avenge himself on the perfidious Oleg. The latter escaped him, but Riazan, which was regarded as a harbor for traitors, was sacked. Mikhaïl of Tver merited the same chastisement; he had refused to fight Mamaï, and was one of the first to fly to the Horde of Tokhtamuish. The war continued with Oleg of Riazan, who ravaged the territory of Kolomna. Saint Sergius again intervened, entreated and threatened Oleg, and finally induced him to conclude a "perpetual peace" with Dmitri, and to cement it by the marriage of his son Feodor with Sophia, daughter of Dmitri.

The Novgorod adventurers, the "Good Companions," had about this time committed many ravages on the territories of the Grand Principalities. They insulted Iaroslavl and Kostroma in thirteen hundred and seventy-one, and Kostroma and Nijni-Novgorod in thirteen hundred and seventy-five, pillaging as far as Saraï and Astrakhan, sparing neither infidels nor Christians. Novgorod continued to furnish appanages to the Lithuanian princes, to despise the political authority of the Grand Prince, and the religious supremacy of the Metropolitan. Dmitri marched against the republic with the contingents of twenty-five provinces. Novgorod had to pay an indemnity for the high-handed deeds of the Good Companions, and to engage to furnish a yearly tribute.

When Dmitri died, in thirteen hundred and eighty-nine, the principality of Moscow was by far the most considerable of the states of the Northeast, since it extended on the south to Kaluga and Kasimof, and included on the northeast Biélo-

zersk and Galitch. As to Vladimir, Dmitri, in his will, calls it his patrimony. He has been reproached for having limited himself to the sack of Tver and Riazan without hastening their final annexation. If Dmitri gave appanages to his five younger sons, he at least established the principle of inheritance in a direct line instead of the ancient principle of collateral succession. He had signed a treaty with his cousin Vladimir, by which the latter renounced his rights as "eldest of the family," engaging to consider Vasili, eldest son of Dmitri, as his "elder brother." In the reign of Donskoï the monk Stephen founded the first church in the country of the Permians, confuted their priests and sorcerers, overthrew the idols of Voïssel and the *Old Golden Woman* who held two infants in her arms, put a stop to the sacrifice of reindeer, built schools, and died Bishop of Permia. A certain Andrei, probably a Genoese by birth, settled on the Petchora. Russia entered into relations with the West by means of the Genoese of Kaffa and Azof; coins of silver and copper, with the image of a knight, replaced the marten-skins. About thirteen hundred and eighty-nine the first cannons appeared in the Russian army. Moscow continued to be beautified, and the monasteries of the Miracle, of Andronii, and of Simeon were built.

#### VASILI DMITRIÉVITCH AND VASILI THE BLIND.

In thirteen hundred and eighty-nine Vasili Dmitriévitch, the contemporary of Charles the Sixth of France, succeeded his father without opposition as Grand Prince of Moscow and Vladimir. The preponderance of the first of these towns over the second became more and more marked. The situation of both was equally advantageous, — the one on the Moskova, the other on the Kliazma, affluents of the Oka. Vladimir, like Moscow, had its kreml on a high hill, commanding a vast extent of country. Both cities were in communication with the great Russian artery, the Volga; but were far enough from

it to escape the piracies of the Good Companions. Vladimir had been in other respects as favored as Moscow. Andrei Bogoliubski had ornamented the former, as Ivan Kalita had embellished the second. Vladimir, to which the title of Grand Principality was attached, seemed even better fitted than Moscow to be the capital of Russia. It was almost an historical accident that decided in favor of the latter. At the present day Vladimir is merely a simple seat of government with a population of fourteen thousand, while Moscow is a metropolis with six hundred thousand souls.

With regard to Novgorod, the Grand Prince of Moscow began to look upon it from the point of view of a sovereign, and called the city "his patrimony." The Novgorodians on their side appealed to the charter of Iaroslaf the Great, which formally conceded them the right to choose their princes. In the last reigns they had been accustomed to have recourse to a bargain. The republicans recognized the sovereign of Moscow as their prince, if the latter would consent to certain conditions, — the final homage rendered to the ancient Slav freedom. After the fall of Alexander of Tver, in thirteen hundred and twenty-eight, no Russian prince could compete with the house of Moscow for the throne of Novgorod. The only possible rivals were the Grand Princes of Lithuania. But with Lithuania it was not only a competition of candidates, but it was a great national and religious question. It would be more advantageous for Moscow to ruin Novgorod than to allow it to pass into the hands of the most dangerous enemy of Russian orthodoxy. We may say that after thirteen hundred and twenty-eight Novgorod had no longer a special prince, but only a boyar of Moscow, who represented the Grand Prince. The power of the latter was sometimes exerted with severity. In thirteen hundred and ninety-three, Novgorod having revolted against Moscow, Vasili sent in his troops, and seventy inhabitants of Torjok, accused of having put to death one of his men, were cut to pieces.

Thus Vasili Dmitriévitch, on his accession to the throne, found his power considerably strengthened, since Vladimir on the Kliazma and Novgorod the Great, the objects of so many bloody contests with the Russian princes, had in some ways already become integral parts of his dominions. If he went to the Horde in thirteen hundred and ninety-two, it was less to obtain the confirmation of this triple crown than to acquire new territories. From the Khan Tokhtamuish he bought a iarluk, which put him in possession of the three appanages of Murom, Nijni-Novgorod, and Suzdal. The boyars of Moscow and the ambassador of the khan betook themselves to Nijni. Boris, the last titular prince of the two latter appanages, was betrayed by his men, who persuaded him to open the gates, and delivered him up to the soldiers of the Grand Prince. Then, with the ringing of all the bells in the town, Vasili of Moscow was proclaimed Prince of Nijni and Suzdal.

This prince, who lived on such good terms with the Horde, was witness, however, of two Tatar invasions of Russia. Tamerlane, conqueror of the Ottoman Turks at Ancyra, attacked his old favorite, Tokhtamuish, and pillaged the Golden Horde. He continued to move towards the West, putting the Russian territory to fire and sword. Moscow was threatened with an invasion as terrible as that of Batui. The famous Virgin of Vladimir, brought by Andrei Bogoliubski from Vuishegorod, was taken solemnly to Moscow. The Tatars reached Elels on the Don, and made its princes prisoners. There they stopped, and suddenly retreated. Accustomed to the rich booty of Bokhara and Hindostan, and dreaming of Constantinople and Egypt, they found, no doubt, that the desert steppes and deep forests offered only a very meagre prey. They indemnified themselves by the pillage of Azof, where Egyptian, Venetian, Genoese, Catalan, and Biscayan merchants had accumulated great wealth, and by the destruction of Astrakhan and Saraï in thirteen hundred and ninety-five.

The irruption of Tamerlane resulted in the more rapid dissolution of the Golden Horde. We have seen that Vitovt took advantage of it to organize against the Mongols his great crusade of the Vorskla in thirteen hundred and ninety-nine. Vasili Dmitriévitch had taken good care not to interfere in the war between Lithuania and Kiptchak. His Western neighbors appeared to him more dangerous than those of the East: with the latter the payment of the tribute still sufficed; with the former the stake was the existence of Russia. Vasili profited by the defeat of the one and the disorganization of the other, and was careful to irritate neither party. As the Horde was then disputed by many competitors, he forbore to pay the tribute, affecting not to know which was the legitimate khan. Ediger, the vanquisher of Vitovt, resolved to reduce the Russian vassals to obedience. He lulled the prudence of the Muscovites to rest by spreading the rumor that he was assembling troops for a war against Lithuania. Suddenly they heard that he had entered the Grand Principality. Vasili imitated his father's conduct in similar circumstances. He retired to Kostroma to assemble an army, and confided the defence of Moscow to Vladimir the Brave. Defended by artillery, the Kreml could withstand the attack of a large force, but the dense population caused fears of famine. Ediger burnt the towns in the flat country while blockading Moscow. Ivan, Prince of Tver, showed on this occasion more greatness of soul and political wisdom than his father Mikhail. He abstained from coming to the help of the Tatars against his formidable suzerain. In these circumstances Ediger learned that his master Bulat himself feared an attack at the Horde by his Oriental enemies. To cover his forced retreat he addressed a haughty letter to the Grand Prince, summoning him to pay tribute; and obtained three thousand rubles from the Muscovite boyars as a war indemnity in fourteen hundred and eight.

Vitovt of Lithuania, whose daughter Sophia Vasili had

married, was a still more dangerous enemy. Great caution was necessary in all dealings with him. Vasili saw the hand of his father-in-law in the troubles of Novgorod, and everywhere else; at Pskof, where Vitovt had taken the title of Grand Prince; at Smolensk, which he had united to Lithuania; at Tver, where he supported Mikhail against the Grand Prince. Like Olgerd, Vitovt marched thrice against Moscow. Each of the two rivals had too many other enemies to dispose of, to risk in one battle the fortunes of Moscow or Lithuania. In fourteen hundred and eight they signed a treaty by which the Ugra was fixed on as the limit of the two Grand Principalities, leaving Smolensk to Vitovt, and restoring Kozelsk to Russia. Besides Murom and Suzdal, Vasili had united to his domains many appanages of the country of Tchernigof, such as Torusa, Novosil, Kozelsk, and Peremuisl. In the quarrels with Novgorod, generally occasioned by the exploits of the Good Companions or by commercial rivalry, he had appropriated vast territories on the Dwina; among others, Vologda. In an expedition against the republic of Viatka he had reduced it to submission and made one of his brothers its prince. He had imposed a treaty on Feodor Olgovitch, Prince of Riazan, by which the latter undertook to look on him as a father, and to make no alliances to his hurt. Vasili on his side ceded to him Tula and the title of Grand Prince. The Oka formed the boundary of the two states. He made, no doubt, a similar treaty with Ivan, Prince of Tver. One of his daughters had married the Emperor John Palæologus.

The reign of Vasili the Blind, from fourteen hundred and twenty-five until fourteen hundred and sixty-two, contemporary with Charles the Seventh of France, marks a pause in the development of the Grand Principality. A civil war of twenty years broke out in the bosom of Donskoi's family. One of his sons, George, or Iuri, whom he had made Prince of Rusa and Zvenigorod, attempted to revert to the ancient national law, and invoked his right as "eldest" against his

nephew, Vasili Vasiliévitch. Vasili's other uncles declared in favor of the young prince. In fourteen hundred and thirty-one it was necessary to carry the dispute to the Horde. Each of the two parties set forth his right to the Khan Ulu-Makhmet. Vsevolojiski, a boyar of the Prince of Moscow, found the best of arguments for his master. "My Lord Tsar," he said to Makhmet, "let me speak, — me, the slave of the Grand Prince. My master the Grand Prince prays for the throne of the Grand Principality, which is thy property, having no other title but thy protection, thy investiture, and thy iarluik. Thou art master and canst dispose of it according to thy good pleasure. My lord the Prince Iuri Dmitriévitch, his uncle, claims the Grand Principality by the act and the will of his father, but not as a favor from the All-powerful." In this contest of baseness the prize was adjudged to the Prince of Moscow. The khan ordered Iuri to lead his nephew's horse by the bridle. A Tatar baskak was present at the coronation of the Grand Prince, which took place, for the first time, not at Vladimir, but at the Assumption in Moscow. From this time Vladimir lost its privilege as the capital, although, in the enumeration of the titles, the Grand Princes continued to inscribe the name of Vladimir before that of Moscow.

Vasili owed his throne to the clever boyar, Vsevolojiski. He had promised to marry his daughter, but his own mother, Sophia, the proud Lithuanian daughter of the great Vitovt, made him contract an alliance with the Princess Maria, granddaughter of Vladimir the Brave. The irritated boyar left Vasili's service and retired to his enemy, Iuri, whose resentment against his nephew he fanned. Another circumstance exasperated Iuri; his two sons, Vasili Kosoi, or the Squinting, and Shemiaka, were attending the Grand Prince's marriage. The Princess Sophia recognized round the waist of Vasili Kosoi a belt of gold which had belonged to Dmitri Donskoï. She had the imprudence publicly and with open scandal to take it from the son of Iuri. On this affront the two princes at

once left the banqueting-hall and retired to their father. The latter instantly took up arms and departed for Pereiaslavl. The Prince of Moscow with difficulty assembled a few troops, and fell into his uncle's hands at Kostroma in fourteen hundred and thirty-three. Vasili tried in vain to soften him by his tears. The Kosoi and Shemiaka wished their prisoner to be put to death, but by the self-interested counsel of the boyar Morozof, Iuri allowed his nephew to live, and gave him the appanage of Kostroma, while he took for himself the Grand Principality. The affection of the Muscovites for their prince was so great that they abandoned their city in a body, and crowded into Kostroma. Iuri saw that his nephew was still powerful, reproached Morozof for his perfidious advice, and had him stabbed by his two sons. "Thou hast ruined our father," they said. The usurper was indeed unable to remain in Moscow, and sent to tell his nephew he might come and take possession of it. The boyars pressed around Vasili on his return to his capital "as bees press around their queen." The war, however, continued: thanks to Vasili's cowardice, Iuri again took the Kreml, and made the wife and mother of the Grand Prince prisoners, while Vasili Kosoi and Shemiaka occupied Vladimir and marched on Nijni-Novgorod.

Iuri had hardly been recognized as Grand Prince of Novgorod when he died suddenly. His sons then made peace with Vasili, but immediately took up arms again. In one of the many reverses of this civil war Vasili Kosoi fell into the hands of the Grand Prince, who in fourteen hundred and thirty-six had his eyes put out in an excess of fury. Then, by one of those changes common to violent and impulsive natures, he passed from anger to dismay; and to atone for his crime against his cousin set free Shemiaka, whom he had made prisoner at the same time. Shemiaka promised to serve him, but served him very badly. In a battle with the Tatars his desertion caused the rout of the Russian army at the siege of Biélef, in Lithuania. In fourteen hundred and forty-one the war

began again between the Grand Prince and Shemiaka. The latter, with some thousands of Free-lances and Good Companions, suddenly undertook the siege of Moscow. Zenobius, superior of the Troïtsa monastery, succeeded once more in reconciling them. Shemiaka displayed his ordinary duplicity on the occasion of a military incursion of the Tatars of Kazan. The Grand Prince waited in vain for the help that had been promised him, and it was with only fifteen hundred men that he finally took the field, so much had the discords between the descendants of Dmitri Donskoï weakened the Grand Principality, loosened the ties of obedience among the vassals, and degraded that Russia which had armed one hundred and fifty thousand men against Mamai. Vasili, covered with fifteen wounds, fell into the hands of the barbarians, and was carried prisoner to Kazan.

Moscow was in despair. The Prince of Tver insulted its territory; Shemiaka was intriguing at the Horde to get himself nominated Grand Prince. All at once the Tsar of Kazan took it into his head to liberate his prisoners for a small ransom. Vasili re-entered his capital amid the acclamations of his people. Shemiaka had done enough to fear the vengeance of the Grand Prince; in the interests of his own safety Vasili must be overthrown. Following the example of his father and grandfather, Vasili went to the Troïtsa monastery to return thanks to Saint Sergius for his deliverance. He had few companions, and Shemiaka and his associates surprised the Kreml in his absence, and captured his wife, his mother, and his treasures. Then he flew to Troïtsa, where his accomplice, Ivan of Mojaïsk, discovered the Grand Prince, who had taken refuge in the principal church near the tomb of Saint Sergius. He was brought back to Moscow, and ten years after the punishment of Vasili Kosoi, Shemiaka avenged his brother by putting out the eyes of the Grand Prince, in fourteen hundred and forty-six.

During his short reign at Moscow Shemiaka had made

himself hated by the people and the boyars, who were faithful from the bottom of their hearts to their unhappy prince. In the popular language a "judgment of Shemiaka" became the synonyme of a crying wrong. Soon Vasili's partisans assembled their troops in Lithuania, joined those of the two Tatar princes, and marched against the usurper. At this epoch Russia was infested by armed bands, the relics of the great Tatar and Lithuanian wars, Lithuanian adventurers, young nobles banished from the Horde, Novgorodian Good Companions, Free-lances of all races. They ravaged the flat country, attacked the strongest towns, and their chiefs sometimes created ephemeral principalities for themselves. As the Asiatic element predominated in them, they might be termed Great Mongol Companies, analogous to the Great English or the French Companies that, about the year fourteen hundred and forty-four, Charles the Seventh sent to Alsace and Switzerland. Serving Shemiaka or the Grand Prince indiscriminately, they did their best to perpetuate the quarrel. Shemiaka wished to march against his enemies; but hardly had he left Moscow ere he saw the city revolt and Vasili enter in triumph. Shemiaka fled, and accepted a reconciliation with his victim in fourteen hundred and forty-seven. Incapable of repose, he again took up arms, was completely defeated near Galitch by the Muscovites and Tatars in fourteen hundred and fifty, and fled to Novgorod, where he is said to have died three years after by poison. All his appanages were reunited to the royal domain.

Freed from this dangerous enemy, Vasili the Blind hastened to take up the work of his predecessors. Novgorod had not ceased to give asylum to his enemies, to despise the authority of his lieutenants, to contest his right of final appeal and the supremacy of the Metropolitan. A Muscovite army reduced the town to terms; it was forced to annul all the acts of the vetché which tended to limit the authority of the Grand Prince, to pay him a heavy indemnity, and to promise to im-

pose the seal of Vasili alone on its deeds. Pskof received one of his sons as its prince. The republic of Viatka had to pay tribute, and to furnish a military contingent. The Prince of Riazan having just died, Vasili took his young heir to Moscow, under pretence of bringing him up, and sent his lieutenant to govern the appanage. Vasili of Borovsk, grandson of Vladimir the Brave, had rendered him important services, but none the less was he imprisoned, and his possessions swallowed up in the Grand Principality. The authority of the Grand Prince began to be exercised on his subordinates with new rigor; and against the rebels, real or supposed, the knout, tortures, mutilations, and refined horrors were used. Vasili, who had suffered so much from the appanaged princes Iuri and Shemiaka, and who was so energetic in destroying the appanages around him, could not free himself from the yoke of custom, and began to dismember the principality which he had aggrandized, in favor of his four younger sons. However, to avoid all contests about the title of Grand Prince, and to insure the succession of the direct line, he had, since the year fourteen hundred and forty-nine, associated with himself his eldest son, Ivan.

Memorable events had agitated the orthodox world during his reign. In fourteen hundred and thirty-nine the Pope Eugenius the Fourth assembled the Council of Florence to discuss the union of the two Churches. The Greek Emperor, John Palæologus, who hoped to obtain the help of the Pope against the Ottomans, had sent the bishops of his communion; Isidor, Metropolitan of Moscow, was also present. It was in vain that the Emperor of Constantinople, three vicars of the Patriarchs of the East, seventeen metropolitans, and a multitude of bishops signed the act of union. The Greek world listened to the energetic protest of Mark, the old bishop of Ephesus, and rejected the union with Rome. But Isidor announced at Kief and Moscow that he had signed the act of reconciliation; the appearance of the Latin cross at the

Assumption in the Kreml, the name of Pope Eugenius in the public prayers, and the reading of the formal document, astonished the Russians. Vasili, who piqued himself on his theology, also raised his voice, began a polemic against Isidor, and so overwhelmed him with insults, that the "false shepherd" thought it prudent to take refuge in Rome. This check to the union heralded the fall of the Greek Empire. In fourteen hundred and fifty-three Mahomet the Second entered Constantinople. There was no longer a Christian Tsar; Moscow became the great metropolis of orthodoxy, since it was the heir of Constantinople. Soon the monks, the artists, the literary men, of Constantinople were to bring to Moscow as well as to the rest of Europe the Renaissance.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### IVAN THE GREAT, THE AUTHOR OF RUSSIAN UNITY.

1462 - 1505.

SUBMISSION OF NOVGOROD.—REUNION OF TVER, ROSTOF, AND IAROSLAVL.  
— WARS WITH THE GREAT HORDE AND KAZAN.—END OF THE  
TATAR YOKE.— WARS WITH LITHUANIA.— WESTERN RUSSIA AS FAR  
AS THE SOJA RECONQUERED.— MARRIAGE WITH SOPHIA PALÆOLOGUS.  
— GREEKS AND ITALIANS AT THE COURT OF MOSCOW.

---

SUBMISSION OF NOVGOROD. — REUNION OF TVER, ROSTOF,  
AND IAROSLAVL.

AT the death of Vasili the Blind, Russia was contained between the great Lithuanian Empire and the vast possessions of the Mongols. To the north it had two restless neighbors, the Livonian Order and Sweden. In spite of the labors of eight Muscovite princes, the little Russian state could not yet make its unity a fact; Riazan and Tver, though weakened, still existed. Novgorod and Pskof hesitated between the Grand Princes of Moscow and Lithuania. The heirs of Kalita, by creating new appanages, incessantly destroyed the unity which they had brought about by means of a pitiless policy. Moscow, which is bounded by no sea, had only intermittent relations with the centres of European civilization. It was, however, the time when the nations of the West began to be organized. Charles the Seventh and Louis the Eleventh in France, Ferdinand and Isabella in Spain, the Tudors in England, Frederick the Third and Maximilian in Austria, labored to build up powerful states from the ruins of feudal

anarchy. European civilization took an unprecedented start; the Renaissance began, the art of printing spread, Christopher Columbus and Vasco da Gama discovered new worlds. Was not Russia also going to achieve its unity, to take part in the great European movement? The man who was to restore this country to itself, to free it from the Mongol yoke, to bring it into relations with the West,—this man was expected. His coming had been predicted. When a son named Ioann, or Ivan, was born in fourteen hundred and forty to Vasili the Blind, an old monk had a revelation about it in Novgorod the Great. He came and said to his archbishop: “Truly it is to-day that the Grand Prince triumphs; God has given him an heir; I behold this child making himself illustrious by glorious deeds. He will subdue princes and peoples. But, alas for us! Novgorod will fall at his feet, never to rise again.”

Ivan the Third, whose reign of forty-three years was to permit him to realize the expectations of Russia, was a cold, imperious, calculating prince, the very type of the Suzdalian and Muscovite princes. Disliking war, he allowed doubts to be thrown upon his courage. He was victorious in Lithuania, in Livonia and Siberia, almost without leaving the Kreml. His father had taken long journeys, and had met with many sad adventures, but Stephen of Moldavia said of Ivan: “Ivan is a strange man; he stays quietly at home and triumphs over his enemies, while I, though always on horseback, cannot defend my country.” It was precisely the verdict of Edward the Third on Charles the Fifth. Ivan exhausted his enemies by negotiations and delay, and never employed force till it was absolutely necessary. His devotion was mixed with hypocrisy. He wept for his relatives whom he put to death, as Louis the Eleventh bewailed the Duke of Guienne. Born a despot, “he had penetrated the secret of autocracy,” says Karamsin, “and became a formidable deity in the eyes of the Russians.” His glance caused women to faint. When he

slept after his meals, it was wonderful to see the frightened respect of the boyars for the sleep of the master. He was prodigal of punishments and tortures to his boyars, even to those of the highest rank; he mutilated the counsellors of his son, whipped Prince Ukhtomski and the archimandrite of a powerful monastery, and burned alive two Poles in an iron cage on the Moskova for having conspired against him. He had already won the surname of "Terrible," which his grandson was to bear even more justly.

Ivan's first effort was directed against Novgorod the Great. The republic of the Ilmen was dying in the anarchy of the aristocracy, the dissensions of the people, the Church, and especially of the boyars. It is of this epoch that M. Biélaef has said, that "parties in Novgorod had become so complicated that often it is difficult to perceive from what motive this or that faction excited troubles and revolts." They thought themselves able to despise the authority of a new prince, and had the imprudence to neglect the complaints and suggestions made in a tolerably moderate tone by Ivan the Third. He then signified to the Pskovians that they would have to second him in an expedition against the rebels. This the Pskovians did not wish to do, foreseeing that the fall of Novgorod would drag them down also. They offered their mediation to their "elder sister," but it was rejected, and they were obliged to proceed. Ivan the Third received, however, Theophilus, the Archbishop of Novgorod, many times at Moscow, and continued to negotiate. He had a large party in Novgorod, but the opposing faction was the boldest. Marfa, the widow of the posadnik Boretski, mother of two grown-up sons, put herself at the head of the anti-Muscovite party. Ready speech, immense wealth, and an audacity equal to everything, had given her a great influence with the people and the boyars. This intrepid woman was the last incarnation of Novgorodian liberty. To save the republic, Marfa wished to put it into the hands of the King of Poland, Kasimir the Fourth. She



IVAN THE GREAT



desired also that the Archbishop of Novgorod should be nominated by the Metropolitan of Kief, not by the Metropolitan of Moscow. In her devotion to Novgorod she thus betrayed the cause of Russia and orthodoxy. The sittings of the *vetché*, between the opposition of the two parties, degenerated into violent tumults. Some cried, "The king!" others, "Long live orthodox Moscow! Long live the Grand Prince Ivan and our father the Metropolitan Philip!" The friends of Marfa finally won the day. Novgorod was handed over to the King of Poland by a formal act, by which the same conditions were stipulated as in its pacts with the ancient princes. Ivan the Third tried once more to recall the citizens to obedience, and sent them an ambassador, but Marfa's party was always the most numerous or the most noisy. At last Ivan decided to begin the war. The contingent made the conquest of the territory of the Dwina; the Muscovites, supported by the Tatar cavalry, cruelly ravaged the territory of the "perfidious" Novgorodians; after the battle of Korostuin they cut off the noses and lips of the prisoners. The republicans had fallen from their ancient valor: Marfa had hastily enrolled ill-disciplined artisans. At the battle of the Shelona five thousand Muscovites defeated thirty thousand Novgorodians. At Rusa the Grand Prince caused many boyars to be beheaded, one of whom was the son of Marfa, and sent others as prisoners into Muscovy. Ivan the Third kept advancing by battles and by treaties. Novgorod submitted in fourteen hundred and seventy, paid a war indemnity, and, if it still remained a republic, it was a republic dependent on the good pleasure of the Prince.

From that time Ivan aimed at the entire reduction of the town, and his party in Novgorod increased. If the people complained of the injustice of his lieutenants, he accused the insufficiency of the ancient laws of the city. He tried to excite the animosity of the other classes against the boyars. It was by the invitation of the latter that he came in fourteen

hundred and seventy-five to hold a solemn court in Novgorod. Great and small immediately crowded to his tribunal, to beg for justice one against the other. Ivan saw how much his own cause was strengthened by these divisions. An act of authority that he tried succeeded completely. Marfa's second son, the *posadnik*, and many boyars were loaded with chains and sent to Moscow. No one dared to protest. On his return to his capital a multitude of complainants hastened after him; he forced them all to appear before him. Since Rurik, say the annalists, such a violation of the liberties of Novgorod had never been known. Profiting by a documentary error made by the envoys of the town, he declared himself *gosudar*, or sovereign, of Novgorod, instead of *gospodin*, or lord. Now, if this interpretation were accepted, the subjection of the republic, which was only a matter of fact, would become a matter of law. Marfa's party made a last effort to reject this sovereignty; the friends of the Grand Prince were massacred. Ivan declared that the Novgorodians, after having accorded him the title of sovereign, had the effrontery to deny it. Then the Metropolitan, the bishops, the boyars, all Moscow, advised him to make war. Accordingly it was preached as a Holy War against the allies of the Pope and Lithuania. All the forces of Russia were put in motion, and many boyars appeared at the Grand Prince's camp. The city was blockaded, and reduced to starvation. In vain the partisans of Marfa shouted the old war-cry, "Let us die for liberty and Saint Sophia!" They were forced to capitulate. Ivan guaranteed to them their persons and possessions, their ancient jurisdiction, and exemption from the Muscovite service; but the *vetché* and the *posadnik* were abolished forever. The belfry was reduced to silence. The Republic of Novgorod thus ceased to exist in fourteen hundred and seventy-eight.

Marfa and the principal oligarchs were transported to Moscow, and their goods confiscated. Many times afterwards there were party agitations, which were quelled by Ivan the

Third and his successor, by numerous transportations. In fourteen hundred and eighty-one some boyars were tortured and put to death. Eight thousand Novgorodians were transplanted to the towns of Suzdalia. Ivan the Third struck another terrible blow at the prosperity of the city when, in fourteen hundred and ninety-five, after a quarrel with the people of Revel, he caused the merchants of forty-nine Hanse towns to be arrested at Novgorod, pillaged the "German market," and removed wares to the value of a million to Moscow. The covetous Grand Prince doubtless did not see he was killing the hen with the golden eggs. A long while elapsed before the merchants of the West again made their appearance in Novgorod. Pskof, more docile, preserved its vetché and its ancient institutions.

While he was destroying the liberty of Novgorod, Ivan also took away its colonies, and began on his own account the conquest of Northern Russia. By this time Muscovy extended as far as Finland, the White Sea, and the Arctic Ocean, and had already obtained a footing in Asia. Ivan conquered Permian in fourteen hundred and seventy-two, by which means he became master of the "silver beyond the Kama," obtained by the Novgorodians as an article of commerce. In fourteen hundred and eighty-nine Viatka, which had fallen for a short time in the power of the Tatars of Kazan, was reconquered, and lost its republican organization. In fourteen hundred and ninety-nine the voïevodui of Ustiug, of the Dwina, and of Viatka advanced as far as the Petchora, and built a fortress on the banks of the river. In the depth of winter, in sledges drawn by dogs, they passed the defiles of the Urals, in the teeth of the wind and snow, slew fifty of the Samoyedui, and captured two hundred reindeer; invaded the territory of the Vogului and Ugrians, the Finnish brethren of the Magyars; took forty enclosures of palisades, made fifty princes prisoners, and returned to Moscow, after having reduced this unknown country, supposed by the geographers of antiquity to be the

home of so many wonders and monsters. Russia, like the maritime nations of the West, had discovered a new world.

The cultivated provinces of Central Russia were more important than the deserts of the North. Here there were no immense territories to be conquered, but only the territories of the smaller appanaged princes to be grafted on to the already united mass. Ivan the Third might have dethroned the young Prince of Riazan, whom his father had brought to Moscow, but he preferred to give him the hand of his sister, Anna Vasilievna, and send him back to his territories in fourteen hundred and sixty-four. The absorption of the principalities of Riazan and Novgorod-Severski was reserved for his successor. He showed the same moderation about Tver, but in fourteen hundred and eighty-two Prince Mikhail, whose position had been maintained only by sufferance, had the imprudence to ally himself with Lithuania. Ivan hailed this pretext with joy, and marched in person against Tver, accompanied by the celebrated Alberto Fioraventi of Bologna, surnamed Aristotele, grand master of his artillery. Mikhail took refuge in Lithuania; and Ivan began to organize his new subjects. A principality which could furnish forty thousand soldiers was thus united to Moscow without a blow in fourteen hundred and eighty-five. In like manner he obtained possession of Vereia and of Biélozersk, and deprived the princes of Rostof and Iaroslavl of their ancient rights of sovereignty.

His father, by giving appanages to his brothers, had prepared for him a new and ungrateful task, but Ivan undertook it without scruple. When his brother Iuri died, in fourteen hundred and sixty-eight, he wept much for him, but at once laid hands on his towns of Dmitrof, Mojaïsk, and Serpukhof, thereby causing his other brothers, who hoped to share the spoil, great discontent. Andrei, accused of an understanding with Lithuania, was thrown into prison, where he died in fourteen hundred and ninety-three. The Grand Prince convoked the Metropolitan and bishops to his palace, appeared

before them with eyes cast down, his face sorrowful and bathed in tears, humbly accused himself of having been too cruel to his unhappy brother, and submitted to their pastoral admonitions; but he confiscated Andrei's appanage notwithstanding, and that of his brother Boris, who died a short time after, thus reuniting all his father's domains. He acquired the surname of "Binder of the Russian Land," a name which his eight predecessors equally merited. It was owing to their earlier labors that Ivan was able to become the greatest and most powerful of these "Binders." He avoided their errors; if later he gave appanages to his own children, it was only on condition that they should remain subjects of their eldest brother, and that they should neither have the right to coin money nor to exercise a separate diplomacy.

#### WARS WITH THE GREAT HORDE AND KAZAN. — END OF THE TATAR YOKE.

The Empire of the Horde had at last dissolved. The principal states which had risen from its remains were the Tsarate of Kazan, that of Sarai or Astrakhan, the Horde of the Nogaïs, or Nogaetsui, and the Khanate of the Crimea. Kazan and the Crimea particularly presented strange ethnographical amalgamations. In the reign of Vasili the Blind, the Tsarate had been founded by a banished prince on the ruins of the ancient Bulgaria on the Volga, formerly so flourishing and civilized. It was the same Makhmet who had tried to establish himself at Belef, and had defeated Shemiaka. The Mongols had mixed with the ancient Bulgars, and built up an important centre of commerce and civilization. The rule of the Tsarate extended over the Finnish tribes of the Mordva, the Tchuvashi, and the Tcheremisa, as well as the Bashkirui and Meshtchera. The Khanate of the Crimea had been founded almost at the same date by a descendant of Genghis Khan named Azi. A peasant named Ghirei having saved him from death, Azi added

his benefactor's name to his own, and henceforward the title belonged to all the khans of the Crimea. The Mongols, on arriving at the peninsula, found it occupied by the remains of the ancient Tauric, Hellenic, and Gothic races; by Armenians, Jews, and Jewish Kharaites, who pretended to have settled in five hundred before Christ on the rocks and in the Troglodyte cities of Tchufut-Kalé and Mangup-Kalé; and finally by the Genoese of Kaffa. The Jews and Italians excepted, a large part of the ancient population was absorbed by the Asiatic invaders. Likewise, while the Tatars of the Northern Crimean steppes are pure Nogaïs, those of the mountains of the south seem to be chiefly Taurians, Goths, and Islamized Greeks. As to the Great Horde of Saraï, that was almost entirely composed of nomads, such as the Nogaïs and other Turko-Tatar races.

Anarchy and dissensions reigned in the bosom of each of these states. The princes of Kazan, Saraï, and the Crimea came to seek an asylum from the Grand Prince, who made use of them to perpetuate these divisions. In fourteen hundred and seventy-three Ivan constituted the town of Novgorod of Riazan into a fief for one Mustafa; others served in the armies, and aided Ivan against Novgorod and Lithuania. Towards the khans and the tsars, especially those of the Great Horde or Saraï, the sovereign of Moscow held himself on the defensive, repelling the attacks of adventurers, but taking care not to provoke them; avoiding the payment of the tribute, but willing to send them presents. At the same time he schemed for alliances against the Khan of Saraï, and in fourteen hundred and seventy-seven despatched his Italian ambassador, Marco Ruffo, to the Turkoman Ussum-Hassan, master of Persia and an enemy of the Mongols. A more useful friendship united him with Mengli-Ghirei, Khan of the Crimea, and lasted all their lives. Mengli was as serviceable to him against Lithuania as against the Horde.

In fourteen hundred and seventy-eight, having carefully taken all his measures, he openly rebelled. When the Khan

Akhmet sent his ambassadors with his image to receive the tribute, Ivan the Third trampled the khan's image under his feet, and put all the envoys to death, excepting one, who conveyed the news to the Horde. This act, so very little in accordance with the well-known prudence of Ivan, is not to be found in all the chronicles. When Akhmet took the field, Ivan occupied a strong position on the Oka, with a more numerous and better-constituted army than that of Dmitri Donskoï. His one hundred and fifty thousand men and powerful artillery did not, however, prevent him from reflecting much on the hazard of battles. He even returned to reflect at Moscow, and it needed all the clamors of the people to induce him to leave it. "What!" exclaimed the Muscovites, "he has taxed us heavily, and refused to pay tribute to the Horde, and now that he has irritated the khan, he declines to fight." Ivan wished to consult his mother, his boyars, his bishop. "March bravely against the enemy," was the unanimous reply. "Does it belong to mortals to fear death?" said old Archbishop Vasian. "We cannot escape destiny." Ivan desired, at least, to send his young son Ivan back to Moscow, but the prince heroically disobeyed. The Grand Prince finally decided to return to the army, blessed by his mother and the Metropolitan, who promised him the victory as to a David or to a Constantine, reminding him that "a good shepherd will lay down his life for his sheep." Ivan, who did not feel himself made of the stuff of a Constantine, kept his army immovable on the Oka and the Ugra; the two forces contenting themselves with sending arrows and insults across the river. Ivan closed his ears to the warlike counsel of his boyars, and listened rather to the prudent advice of his two favorites, — "fat and powerful lords," says the chronicle. However, he refused the propositions of the khan, who offered to pardon him if he would either come himself or send one of his men to kiss his stirrup. At last monks and white-haired bishops lost all patience. Vasian addressed a warlike letter

to the Grand Prince, invoking the recollection of Igor, Sviatoslaf, Vladimir Monomakh, and Dmitri Donskoï. Ivan assured him that this letter "filled his heart with joy, courage, and strength"; but another fortnight passed in inaction. On the fifteenth day the rivers were covered with ice; the Grand Prince gave the order to retreat. An inexplicable panic seized the two armies, — Russians and Tatars both fled, the one from the other. The khan never stopped till he reached the Horde. Such was the last invasion of the horsemen of the Kiptchak. It was in this unheroic way that Russia at last, in fourteen hundred and eighty, broke the Mongol yoke under which it had groaned for three centuries. Like Louis the Eleventh, Ivan the Third had his battle of Montlhéry; but if he fought less, he gained far more. The Horde, attacked by the khans of the Crimea, survived its decay but a short time. Akhmet was put to death by one of his own men.

Hostility increased between Kazan and Moscow. In fourteen hundred and sixty-seven and fourteen hundred and sixty-nine Ivan the Third organized two expeditions against Bulgaria. In fourteen hundred and eighty-seven, seven years after having shaken off the supremacy of the Great Horde, the Muscovite voïevodui marched against the same Kazan, where the father of their Grand Prince had been taken captive. After a siege of seven weeks the city was taken, and the sovereign Alegam made prisoner. A tsar of Kazan was then seen a prisoner in Moscow! Ivan the Third added the title of Prince of Bulgaria to those he already bore; but, feeling that the Mussulman city was not yet ripe for annexation, he gave the crown to a nephew of his friend the Khan of the Crimea. The people were forced to take the oath of fidelity to him. The conquest of the land of Arsk, in Bulgaria itself, and the establishment of a Russian garrison in the fortress, allowed him to watch from close by all that passed in Kazan. The Khan of the Crimea did not care to protest

against the captivity of the Tsar Alegam, his nephew's enemy, but the princes of the Shiban and the Nogaïs, who were related to him, and who beheld Islamism humiliated in his person, despatched an embassy to the Grand Prince. The latter refused to release his prisoner, but replied so graciously that the envoys could hardly be angry. He sent to those zealous kinsmen Flemish cloth, fishes' teeth, and gerfalcons, and did not forget the wives of the Tatar princes, whom he called his sisters. At the same time, wishing to make these Asiatics feel that times had changed, he took care never personally to compromise himself with the Nogaï envoys, and to communicate with them only by means of treasurers, secretaries, and other officers of the second rank.

WARS WITH LITHUANIA.—WESTERN RUSSIA AS FAR AS  
THE SOJA RECONQUERED.

Lithuania united with Poland remained, after all, Ivan's great enemy. This composite state plays the same part in Russian history as the Burgundy of Philip the Good and Charles the Bold in that of France. Made up in a great degree of Russian as well as of Polish and Lithuanian elements, it was many times on the point of annihilating Russia, in the same way as Burgundy, composed of French, Batavian, and German provinces, had been on the point of annihilating the French nation. Lithuania was incorporated with Poland in the same manner as the states of Burgundy, unfortunately for France, were incorporated with Austria.

At the beginning of Ivan's reign the King, Kasimir the Fourth, was sovereign of the two united states, and neglected no means of disquieting the Grand Prince. The latter, on his part, incited his ally Mengli to invade the Lithuanian possessions; and the Crimean Tatars pillaged Kief and the Monastery of the Catacombs in fourteen hundred and eighty-two. When, ten years after, Kasimir died, leaving Poland to his

eldest son Albert and Lithuania to Alexander, the second son, Ivan the Third, resolved to turn the division to account. He had obtained the friendship of the Turkish Sultan Bajazet the Second, of Matthias Corvinus, King of Hungary, of the active Stephen of Moldavia, the determined enemy of the Lithuanians ; but, above all, he counted on Mengli. Mengli had held Lithuania in check while Ivan was freeing himself from the Mongols ; now he was to play the same part with the Horde, while the Grand Prince settled old scores with Alexander, but without interfering with the Tatar incursions in the Ukraina. The discovery at Moscow of a Polish plot against the life of the Grand Prince spread rumors of war. In the same way that he had been able to utilize the Mongol refugees against the Horde, he found the Lithuanian princes and other great personages entering into relations with him. It was then that the Belski and the Glinski, afterwards so famous, obtained a footing in Russia, that the Prince of Mazovia sent an embassy to Ivan the Third, and the princes of Viazma, Vorotinsk, Biélef, and Mezetsk did him homage.

The war was popular in Moscow, for its object was to break the yoke imposed by the Polish Catholics on the orthodox Russian people. In White Russia the Muscovites were to awake old national and religious sympathies. "Lithuania," said the ambassadors of Ivan the Third to the plenipotentiaries of Alexander, — "Lithuania has profited by the misfortunes of Russia to take our territory, but to-day things have changed." Peace was made in fourteen hundred and ninety-four, after a short war. The frontier of Muscovy was carried to the Desna, and comprehended the appanages of the princes who had taken service with Ivan, with Mstislavl, Obolensk, Kozelsk, Vorotinsk, Peremuisl, and others.

The peace seemed to be cemented by the marriage of Alexander with Helena, daughter of Ivan the Third ; but, on the contrary, this union proved the germ of a new war. The

sovereign of Moscow had stipulated that his daughter was under no circumstances to change her religion, that she was to have a Greek chapel in the palace and an orthodox almoner. Ivan himself gave his daughter the most pressing injunctions never to appear in the Catholic church, and gave her minute directions as to her toilet, her table, her mode of travelling, and her way of conducting herself towards her new subjects. At her departure he bestowed on her a collection of various pious books. His policy agreed with his conviction: it was necessary that in Lithuania orthodoxy should rise from its abasement, and reign with his daughter. Soon afterwards he complained that Helena was forced to offend her conscience, that she was made to wear the Polish costume, that her domestics and orthodox almoners were dismissed and their places filled with Catholics, that the Greek religion was persecuted, that the assassination of the Metropolitan of Kief had remained unpunished, and that he was to be succeeded by a man devoted to the Pope. Lithuania, at the beginning of the war, was further enfeebled by new defections. The princes of Bielsk, of Mossalsk, of Khotatof, the boyars of Mtsensk and of Serpeïsk, and finally the princes of Tchernigof and Starodub, of Ruïlsk and Novgorod-Severski, declared for the Grand Prince of Moscow. All the country between the Desna and the Soja passed into the hands of the Russians, together with Briansk, Putivl, and Dorogobuzh. They had only to show themselves to conquer. Alexander could not abandon the conquests of Olgerd, Vitovt, and Gedin without striking a blow, but his army was cut to pieces at the battle of Vedrosha. Konstantin, Ostrojski, his voïevod, fell into the hands of the Muscovites, who tried to gain him over to their cause. The Lithuanians, however, kept the strongholds of Vitepsk, Polotsk, Orsha, and Smolensk.

This prolonged struggle between Alexander and Ivan the Third had set all Eastern Europe in a blaze. Alexander had made an alliance with the Livonian Order and the Great

Horde. The Khan of the Crimea pitilessly devastated Galicia and Volhynia. The Russian troops again defeated the Lithuanians near Mstislavl, but were forced to raise the siege of Smolensk. In the north the Grand Prince of Moscow had stopped the Germans of Livonia from building the fortress of Ivangorod opposite Narva, and had seized the Hanse wares at Novgorod. The Grand Master, Hermann of Plettenberg, responded with joy to the appeal of the Lithuanians; and at the battle of Siritsa, near Izborsk, his formidable German artillery crushed an army of forty thousand Russians in fifteen hundred and one. The latter took their revenge the following year on the iron men near Pskof. Schig-Akhmet, Khan of the Great Horde, wished to make a diversion, but the Khan of the Crimea attacked him with fury, and in fifteen hundred and two so completely extinguished his rule that the ruins of Saraï, Batui's capital, where the Russian princes had grovelled before the khans, were henceforward a home of serpents.

Alexander had just been elected King of Poland, and wished to finish this ruinous war. The celebrated Pope, Alexander the Sixth, and the King of Hungary tried in fifteen hundred and three to mediate between the belligerent powers. As, however, neither of the two parties would abate any of their claims, a truce of six years only could be agreed on, during which time the Soja was to be the boundary, and the territories belonging to the cities and the princes deserting to Russia were to be left in its power. What shows the good faith of Ivan the Third is that, after this truce was signed, he obtained the promise from the Khan of the Crimea to continue his attacks against Lithuania.

#### MARRIAGE WITH SOPHIA PALÆOLOGUS.—THE GREEKS AND ITALIANS AT THE COURT OF MOSCOW.

The acquisition of the Novgorodian possessions and the appanages, the capture of Kazan, the fall of the Horde, and the conquest of Lithuania up to the Soja, had doubled the

extent of the Grand Principality, even without reckoning the immense territory it had gained on the north. An event not less important in its consequences was the marriage of Ivan the Third with a Byzantine princess. Thomas Palæologus, a brother of the last emperor, had taken refuge at the Court of Rome. There he died, leaving a daughter named Sophia. The Pope wished to find her a husband, and the Cardinal Bessarion, who belonged to the Eastern Rite, advised Paul the Second to offer her hand to the Grand Prince of Russia. A Greek named Iuri, and the two Friazini, relations of Friazine, minister of Ivan the Third, were sent on an embassy to Moscow. Ivan and his boyars accepted the proposal with enthusiasm: it was God, no doubt, who had given him so illustrious a wife; "a branch of the imperial tree which formerly overshadowed all orthodox Christianity." Dowered by the Pope, whose heart was always occupied with two things, — the crusade against the Turks and the reunion of the two Churches, — Sophia went from Rome to Lübeck, from Lübeck by sea to Revel, and was received in triumph at Pskof, Novgorod, and the other towns subject to Moscow. This daughter of emperors was destined to have an enormous influence on Ivan. It was she, no doubt, who taught him to "penetrate the secret of autocracy." She bore the Mongol yoke with less patience than the Russians, who were accustomed to servitude. She incited Ivan to shake it off. "How long am I to be the slave of the Tatars?" she would often ask. With Sophia a multitude of Greek emigrants came to Moscow, not only from Rome, but from Constantinople and Greece; among them were Demetrios Ralo, Theodore Lascaris, Demetrios Trakhaniotes. They gave to Russia statesmen, diplomatists, engineers, artists, and theologians. They brought with them Greek books, the priceless inheritance of ancient civilization. These manuscripts were the first beginnings of the present "Library of the Patriarchs."

Ivan the Third was the heir of the Emperors of Byzantium

and the Roman Cæsars. He took for the new arms of Russia the two-headed eagle which in its archaic form is still to be found in the Palace of Facets of the Kreml. Moscow succeeded Byzantium as Byzantium had succeeded Rome. Having become the only metropolis of orthodoxy, it was incumbent on her to protect the Greek Christians of the entire East, and to prepare the revenge against Islamism for the work of fourteen hundred and fifty-three. With the Greeks came Italians: Alberto Fioraventi Aristotele of Bologna, who was Ivan the Third's architect, military engineer, and master of artillery; Marco Ruffo, his ambassador in Persia; Pietro Antonio, who built his imperial palace; the metal-founder, Paul Bossio, together with architects and gunsmiths.

Ivan entered into relations with Venice when Trevisani, envoy of the republic, on his way to the Horde, tried to traverse the Grand Prince's states incognito, and was arrested and condemned to death. The Senate interfered, and the imprudent diplomatist was set at liberty. Ivan sent in his turn a Russian ambassador, Simeon Tolbuzin, charged to bind the two countries in friendly ties, and to bring back some skilful architect from Italy. He was followed in fourteen hundred and ninety-nine by Demetrios Ralo and Golokhvastof. Contarini, the Venetian ambassador, returned from Persia with a French ecclesiastic named Louis, who called himself envoy of the Duke of Burgundy, and the Patriarch of Antioch. He stopped at Moscow, and was kindly received by Ivan. He himself was much struck by the Grand Prince. "When, in speaking, I respectfully stepped back," relates Contarini, "the Grand Prince always drew near, and gave particular attention to my remarks." Ivan the Third, whether to secure himself allies against Poland, or to obtain artists and handicraftsmen from Germany, exchanged more than one embassy with Frederick the Third and Maximilian of Austria, Matthias of Hungary, and the Pope. When attacked by Sweden, he negotiated an alliance with Denmark. Pleshtchéf was the first

Russian ambassador at Constantinople under Bajazet the Second. From the East came envoys of Georgia and even of Djagatai or of Turkestan and Tartar Siberia.

This prince who, born vassal of a nomad race, founded the greatness of Russia, may be compared with one of the greatest of French kings, Louis the Eleventh. What the latter accomplished in the case of appanaged feudalism Ivan succeeded in doing in that of appanaged principalities. He was pitiless towards the smaller Russian dynasties, as the King of France was to Armagnac or Saint Pol. He succeeded in reducing Lithuania, just as his Western contemporary managed to dismember Burgundy. He put an end to the Mongol invasions, as Louis did to the English wars. He repulsed, without striking a blow, the last incursion of the khans, as Louis the Eleventh sweetly dismissed the last embarkation of the English under Edward the Fourth. Both had the same taste for foreigners, especially industrious Italians, and for the useful arts. Both explored the metallic riches of their states. They each created a diplomacy; the one by means of Comynes, the other by means of Greeks, and Russians as supple as Greeks. They strengthened the national army, and gave it a permanent character; they both owed their success against the minor princes to their artillery.

Louis the Eleventh, who wished to put an end to the anarchy in the laws and to the thefts of chicanery, meditated a real code, a complete system of common law, which would put the old laws in harmony with the new order of things. This is precisely what Ivan did in his Ulogenia of fourteen hundred and ninety-seven. In comparing it with the Russkaïa Pravda of Iaroslaf, we are able to gauge the amount of change caused in the national laws by the influence of Byzantium, the example of the Tatars, and the progress of autocracy. Corporal punishments have notably increased: for homicide, death; for theft, whipping in a public place. Torture was making its way in the procedure. The judicial duel was still admitted,

only now it could hardly become mortal ; each of the combatants had a cuirass, and was armed only with a short club. Women, minors, and ecclesiastics were represented by a champion. In the same way as the end and aim of Ivan's policy was the suppression of appanages, that of his code was to efface the privileges, the legal and judicial peculiarities, of the different provinces.

For three generations the throne had been inherited in the direct line. When, however, Ivan, eldest son of Ivan the Third, died, the latter hesitated long between his grandson Dmitri Ivanovitch and his second son Vasili. His wife supported Vasili ; his daughter-in-law Helena, Ivan's widow, naturally declared for her own son. The court was divided, and both parties were absorbed in their intrigues. Ivan the Third at first proclaimed Dmitri, threw Vasili in prison, and disgraced his wife. Then he changed his mind, imprisoned his daughter-in-law and his grandson in their turn, and proclaimed Vasili his heir. The Western law of heredity was not established in Russia without many struggles.

Soloviof says : " It is to the glory of Ivan the Third that he understood how to make the most of his opportunities and the fortunate circumstances in which he found himself throughout his whole life. He proved himself to be the true descendant of Vsevolod the Third and Ivan Kalita, to be the genuine prince of Northern Russia. Economy, deliberation, caution, keen distrust of bold measures which may accomplish everything and which may spoil everything, at the same time resolution in carrying to the end whatever he had once begun, and finally absolute coolness, — such were the leading traits of the character of Ivan the Third."

## CHAPTER XIV.

### VASILI IVANOVITCH.

1505 - 1533.

REUNION OF PSKOF, RIAZAN, AND NOVGOROD-SEVERSKI. — WARS WITH LITHUANIA. — ACQUISITION OF SMOLENSK. — WARS WITH THE TATARS. — DIPLOMATIC RELATIONS WITH EUROPE.

---

REUNION OF PSKOF, RIAZAN, AND NOVGOROD-SEVERSKI. — WARS WITH LITHUANIA. — ACQUISITION OF SMOLENSK.

THE reign of Vasili Ivanovitch may seem somewhat pale between those of the two Ivans, — his father and son, both surnamed the Terrible. It was likewise of shorter duration, lasting only twenty-eight years, from fifteen hundred and five until fifteen hundred and thirty-three, but it was the continuation of the one and the preparation for the other; the movement which was bearing Russia towards unity and autocracy was not retarded under Vasili Ivanovitch.

There were still three states which had preserved a certain independence, — the Republic of Pskof and the principalities of Riazan and Novgorod-Severski. The quarrels still continued at Pskof between the citizens and the peasants, the aristocracy and the lower classes. The whole of Pskof was in conflict with the prince's royal lieutenant. Vasili came to hold his court at Novgorod, and summoned the magistrates of Pskof to appear before him. When they arrived, he arrested them. A merchant of Pskof, who was on his way to Novgorod, returned with the news to his fellow-citizens. Instantly the bell of the vetché began to ring, and the cry

was heard, "Let us raise the shield against the Grand Prince. Let us shut the gates of the town." The more prudent tried to restrain the people. "What can we do? Our brothers, our magistrates, our boyars, and all our chief men are in the hands of the prince." The imprisoned Pskovians sent a messenger to implore their fellow-citizens not to attempt a useless resistance, and to avoid bloodshed. The latter then despatched one of their number to the Grand Prince, and charged him to say, "My lord, we are not your enemies. After God, it is you who have power over all your subjects." Vasili Ivanovitch sent them one of his *diaki*, or secretaries, who was admitted into the assembly of the citizens, saluted them in the name of the Grand Prince, and informed them that his master imposed on them two conditions: the first was that the towns subject to Pskof should receive his lieutenants, the second was the suppression of the vetché and its bell. For a long while they could give him no answer, — their sobs and tears choked them. At last they demanded twenty-four hours to deliberate. The day and night passed in lamentations. "The infants at the breast," says the annalist, "alone could refrain from tears." The next day the people met for the last time, and the first magistrate of the city thus spoke to Dalmatof, the Grand Prince's diak: "It is written in our Chronicles that our ancestors took oaths to the Grand Prince. The Pskovians swore never to rebel against our lord who is at Moscow, never to ally themselves with Lithuania, with Poland, nor with the Germans, otherwise the wrath of God would be upon them, bringing with it famine, fires, floods, and the invasion of the infidels. If the Grand Prince, on his part, did not observe his vow, he dared the same consequences. Now our town and our bell are in the power of God and the prince. As for us, we have kept our oath." Dalmatof had the great bell, symbol of the independence of the republic, taken down, and carried to Novgorod, amid the general despair. Then Vasili Ivanovitch came to

visit his "patrimony of Pskof." He installed his men and boyars in the upper town, transplanted three hundred families of the aristocracy into the cities of the interior, and established three hundred Muscovite families in their place. When he went away, he left a garrison of five thousand knights and five hundred Novgorod artillerymen. This was in the year fifteen hundred and ten. "Alas!" cries the annalist, "glorious city of Pskof the Great, wherefore this lamentation and tears?" And the noble city of Pskof replies: "How can I but weep and lament? An eagle, a many-winged eagle, with claws like a lion, has swooped down upon me. He has taken captive the three cedars of Lebanon, — my beauty, my riches, my children! Our land is a desert, our city ruined, our commerce destroyed. Our brothers have been carried away to a place where our fathers never dwelt, nor our grandfathers, nor our great-grandfathers."

Ivan, Prince of Riazan, was accused, about fifteen hundred and twenty-one, of having made an alliance with the Khan of the Crimea. He was summoned to Moscow and imprisoned. He managed to escape into Lithuania, where he died in obscurity. His fertile country, whose rich harvests "looked like waving forests," was united to the Grand Principality. A certain number of Riazanese were transported to Muscovite soil. 'Vasili Shemiakin was the ruler of Novgorod-Severski; he was the grandson of the Shemiaka who had put out the eyes of Vasili Vasiliévitch. About fifteen hundred and twenty-three, on the accusation of an understanding with Poland, he was thrown into prison, where he died. There was now only one Russia. One of the Grand Prince's jesters had predicted the fall of the last appanaged prince. He went through the streets of Moscow armed with a broom, crying "that it was time to clean the empire of what remained of this rubbish." Vasili, like the most of his predecessors, had little tenderness for his family. His nephew Dmitri, whom his grandfather had for a moment destined to occupy the throne, and who by

Western laws was the rightful heir, died in prison. One of Vasili's brothers, feeling the yoke press too heavily on him, tried to escape, but was brought back.

The son of Ivan the Great continued the struggle with Lithuania. He had attempted, at the death of Alexander, to get himself nominated Grand Prince of Vilna, and the reconciliation of Muscovite and Lithuanian Russia would have changed the destinies of the North. Sigismond the First reunited the two crowns of Vilna and Poland. An unimportant war ended in fifteen hundred and nine by a "perpetual peace," and Vasili renounced all claims on Kief and Smolensk. The perpetual peace lasted three years, which were filled by the recriminations of the two parties. Vasili accused Sigismond of never having sent back all the prisoners; of pillaging the Muscovite merchants; of maltreating Alexander's widow, daughter of Ivan the Third; of tempting Simeon, Vasili's brother, to fly to Poland; and of inciting the Crimean Tatars to ravage Russia. He declared that "as long as his horse was in condition for riding, and his sword cut sharp, there should be neither peace nor truce with Lithuania." Smolensk was instantly attacked; part of its inhabitants were on the side of Russia, and offered to submit to the Grand Prince. A volley of artillery knocked down the ramparts of its Kreml, which towers over the Dnieper. The Polish voïevod was compelled by the people to capitulate. "Spare your patrimony," said they to the Grand Prince. The Bishop of Smolensk blessed Vasili, and the inhabitants took the oaths of fidelity to him in fifteen hundred and fourteen. "The taking of Smolensk," says a Russian chronicler, "was like a brilliant fête-day for Russia; for the capture of the property of another can flatter only an ambitious prince, but to gain possession of what is one's own is ever a cause of joy." Many of the Lithuanians, however, remained undecided; the name of Russia and of orthodoxy brought them into communion with Moscow, but the Muscovites appeared very barbarous compared with the Poles, and

the turbulent nobility of Lithuania were better suited to Polish anarchy than to Russian autocracy. A Glinski, one of a Podolian family, who went over to Vasili at this time, played the traitor. Konstantin Ostrojski, whom Vasili had tried to gain over to the cause of orthodoxy, fled from Moscow ; and it was he who, in fifteen hundred and fourteen, inflicted on the Russian voievodui the bloody defeat of Orsha. "The next day," says Karamsin, "he celebrated the victory that he had won over a people of the same religion as himself, and it was in the Russian tongue that he gave thanks to God for having destroyed the Russians." Even the contemporaries felt vaguely that a struggle between Lithuanian Russia and Moscow was a kind of civil war. Had not Vasili tried to unite the two principalities?

As in the time of Ivan the Third, the duel of the two states made itself felt throughout Europe, and occasioned a great diplomatic movement. Sigismond this time had the Tatars of the Crimea on his side ; Vasili opposed them with the Tatars of Astrakhan. Sigismond reckoned on Sweden. Vasili negotiated with Denmark. The king had gained over to his cause the Dnieper Cossacks, whose name already began to be heard in history, and who had been powerfully organized by Dashkovitch. But Vasili secured the friendship of the Teutonic Order, who even consented to invade Polish Prussia ; of Maximilian of Austria, who signed a treaty for the division of the Polish territory ; of the Hospodar of Wallachia ; and finally, of the Sultan Selim, to whom he sent embassy after embassy. Negotiations were set on foot in consequence of the defeat of Konstantin Ostrojski before Smolensk and in the battle of Opotchka. Maximilian of Austria undertook the office of mediator ; his ambassador, Herberstein, the same who has left us the curious book entitled "*Rerum Moscovitarum Commentarii*," promised that Vasili should cede Smolensk, and quoted to him the disinterestedness of King Pyrrhus and other great men of antiquity. Pope Leo the

Tenth intervened without greater success, though he counselled Vasili to leave Lithuania alone, and to turn his thoughts to Constantinople, the inheritance of his mother, Sophia Palæologus. At last, in fifteen hundred and twenty-two, the negotiations opened and terminated in the truce of fifteen hundred and twenty-six. Vasili pronounced a discourse on the subject, in which he expressed his friendship for his noble mediators, the Pope, the Emperor, and the Archduke of Austria, — Clement the Seventh, Charles the Fifth, and Ferdinand, — but Russia kept Smolensk.

#### WARS WITH THE TATARS. — DIPLOMATIC RELATIONS WITH EUROPE.

The Tatars were still dangerous. Mengli-Ghirei, the ancient ally of Ivan the Third, had declared for Lithuania against Vasili. Perhaps the old khan might have lost the authority necessary to restrain his sons and murzui, who only wished to pillage the Russian territory. Under his successor, Makhmet Ghirei, the Crimea became a deadly enemy of Russia. Kazan, on expelling the protégé of Ivan the Third, had elected a prince hostile to Moscow. Two expeditions directed against the rebel city failed completely. At the death of the Tsar of Kazan the principality became the apple of discord between the Khan of the Crimea and the Grand Prince. The Russians, however, had succeeded, and installed their client, Schig-Alei, a Mussulman brutalized by idleness and pleasures, whose enormous belly gave him a grotesque appearance; but he was overthrown by the intrigues of the Khan of the Crimea, and a kinsman of the Ghirei was placed on the throne. In support of their candidate the Taurians prepared, in fifteen hundred and twenty-one, a great invasion of Russia. They crushed the Russian voïevodui on the banks of the Oka, ravaged the Grand Principality, looked on Moscow from the Hill of Sparrows, and made themselves drunk with hydromel found in the

Grand Prince's cellars. At the Kreml there was a formidable array of artillery, but no powder. Herberstein assures us that the powerful son of Ivan the Third humiliated himself, as in the time of Ivan Kalitâ, to save his capital, sent presents to the khan, and signed a treaty by which he professed himself his tributary; but that in his retreat Makhmet Ghirei was received with cannon-balls by the voïevod of Riazan, who took from him the humiliating treaty. Though the Russian honor was saved by the cannonade of Riazan, this invasion cost Russia dear. All the flat country was a prey to the flames. A multitude of people, especially women and children, were carried off by the barbarians. Many perished on the journey; the rest were sold in whole troops in the markets of Kaffa and Astrakhan. The following year Vasili assembled on the Oka a formidable army, with an imposing artillery, and sent a challenge to the Khan of the Crimea summoning him to accept an honorable fight in the open country. The Tatar answered that he knew the way to Russia, and never consulted his enemies as to when he was to fight. A short time after Makhmet conquered the Tsarate of Astrakhan, but was assassinated by Mamaï, Prince of the Nogaïs.

The Tatars of the Crimea, thanks to the vast southern steppes, were nearly beyond Russian enterprises; but it was still possible to attain Kazan. In order to profit by the dissensions of the Hordes of the south, two new expeditions were fitted out in fifteen hundred and twenty-three and fifteen hundred and twenty-four against this town, but both were unsuccessful. Vasili discovered a more certain way of ruining his enemies, — he established a fair at Makarief on the Volga, and by this means destroyed that of Kazan. It was this fair of Makarief that was afterwards transported to Nijni-Novgorod, and which draws more than one hundred thousand strangers from Europe and Asia.

Day by day Russia was taking a more important place in Europe. Vasili exchanged embassies with all the sovereigns

of the West, except those of France and England. He was the correspondent of Leo the Tenth and Clement the Seventh ; of Maximilian and Charles the Fifth ; of Gustavus Vasa, the founder of a new dynasty ; of Sultan Selim, conqueror of Egypt ; and of Suleiman the Magnificent. In the East the Great Mogul of India, Baber, descendant of Tamerlane, sought his friendship. Autocracy daily became stronger. Vasili governed without consulting his council of boyars. "Be silent, rustic !" he said one day to a great lord, who dared to raise an objection. Prince Vasili Kholmski, who was married to one of Vasili's sisters, was thrown into prison for indocility. The boyar Beklemuishef having complained that the Grand Prince decided all the questions alone, "was shut up, with two others, in his bedchamber," and had his head cut off. The Metropolitan Varlaam was deposed and banished to a monastery. Herberstein asserts that no European sovereign is obeyed like the Grand Prince of Moscow. This growing power was manifested externally by the splendor of the court, which naturally did not preclude the worst barbaric taste. In the reception of his ambassadors Vasili displayed unheard-of luxury ; many hundreds of horsemen accompanied him when he hunted. The Prince's throne was guarded by young nobles, with their head-dresses of high caps of white fur, dressed in long caftans of white satin, armed with silver hatchets. The lists of his masters of the horse, his cupbearers, chamberlains, and other servants are already very long. Strangers continued, though in small numbers, to come to Moscow. The most illustrious of them was Maximus, surnamed the Greek, a monk of Mount Athos, and native of Arta, in Albania. In his youth he had studied at Venice and at Florence, and been the friend of Lascaris and Aldus Manutius. He had remained the sincere admirer of Savonarola. Vasili sent for him with other Greeks to translate the Greek books into Slavonic, and put his library in order. Maximus is said to have been astonished to find in the Kreml such a large number of ancient

manuscripts: he declared that neither in Italy nor in Greece was to be found such a rich collection. After finishing the translation of the Psalter, he wished to return to Mount Athos. Vasili retained him, made him his favorite, and often granted him the lives of condemned boyars. His works, his science, as well as his reputation, gained him the hatred of ignorant and fanatical monks. The Metropolitan Daniel declared against him. When Vasili repudiated against her will his wife Solomonia, because of her sterility, the "philosopher," it seems, ventured to blame the Prince, who then abandoned him to his enemies. Denounced before an ecclesiastical tribunal, accused of heresy and of false interpretation of the sacred books, he was banished to a monastery at Tver. Later he obtained leave to retire to that of Troïtsa, where there is still shown the tomb of the man who was, in Russia, one of the apostles of the Renaissance.

## CHAPTER XV.

### IVAN THE TERRIBLE.

1533 - 1584.

MINORITY OF IVAN THE FOURTH. — HE TAKES THE TITLE OF TSAR (1547). — CONQUEST OF KAZAN (1552) AND OF ASTRAKHAN (1554). — CONTESTS WITH THE LIVONIAN ORDER, POLAND, THE TATARS, SWEDEN, AND THE RUSSIAN ARISTOCRACY. — THE ENGLISH IN RUSSIA. — CONQUEST OF SIBERIA.

---

MINORITY OF IVAN THE FOURTH. — HE TAKES THE TITLE OF TSAR.

THE character of Ivan the Fourth and the part played by him have been and still are very differently estimated by Russian historians. Karamsin, who has not subjected to a sufficiently severe criticism the narratives and documents from which he has drawn his information, found in him a prince who was cruel and vicious by birth, but was miraculously brought back into the paths of virtue. Under the guidance of two excellent ministers he gave some years of repose to Russia; then, abandoning himself to his passions, astounded Europe and the empire with what the historian calls the “seven periods of massacres.” M. Kostomarof supports the verdict of Karamsin. Another school, represented by M. Soloviof and M. Zabiélin, has shown more mistrust of the partial accounts of Kurbski, leader of the oligarchic party, of Guagnini, courtier of the King of Poland, of Taube and Kruse, traitors to the sovereign whom they served. Above all, they have taken into consideration the time and the environment of Ivan the Terrible. These historians concern themselves less with his moral-

ity as an individual than with the part he played as the agent of the historical development of Russia. Did not the French historians for a while refuse to recognize the immense services rendered by Louis the Eleventh in the great work of consolidating the unity of France and the creation of a modern state? He has been justified at last by an attentive examination of documents and facts.

At the time when Ivan the Fourth succeeded his father the struggle of the central power with the forces of the past had changed its character. The old Russian states which had for so long held in check the new power of Moscow — the principalities of Tver, Riazan, Suzdal, and Novgorod-Severski — and the republics of Novgorod, Pskof, and Viatka had lost their independence; their possessions had gone to swell those of Moscow. All North and East Russia was now united under the sceptre of the Grand Prince. To the perpetual contests with Tver, Riazan, and Novgorod succeed the great foreign wars; the crusades against Lithuania, the Tatars, the Swedes, the Livonian knights.

Precisely because the work of Great Russian unity was accomplished, the internal resistance to the authority of the prince became stronger. The descendants of the princely families which had been dispossessed by money or force of arms, together with the retainers of these ancient reigning houses, enlisted in the service of the master of Moscow. The Court of the latter was full of uncrowned nobles, Belskis, Shuiskis, Kurbskis, Vorotinskis, descendants of the appanaged princes, proud of the blood of Rurik which ran in their veins. Others sprang from Gedimin, the Lithuanian, or from baptized Tatar princes. All these, as well as the powerful boyars of Tver, Riazan, and Novgorod, became the boyars of the Grand Prince. There was only one court for all to serve, — that of Moscow. When Russia was divided into sovereign states, discontented boyars were free to change their master, to pass from the service of Tchernigof to that of Kief, or

from the service of Suzdal to that of Novgorod. Now, where could they go? Outside of Moscow there was nothing but foreign sovereigns, the enemies of Russia. To make use of the ancient right of changing master was to pass over to the enemy, to be a traitor. To change and betray became synonyms. The Russian boyar could go neither to the Germans, to the Swedes, nor to the Tatars; he could go only to the Grand Duke of Lithuania, but that was exactly the worst sort of change, the blackest of treasons. The Prince of Moscow knew well that the war with Lithuania — that state which was Polish in the west, and exercised, by means of its Russian provinces in the east, a dangerous fascination on the subjects of Moscow — was a struggle for existence. Lithuania was an internal as well as an external enemy, on terms of understanding and sympathy with the heart of the Russian state, even in the palace of the Tsar himself, and its formidable hand is found in all intrigues and conspiracies. The external struggle with Lithuania and the internal struggle with the Russian oligarchy are different phases of the same contest, the heaviest and most perilous of all sustained by the Grand Princes of Moscow. The dispossessed princes, the boyars of the ancient independent states, had renounced the strife with him on the battle-field, but they continued to combat his authority in his own Court. There are no more wars of state against state; henceforth the war is intestine, that of oligarchy against autocracy. Resigned to being sovereign princes no longer, the boyar princes of Moscow were not yet content to be only subjects. The narrower area intensified the violence of the contest. The Court of Moscow was an arena from which none could pass without changing the Muscovite for the Lithuanian master, — without playing the traitor. Hence the passionate character of the struggle between the two principles under Ivan the Fourth. Besides, the sovereigns of Moscow who, after so many efforts, had destroyed the Russian states that held Moscow in check, committed the same fault

as the Capets or the early Valois. In constituting appanages for the younger branches, they built up with one hand what they pulled down with the other; to the sovereign princes of the eleventh century succeeded the princes of the blood, the appanaged princes of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. These also had their domain, their boyars, their men-at-arms. They were the Grand Prince's brothers, uncles, cousins, who became the chiefs of the vanquished oligarchy, and organized the coalition of the forces of the past against him. They stood to him as the Capets of Burgundy, Berri, Bourbon, and Orleans stood to the Capet kings, Charles the Seventh, Louis the Eleventh, and Charles the Eighth.

Vasili Ivanovitch left two sons, Ivan and Iuri, under the guardianship of his second wife, Helena Glinski. She had come into Russia with a family of Podolian nobles, proscribed by Sigismund, and accused of having plotted against his life. Helena Glinski had won the heart of her old husband Vasili, not only by her beauty, but by her free and attractive manners, an independence of spirit and character, and a variety of accomplishments not to be found among the Russian women of that day, condemned as they were to seclusion. She was almost a Western woman. Vasili, on his death-bed, was able to leave her with the guardianship of her sons, and the care of strengthening his work and that of his ancestors. This energetic woman knew how to put down all attempts of princely and oligarchic reaction against the autocracy of the Grand Prince. One of her husband's brothers, Iuri Ivanovitch, convicted of rebellion, was thrown into prison, where he died. Helena's own uncle, Mikhail Glinski, an ambitious and turbulent Podolian, after having enjoyed her confidence for some time, was likewise arrested, and died in confinement. Andrei Ivanovitch, another brother of the late Tsar, tried to escape into Poland to obtain the support of Sigismund; he was stopped on the way and imprisoned. Lithuania attempted to come to his aid, by taking up arms for the rebels of the

interior. This unimportant war was ended in fifteen hundred and thirty-seven by a truce. The Tatars of Kazan and the Crimea suffered many defeats ; and to place Moscow beyond the possibility of being seized by a sudden surprise, Helena enclosed with ramparts the quarter known by the name of Kitai-gorod. As she could not entirely rely either on the boyars or on the princes, nor even on her own relations, she gave all her confidence to the master of the horse, Telepnef, whom the public voice charged with being her lover. A government as energetic against its internal as against its foreign enemies gave little satisfaction to the oligarchic party. In fifteen hundred and thirty-eight Helena died, the victim of poison.

The boyars then took possession of the government, after having put to death the master of the horse, and imprisoned his sister Agrafena, Ivan's nurse. The chief power was disputed especially by two families, — the Shuiskis and the Belskis. Russia became a prey to anarchy, the governments and the voïevodies were given by turns to the creatures of these two families, and the people were cruelly oppressed ; the two factions even elevated and deposed at will the Metropolitan of Moscow. At last Andrei Shuiski penetrated into the sacred city and the Kreml, by the force of arms overthrew the government of the Belskis, and once more deposed the Metropolitan.

Whilst the nobles were thus intriguing for the supreme power, Vasili's two sons were left by themselves. Iuri, the younger, was feeble in intellect, but Ivan, like Peter the Great, whom in many points he resembled, was a highly gifted boy. He suffered keenly from the contempt in which his turbulent subjects held him. "We and our brother Iuri," he afterwards writes, "were treated like foreigners, like the children of beggars. We were ill-clothed, we were cold and hungry." They saw the boyars pillage the treasures and luxurious furniture of the palace ; Shuiski even threw himself in

Ivan's presence on the bed of the late Tsar. The empire was plundered as well as the palace. "They wandered everywhere," continues Ivan the Fourth, "in the towns and villages, cruelly tormenting the people, inflicting all kinds of evils on them, exacting fines without mercy from the inhabitants. Of our subjects they have made their slaves; of their slaves, the nobles of the state." He saw all whom he loved torn from him, — his nurse Agrafera; the master of the horse, Telepnef, who had been put to death; and his favorite Vorontsof, who was roughly handled and nearly killed by the boyars. It was enough that a courtier took pains to please him, for him instantly to become an object of mistrust to the oligarchs. Ivan, like a neglected child, badly educated, never disciplined, had to be his own master. He read much, at hap-hazard, — the Bible, the Lives of the Saints, the Byzantine Chroniclers translated into Slavonic, — whatever came in his way. Above all, he thought. He had imbibed from his reading a high idea of what it was to be a king, and knew well that he was the rightful master. These very boyars, so insolent towards him in private, — did he not see them in public ceremonies, at receptions of ambassadors, rival each other in affected respect and servility? It was he who, seated on his throne, received the compliments of the foreign envoys; his signature was necessary to give the force of law to actions the most contrary to his will. These were no vain forms, but implied real power. Ivan, however, dissembled. After the Christmas fêtes of fifteen hundred and forty-three he suddenly summoned his boyars before him, addressed them in a menacing tone, and reproached them sternly for their manner of governing. "There were among them," he added, "many guilty ones; but this time he would content himself with making one example." He then ordered his guards to seize Andrei Shuiski, the chief of the government, and there and then had him torn to pieces by hounds. Some of the most turbulent and the most compromised were banished to distant towns.

According to the invariable custom of Muscovite sovereigns, Ivan surrounded himself by his maternal relations, those on his father's side being naturally objects of suspicion. Then began what was called a *Vremia*; that is, "a season of favor." The prince's relatives, the *vremenshtchiki*, or men of the season, the Glinskis, were charged to provide for the administration of the empire. In January, fifteen hundred and forty-seven, Ivan ordered the Metropolitan Macarius to proceed with his coronation. He assumed at the ceremony not only the title of Grand Prince, but that of Tsar. The first title no longer answered to the new power of the sovereign of Moscow, who counted among his domestics princes and even Grand Princes. The name of Tsar is that which the books in the Slavonic language, ordinarily read by Ivan, give to the kings of Judæa, Assyria, Egypt, Babylon, and to the emperors of Rome and Constantinople. Now, was not Ivan in some sort the heir of the Tsar Nebuchadnezzar, the Tsar Pharaoh, the Tsar Ahasuerus, and the Tsar David, since Russia was the sixth empire spoken of in the Apocalypse? Through his grandmother Sophia Palæologus he was connected with the family of the Tsars of Byzantium; through his ancestor Vladimir Monomakh he belonged to the Porphyrogeniti; and through Constantine the Great, to Cæsar. If Constantinople had been the second, Moscow was the third Rome, — living heir of the Eternal City. We may imagine what prestige was added to the dignity of the Russian sovereign by this dazzling title, borrowed from Biblical antiquity, from Roman majesty, from the orthodox sovereigns of Byzantium. It recalled at the same time the recently acquired freedom of Russia; the Slavonic authors likewise bestowed this august title on the Mongol khans, suzerains of the Muscovite princes. Now that fortune smiled upon Russia, it well became its prince to call himself "Tsar." Shortly after, Ivan, whose deserted youth had been soiled by debauchery, confirmed his return to virtue by his marriage with Anastasia, of that family of Romanof

whose future destiny was to be so brilliant. His Court was increased by men chosen from the relatives of the Tsaritsa.

The vanquished party naturally would not consent to be set aside without a struggle for revenge. Fortune soon gave them an opportunity. For four years Ivan had governed absolutely, supported by his connections, the Glinskis and the Romanofs, and it was many years since Russia had been so tranquil. Suddenly, in fifteen hundred and forty-seven, a terrible fire broke out and destroyed a great part of Moscow, and seventeen hundred people perished. The Tsar took refuge at Vorobief, and thence contemplated with terror the destruction of his capital. An inquiry was made, and the boyars took advantage of it to insinuate to the people that it was the Glinskis who had burnt Moscow. "It is the Princess Anna Glinski," repeated voices among the crowd, "who, with her two sons, has made enchantments; she has taken human hearts, and plunged them in water, and with this water has sprinkled the houses. This is the cause of the destruction of Moscow." The enraged multitude burst into the palace of the Glinskis. One of them, Iuri, was killed in the very porch of the Assumption. Then the rioters proceeded to Vorobief and demanded Ivan's grandfather, the old Glinski. The sovereign's own life was in danger; it was necessary to use force to disperse the rebels.

The events which followed are unintelligible from the dramatized recital of Karamsin, but very clear if we keep to the logic of facts. Ivan could hardly be ignorant who had raised this revolt, and he was not the man to give himself up to his ancient guardians. But his nervous, impressionable nature had been greatly struck by the spectacle under his eyes. Under the influence of this terror he examined his conscience, and resolved to amend his life. He took as his spiritual director the priest Silvester, who had dwelt in his palace for nine years, and had a great reputation for virtue; he gave him at the same time the administration of ecclesiastical affairs. Alexis Ada-

shief, one of the smaller nobility, was charged with receiving petitions, and the supervision of the departments of the interior and of war. As long as the two new favorites confined themselves to their offices, the Court was tranquil. It was the happiest period of the reign of Ivan the Fourth. In the interior, the municipal administration was reorganized in fifteen hundred and fifty-one. A new code was prepared, and a council assembled, whose hundred articles were occupied with Church reforms. Abroad, Russia was mistress of its ancient masters.

#### CONQUEST OF KAZAN AND OF ASTRAKHAN.

The kingdom of Kazan continued to be distracted by two opposing influences, — that of Russia and that of the Khan of the Crimea. The latter seemed the stronger, and Safa-Ghirei, candidate for the Crimea, distinguished his accession by ravaging the Russian territory; the khan supported him in these incursions by advancing with the whole Crimean horde as far as the Oka. When Safa died, leaving a son who was a minor, the Muscovite party took the upper hand in Kazan and bestowed the crown on Schig-Alei. He made himself detested by his new subjects, and things came to such a pass that the Kazanese seemed to prefer the direct rule of Moscow to this disguised subordination. At the request of the inhabitants Ivan recalled Schig-Alei, and sent them a viceroy, Mikulinski. Suddenly a rumor was spread in Kazan that Mikulinski was approaching with Russian troops with the object of exterminating the population. A rebellion broke out. The gates of Moscow were shut on the Muscovites, and men demanded a prince of the Nogai Tatars. Ediger-Makhmet was proclaimed Tsar of Kazan.

Ivan determined to make an end of this Mussulman city. In June, fifteen hundred and fifty-two, the same year that Henry the Second obtained possession of the three bishoprics,

the Tsar took the field. He was at once checked by the news that the Khan of the Crimea, wishing to save Kazan by a diversion, had invaded Moscow. Ivan advanced against him as far as the Oka; there he learned that the barbarians, not being able to take Tula, had hastily retired. Upon this, Ivan's infantry, with one hundred and fifty thousand men and one hundred and fifty pieces of cannon, descended the Volga in boats, while the cavalry followed along the banks and directed their course to Kazan. The creation of advanced posts had diminished the distance that separated Kazan from Nijni-Novgorod. His father had founded Makarief and Vasilsursk on the Volga; and he himself had established in fifteen hundred and fifty-one the warlike colony of Svaijsk on the Sviaga. Later he founded those of Kosmodemiansk and Tcheboksarui.

At the beginning of September Ivan encamped under Kazan, and surrounded it by a line of circumvallation, which cut off all communication between the town and the cavalry of the Murza Iapantcha, which had taken the field. The garrison of Kazan, numbering thirty thousand Tatars and twenty-five hundred Nogais, defended themselves energetically and incessantly, and managed by their sorties to hinder the work of the assailants. The Tsar repeatedly offered them honorable terms; he even hung up his prisoners on gibbets to frighten the Kazanese into surrendering, but the besieged only shot arrows against these unhappy wretches, crying that "it was better for them to receive death from the clean hands of their countrymen than to perish by the impure hands of Christians." The Russian army had to struggle with the unchained elements as well as with their enemies. The fleet which bore their provisions and powder was destroyed by a tempest. The voïevodui wished to raise the siege, but Ivan reanimated their failing courage. Prolonged rains flooded the Muscovite camp, caused, it was said, by the sorcerers of Kazan, who stood on the walls, their robes girt up, insulting the besiegers

by their words and gestures. Ivan sent to Moscow for a miraculous cross, which immediately destroyed the power of the enchantments.

Ivan had secured the services of a German engineer, who laid mines under the very walls of the town. The ramparts of wood and bricks at many points fell with a great noise, and the Russian army entered the town by the breaches. A fierce hand-to-hand fight took place in the streets and around the palace. The bravest of the Kazanese, after having tried to defend their prince, cut their way through, but, pursued by the light cavalry, few escaped. In the town numbers were massacred: those only were spared who could be sold to slave-merchants. When the Tsar made his triumphal entry into the middle of these bloody ruins, he was moved, like Scipio at Carthage, by a feeling of pity for this great disaster. "They are not Christians," said he, weeping, "but yet they are men." The town was repopled by Russians, and even at the present day the Tatar population is confined to the suburbs. In the Kreml Ivan annihilated all the monuments of the Mongol past, and replaced them by churches and monasteries which attested his gratitude towards God and the triumph of the Cross over Islam.

These events took place long years ago, but they still live in the memory of the Russian people. Many epics are consecrated to this great victory. It is not only, as Karamsin says, because Kazan was the first fortress taken by the Russians after a siege conducted according to the rules of war; it is because the capture of Kazan marks the culminating point in the history of the long struggle of the Slavs against the Tatars, — a struggle which began by the total subjugation of Russia by the Mongols, but which has continued to our own day, and probably will end only with the conquest of the Tatar races by the Russian Empire. The victory of Ivan the Terrible is the first great revenge of the vanquished over the vanquishers, the first triumph at the expense of the con-

querors, the first stage reached by European civilization in taking the offensive against Asia. In the Russian annals the expedition of Kazan occupies the same glorious place as the defeat of Abderahman in the history of the Franks, or Las Navas da Tolosa in the chronicles of Spain. It was more than a conquest, it was a crusade. During the assault Ivan did not cease to display the standard of the holy faith. It was remarked that the day the ramparts fell the Tsar was at church, and the deacon read the following verse from the Gospel for the day: "There shall be one flock, one shepherd." It was with the cry of "God with us!" that the Russians precipitated themselves into the town. The triumph of Moscow mingled with that of Christianity and orthodoxy.

The political consequences of the taking of Kazan were considerable. The five Finnish or Mongol tribes who had been subject to this royal city — the Tcheremisa, the Mordva, the Tchuvashi, whom M. Radlow considers the descendants of the Bulgarui of the city of Bolgarui, the Votiaki, and the Bashkirs — after a resistance of some years were obliged to do homage to Moscow. Ivan sent them missionaries at the same time that he sent his voïevodui.

The fall of the kingdom of Astrakhan soon followed that of Kazan. This great city was also divided between two parties. In fifteen hundred and fifty-four Prince Iuri Pronski descended the Volga with thirty thousand men, and established Derbush, the protégé of Russia, on the throne. Derbush, after a short time, was accused of having an understanding with the Khan of the Crimea; and Astrakhan was conquered a second time, and finally united to Russia. The Nogaïs, who wandered over the neighboring steppes, were forced to accept the Muscovite protection. Thus the Volga, that famous river whose banks sustain so many ruined cities (Itil, capital of the Khazarui, Bolgarui, capital of the Bulgarui, Saraï, capital of the Golden Horde), which preserve the memory

of the ancient races who have vanished from history, — the Volga, that grand artery of Eastern commerce, now flowed in the whole of its course, from its source to its mouth, through the land of the Tsars.

Persian Asia was thrown open to Russian influence by means of the Caspian ; and already the petty princes of the Caucasus, always fighting either among themselves or with the Tatars of the Crimea, sought the alliance of the successors of the Greek Cæsars. In order to keep a firmer hold on the Horde of the Taurid, Ivan took under his protection one of the two warlike republics which had been formed in the neighborhood of the Crimea : the Cossacks of the Don declared themselves subjects of Moscow, the Cossacks of the Dnieper remained Poles.

#### CONTESTS WITH THE LIVONIAN ORDER, POLAND, THE TATARS, SWEDEN, AND THE RUSSIAN ARISTOCRACY.

Russia, feeling the growth of her forces, felt equally the need of throwing open the Baltic at the same time as the Black Sea. The Baltic was even more necessary to the Russians, as by it only could they communicate with Western Europe, and receive vessels, artillery, and engineers. It was from that direction that Muscovy awaited the increase of power that civilization could alone give her. Between Muscovy and the Baltic lay more than one enemy : Sweden, the Livonian knights, Lithuania, and Poland. In fifteen hundred and fifty-four a war broke out about the rectification of the frontiers between Ivan the Terrible and the great Gustavus Vasa ; but as the founder of the Swedish dynasty was not supported by his neighbors, the war was a short one. It terminated by a commercial treaty which gave the Swedish merchants passage through Russia to India and China, and opened communication through Sweden with Flanders, England, and France for the Russian merchants. Moscow could not yet

communicate with the West except through a jealous intermediary.

Ivan the Terrible, inspired by the same political and civilizing ideas as Peter the Great, wished to "open a window" into Europe. For this purpose he coveted the ports of the Narva, Revel and Riga, then in the hands of the Livonian Order, against which he had some grievances. About fifteen hundred and forty-seven Ivan sent the Saxon Schlitte into Germany to engage for him a certain number of engineers and artisans, and Schlitte had managed to collect about a hundred people. The jealousy of the Germans then awoke; they feared that, as it became civilized, Russia would also become strong. The Livonian Order demanded of the Emperor Charles the Sixth the right to stop these strangers on their road. None ever reached Moscow. Ivan, then occupied with Kazan, was unable to avenge himself; but when in fifteen hundred and fifty-four the envoys of the Order came to Moscow to solicit a renewal of the truce, he summoned them to pay tribute for Iurief, the ancient patrimony of the Russian princes. Such a demand meant war. In fifteen hundred and fifty-eight the Russian army took Narva, Neuhausen, Dorpat, and seventeen other places. The Grand Master Kettler asked help of his neighbors. Poland alone responded to his appeal, and Sigismond Augustus the Second concluded an offensive and defensive alliance with the Livonian Order.

At this juncture an important revolution took place in the palace of the Tsar. Ivan's relations with his two counsellors Silvester and Adashef had singularly altered. They disagreed with respect to the war with Livonia; they desired that after the capture of Kazan and Astrakhan Ivan should turn rather to the third Mussulman state, the Khanate of the Crimea. M. Kostomarov gives excellent reasons for this preference, but the reasons in favor of the opposite opinion are not less good. By conquering the Crimea the safety of the empire would be secured, and the conversion to Islamism, the complete Tatar-

ization of the ancient Taurian tribes still professing Christianity, would be prevented; but by conquering Livonia an ancient patrimony of the Russian princes would be recovered, and it would become possible to enter into direct relations with civilized Europe. The chances of success were equal. The Horde was then decimated by an epidemic, but the Livonian Order was in the act of dissolution by the result of the contest between Catholicism and Protestantism. The difficulties were equal. In attacking Livonia, Russia would come in contact with Sweden, Denmark, Poland, and Germany; but behind the Crimea were the Turks, then at the height of their power, and much irritated by the conquest of Kazan and Astrakhan. Peter the Great did not conquer Livonia till after twenty years' hard fighting with the Powers of the North; but how many Russian expeditions against the Crimea have not been stopped by the distance, the difficulty of communication, the sandy deserts, and the extreme temperatures? Catherine the Great only conquered the Taurid in the decadence of the Turkish Empire, and after many campaigns, when she not only brought into play her armies of the Danube, but sent a fleet to the Archipelago. In reality both enterprises were premature; Russia had not yet strength to carry them through. Neither the Tsar nor his counsellors were completely in the right, but the obstinacy of the latter had a fatal result. To satisfy both sides two wars were declared, which was to run the certain risk of a double check.

The misunderstanding between the Tsar and his two ministers dated from further back. Silvester abused his spiritual influence with the Tsar and became more and more meddling. Finally, he had left him no liberty; and when Ivan's favorite son died, he told him brutally that it was a chastisement from Heaven for his indocility. He had entered into relations with boyars whom Ivan justly suspected; he took their part against the Tsaritsa Anastasia (whom he represented as a second Empress Eudoxia, the persecutor of Chrysostom),

against the Glinskis, and against the Romanofs. Adashef followed the same path. Like Haroun-al-Raschid's favorites, the Barmecides, these two ministers had ended by appropriating all the power of their master. Ivan had patience with them, believing them to be faithful; but in fifteen hundred and fifty-three he fell dangerously ill, and was thought to be at the point of death. Then the boyars resumed their old arrogance; they obstinately refused to swear allegiance to the Tsar's son, the young Dmitri, declaring that they would not obey his maternal relations, the Romanofs. The noisy discussions reached the bed of the sick man, and his entreaties were despised. The boyars approached Vladimir, Ivan's cousin, who had also refused to take the oaths, and it was known that the mother of this ambitious prince was distributing largesses to the army. Silvester took the part of Prince Vladimir against those boyars who remained faithful, and the family of Adashef joined with the mutineers. The faithful boyars even feared for the life of the Tsar; Ivan could not be under any delusions as to the fate awaiting his wife and his son in case of his death.

"When God shall have worked his will on me," said Ivan to the few boyars gathered round him, "do not, I pray you, forget that you have sworn an oath to my son and to me; do not let him fall into the hands of the boyars; fly with him to some strange land, whithersoever God will conduct you. And you," he continued, addressing the Romanofs, — "wherefore these terrors? Do you think that the boyars will spare you? You will fall the first: die then rather — since die you must — for my son and for his mother; do not abandon my wife to the fury of the boyars." Ivan the Fourth recovered, but he preserved a lasting impression of these days of anguish. When we see him, later in his reign, give himself up to revenge and to apparently inexplicable fury, we must think of the terrible vigils of fifteen hundred and fifty-three, of the scenes of rebellion and violence that troubled the peace of his sick-chamber,

of the obstinate refusals to take the desired vow, of the declarations of hatred against the Tsaritsa and her relations, and of the intrigues woven round Vladimir against the Tsarévitch Dmitri.

He had no more confidence in his favorites ; both were banished from the Court. Silvester retired to the Monastery of Saint Cyril, and was afterwards exiled to Solovetski. Adashef was appointed voïevod at Fellin in Livonia, and later was forced to live at Dorpat. But they left behind them a complete administration, a perfect army of clients. They had peopled the Court, the governments, and the voïevodies with their creatures. Their partisans were certain to agitate and plot for the return of their chiefs. Who knew how far these plots might go ? A short time after Adashef's disgrace that Anastasia whom he detested died suddenly. Ivan alleged that she was poisoned. Since the publication of M. Zabiélin's careful studies on the "Private Life of the Tsaritsas of Russia" this allegation and others like it do not appear as inconceivable as they seemed to Karamsin. The intrigues of Adashef's friends forced Ivan the Fourth many times to have recourse to severity, but at this epoch he was comparatively merciful.

"When the treachery of that dog Alexis Adashef and his accomplices was discovered," Ivan afterwards writes, "we let our anger be tempered with mercy ; we did not condemn the guilty to capital punishments, but only banished them to our different towns. . . . Then we put no one to death. Those who belonged to the party of Silvester and Adashef we commanded to separate from them, and no longer to recognize them as chiefs. This promise we made them confirm by a vow, but they paid no heed to our injunction, and trampled their oath under foot. Not only did they not separate from the traitors, but they aided them by all possible means, and schemed to render them back their ancient power, and to set on foot against us a perfidious plot. Then only, seeing their wicked obstinacy and unconquerable spirit of rebellion, I

inflicted on the guilty the penalty of their faults." Capital punishment was indeed rare at this epoch. Ivan usually contented himself with demanding a fresh oath from those who were arrested on the road to Lithuania, and exacted surety from them and their friends that they would not seek again to pass into Poland. Sometimes he condemned them to the easy durance of the monasteries.

What finally decided the Tsar to be more severe in his treatment was the defection of Prince Andrei Kurbski, who belonged to a family once royal, and descended from Rurik. He had distinguished himself against the Tatars on the Oka and at Kazan, and, being a zealous partisan of Adashef and Silvester, he was deeply irritated by their fall. Nominated general-in-chief of the army in Livonia, his carelessness allowed the Russians to suffer a shameful defeat. Fifteen thousand Russians were beaten by four thousand Poles; or rather, if the Polish historian Martin Belski is to be believed, forty thousand Russians by fifteen hundred Poles. Kurbski had reason to fear the anger of the Tsar. He had been for some time negotiating with the King of Poland, being desirous of obtaining in Lithuania a command, lands, and advantages equal to those he would lose. At last, abandoning his wife and children to the Tsar's vengeance, he left Venden and crossed into the Polish camp. Thence he sent to Ivan a letter by his servant Shipanof, whose foot, according to the tradition, Ivan nailed with his iron staff on to a step of the red staircase while the message was being read to him.

"Tsar formerly glorified by God!" wrote Kurbski, "Tsar who formerly shone like the torch of orthodoxy, but who, for our sins, art now revealed to us in quite a different aspect, with a soiled and leprous conscience, such as we could not find even among barbarian infidels! Exposed to thy cruel persecution, with a heart filled with bitterness, I wish notwithstanding to say a few words to you. O Tsar, why hast thou put to death the strong ones of Israel? Why hast thou

slain the valiant voïevodui given thee by God? Why hast thou shed their victorious blood, their holy blood, on the profaned pavement of the churches of God, during the sacred ceremonies? Why hast thou reddened the porch of the temple with the blood of the martyrs? In what were they guilty towards thee, O Tsar? Was it not their valor which overthrew, which laid at thy feet, those proud kingdoms of the Volga, before which thine ancestors were slaves? Is it not their zeal, their intelligence, to which, after God, thou owest the strong towns of the Germans? And behold thy gratitude to these unhappy ones! Thou hast exterminated whole families amongst us. Dost thou think thyself then immortal, O Tsar, or, seduced by some heresy, dost thou think that thou canst escape the incorruptible Judge, Jesus our God? No; he will judge the whole world, and chiefly such proud persecutors as thou art. My blood, which has already flowed for thee like water, will cry against thee to our Lord. God sees ail consciences!" Kurbski then invokes the victims of Ivan, and shows them standing before the throne of God, demanding justice against their executioner. "Is it that in thy pride thou trustest in thy legions to keep thee in this ephemeral life, inventing against the human race new engines of torture to tear and disfigure the body of man, the image of the angels? Dost thou reckon on thy servile flatterers, on thy boon companions, on thy turbulent boyars, who make thee lose thy soul and body, entice thee to the debaucheries of Venus, and sacrifice their children to vile rites worthy of Saturn? When my last day comes, I wish that this letter, watered with my tears, should be placed on my coffin." He ended by declaring himself a subject of Sigismond Augustus, "my sovereign, who, I hope, will load me with favors and consolations for my misfortunes." Thus Kurbski spoke "in the name of the strong ones of Israel, of the living and the dead," that is, in the name of all the friends of Adashef; he made himself the organ of their wrath and complaints;

he formulated their grievances, and exaggerated them ; he demanded an account of the Tsar of his conduct towards them, threatening him with a higher tribunal, and dared to ask if he thought himself immortal ; he refused Ivan all participation in the glory acquired at Kazan, insulted the boyars who surrounded him, and boasted of the crime which was the most unpardonable in the eyes of the Tsar, — the recognition of the Polish sovereignty.

Kurb ski's letter was a manifesto. It helped to irritate the suspicions of the Tsar, already only too disposed to imagine plots. Ivan, who thought himself a man of letters, and was really one of the most learned men in his empire, conceived it necessary to answer Kurb ski's letter with a long vindication, adorned with quotations from sacred and profane authors. The Tsar and his rebel subject exchanged many epistles of this kind. Ivan, who had begun by this time to justify his surname of Terrible, gave, besides, another answer to Kurb ski's manifesto, — the punishment of his supposed accomplices.

Ivan felt that he could no longer govern with a Court, a council of state, and an administration which were filled with the friends of Adashef and Kurb ski. Kurb ski's conduct shows to what depths of treason their rancor could bring them. He was to return to devastate Russia with a Polish army ! Was the Tsar's life safe in the midst of such men ? In December, fifteen hundred and sixty-four, Ivan quitted Moscow, with all his friends, servants, and treasures, and retired to the Sloboda Alexandrof. He then wrote two letters to Moscow, — one to the archbishop, complaining of the plots and infidelity of the nobles and the complicity of the clergy, who, abusing the right of intercession, prevented the sovereign from punishing the guilty ; in the other he reassured the citizens and people of Moscow by informing them that they were not included in his censure. The terror of the capital was great ; the people trembled at the thought of falling again under the government of the oligarchs ; the boyars feared

what the people might do to them. Neither the one nor the other could resign themselves to the anger of the sovereign. The boyars and the clergy resolved to ask pardon, and, if necessary, to "carry their heads" to the Tsar. They went in procession to the Sloboda Alexandrof, to beseech him to recall his abdication. Ivan consented to resume the crown, but on his own conditions. As he could neither govern with the actual administration nor destroy it, as he was forced to respect its vested interests, he made a sort of partition of the monarchy. The greater part of the empire continued to be governed by the council of the boyars, and constituted the *zemshtchina*, that is, the "rule of the country." Over this part of Russia Ivan reserved only a general supervision, and the right of punishing treason. The other part was placed under the Tsar's "personal and individual" government, and formed his body-guard. Leaving the ancient Court, the ancient council, and the ancient administration still in existence, Ivan the Fourth formed with his own favorites a new Court, a new council, and a new administration, to which he confided the towns and villages that had fallen to his share. He surrounded himself with a special guard, called "the thousand of the Tsar," who had adopted, as their "canting arms," a dog's head, and a broom suspended from their saddles. They were ready to bite the enemies of the Tsar, and to sweep treason off the Russian soil. This singular régime lasted seven years, from fifteen hundred and sixty-five until fifteen hundred and seventy-two.

Ivan made great use of his right to punish traitors, or those whom he regarded as such. A perfect reign of terror hung over the Russian aristocracy, with alternations of calm and fresh bursts of madness. We know the names of his victims, but we do not always know their crimes. The writers hostile to Ivan the Fourth — Kurbski, the Italian Guagnini, then in the service of the King of Poland, and the German refugees Taube and Kruse — are not always agreed on the subject.

So far as we can clearly comprehend the facts, we see that Ivan had real grievances against the nobles whom he put to death. On the side of the oligarchs the strife, though quiet and noiseless, was not less desperate. We ought not to be deceived by their demonstrations of humility and submission. With their foreheads in the dust, they could still conspire. We must beware of thinking Ivan's enemies were any better than himself. They were as cruel towards their inferiors as the Tsar was towards them. This aristocracy of slave-masters, habituated under the Tatar yoke to an insolent disdain of human life and feeling, was not superior in morality to its tyrant. It presented more than one type similar to the French monsters Gilles de Retz and the Sieur de Giac. Under very different colors, it was the same battle that raged in Russia and in France. But in France men fought in open day, on the battle-fields of the Praguerie or of the League of the Public Good; in Russia the contest was carried on by silent plots, by noiseless attempts to poison or slay by magic, met by the axe of the executioner. In this sinister dialogue between the master and his subjects it was naturally the master who spoke the loudest. In the absence of a sufficient number of authentic documents we risk nothing by being a little more sceptical than Karamsin.

The principal episodes of this autocratic reign of terror are: —

The deposition and perhaps the murder of Saint Philip, Archbishop of Moscow, who was guilty of having nobly interceded for the condemned, and of hating Ivan's body-guard.

The execution of Alexandra, widow of Iuri and sister-in-law of Ivan; of Prince Vladimir and his mother, the ambitious Evfrosinia, who thus expiated their intrigues of fifteen hundred and fifty-three. We must remark that Ivan, whatever Kurbski may say, spared Vladimir's children, and largely provided for them.

The chastisement of Novgorod, where, it seemed to Ivan, the

aristocratic party had entertained the project of opening the gates to the King of Poland, and where the Tsar, according to his own testimony, put to death fifteen hundred and five persons.

The great execution in the Red Place in fifteen hundred and seventy-one, where a certain number of Muscovites and Novgorodians were slain, and where many of Ivan's new favorites, notably Viazemski and the Basmanofs, underwent the same penalty as his old enemies.

A curious memorial has been left us of the vengeance of "the Terrible"; it is the synodical letter of the Monastery of Saint Cyril, in which Ivan asks the prayers of the Church for each of his victims by name. This list shows a total of three thousand four hundred and seventy victims, of whom nine hundred and eighty-six are mentioned by name. Many of these names are followed by this sinister statement, "with his wife," "with his wife and children," "with his daughters," "with his sons." It was this that Kurbski called "the extermination of entire families." The constitution of the Russian family at this epoch was so strong, that the death of the head necessarily involved that of the other members. Other collective indications are not less significant. For example: "Kazarin Dubrovski and his two sons, with ten men who came to their help"; "twenty men of the village of Kolo-menskoé," "eighty of Matveishé,"—these were no doubt peasants and men-at-arms who tried to defend their masters. There is this mention relative to the Novgorod: "Remember, Lord, the souls of thy servants, to the number of fifteen hundred and five persons, Novgorodians." Had not Louis the Eleventh tender feelings of this nature? He prayed with fervor for the soul of his brother, the Duke de Berri.

Other records demonstrate that Ivan the Terrible thought he had serious reasons to fear for his life. His curious correspondence with Queen Elizabeth of England proves this, as he obtains of her in fifteen hundred and seventy the formal prom-

ise that in case of misfortune he should find in England a safe asylum and the free exercise of his religion. There is, besides, his will of fifteen hundred and seventy-two, which contemplates the case of his being "proscribed by his boyars and expelled by them from the throne, and being obliged to wander from country to country," and recommends to his sons to live on good terms with each other after his death, to learn how to restrain and reward their subjects, and above all to be on the watch against them.

During this terrible intestine strife the war with Livonia and her ally, the King of Poland, continued. Notwithstanding the help of the latter, the Knights were everywhere beaten, and their fortresses taken by the Russian troops.

At last, ruined by so many blows, this famous Order dissolved. The Isle of *Cesel* was sold to Denmark; Revel was given to the Swedes; Livonia was ceded by the Grand Master to Poland; Kettler reserved to himself Kurland and Semigallia, which were erected into a hereditary duchy. There were no more Livonian knights, but Poland, as heir of the quarrels of Livonia, became more than ever ardent in the struggle. The Russians sustained their new reputation. In fifteen hundred and sixty-three Ivan the Terrible, with a numerous army and many guns, besieged and took Polotsk, a very important position from its proximity to Livonia and its situation on the Dwina, the grand commercial route to Riga. In spite of a victory at Orsha, the King of Poland demanded a truce in fifteen hundred and sixty-six.

Ivan at this moment offered a strange spectacle to Russia. To deliberate on the request of Sigismond he assembled a council, composed of the higher clergy, the boyars who had possessions on the frontiers of Lithuania and were well acquainted with the local topography, and finally the merchants of Moscow and Smolensk. This despot, who founded autocracy in blood, convoked real States-general; he made an appeal to their opinion, as he had many times before, when from the

stone tribune of *Lobnoé miesto* he harangued the three orders. The Assembly decided that the Polish King's conditions could not be accepted, and offered men and money for the continuation of the war. This was prolonged for four years, and ended in a truce. The Tsar, who saw difficulties accumulating in Livonia, conceived an expedient to enable him to escape them. No longer hoping to be able directly to unite the Baltic ports to his empire, he offered the title of King of Livonia to the Danish Prince Magnus, and made him marry a daughter of that same Prince Vladimir whom he had put to death. Magnus, nominal King of Livonia, soon perceived that he was only an instrument of Muscovite policy. He intrigued against the Tsar and was dethroned. Ivan the Terrible in person took Venden, which Magnus had garri-soned, and massacred the German soldiers to the last man.

Unfortunately the war with Poland was complicated by the raids of the Tatars of the Crimea. Sigismond did not cease to work upon the khan, who well understood that his cause was allied with that of Poland. The Tsar, however, overpowered the khan, took Kief, and established towns on the Dnieper. And what could the Tatars gain there, after all? Had not Ivan overthrown two Mongol kingdoms? The Sultan of Stambul, Selim the Second, was ready to join in the Holy War for Kazan and Astrakhan. In fifteen hundred and sixty-nine, seventeen thousand Turks, commanded by Kasim Pasha, and fifty thousand Tatars, led by the khan, besieged Astrakhan. The operations dragged on; the Pasha wished to pass the winter there, but a sedition broke out in the army. He was obliged to raise the siege, and lost many of his men in the steppes of the desert. Two years after, the khan Devlet-Ghirei invaded Russia with twenty thousand men. Was he aided by the treachery of the voïevodui? He crossed the Oka, and suddenly appeared under the walls of Moscow. He burned the suburbs, and the fire spread to the town, which, with the exception of the Kreml, was completely

reduced to ashes. A foreign author gives the evidently exaggerated number of eight hundred thousand victims. The khan retired with more than one hundred thousand prisoners, and despatched the following insolent message to Ivan: "I burn, I ravage everything because of Kazan and Astrakhan. I came to you and I burnt Moscow. I wished to have your crown and your head, but you did not show yourself; you declined a battle, and yet you dare to call yourself a Tsar of Moscow. Will you live at peace with me? Yield me up Kazan and Astrakhan. If you have only money to offer me, it would be useless, were it the riches of the whole world. What I want is Kazan and Astrakhan. As to the roads to your empire, I have seen them,—I know them." He returned the following year, fifteen hundred and seventy-two, but Prince Mikhail Vorotinski met him on the banks of the Lopasnia and inflicted on him a complete defeat.

The same year, that of the massacre of Saint Bartholomew, died Sigismond Augustus the Second, King of Poland. His reign was especially memorable for the union of Lublin, in fifteen hundred and sixty-nine, in virtue of which Poland and Lithuania were henceforth to form only one state under an elective prince. Thus Poland enfeebled royal power at home just when it acquired in Russia an extraordinary degree of energy. A party of nobles was formed at Warsaw who wished to elect the son of Ivan the Terrible as King of Poland. This was to prepare for the reunion of the two great Slav empires, separated less by language than religion, whose growing antagonism could terminate only in the ruin of one of them, to the great advantage of the German race. Ivan coveted the crown, not for his son, but for himself. We see him paying court to the Polish ambassadors, and trying to defend himself against the accusations of cruelty and tyranny which the banished Muscovites brought against him.

"If your lords, who are now without a king," said he to the Polish envoy Voropaï, "desire me for their sovereign,

they will see what a good protector and kind master they will find in me. Many among you say that I am cruel. It is true that I am cruel and irascible, — I do not deny it; but to whom, I ask you, am I cruel? I am cruel towards any one that is cruel to me. The good! ah, I would give them without a moment's hesitation the chain and the robe that I wear! It is by no means wonderful that your princes love their subjects if their subjects love them. Mine have delivered me over to the Tatars of the Crimea. My voïevodui did not even warn me of the arrival of the enemy. Perhaps it was difficult for them to vanquish a force so superior to them in numbers; but even if they had lost some thousands of men, and brought me only a whip or a cane of the Tatars, I should have been grateful. Think of the enormity of their treason towards me. If some of them were afterwards chastised, it was for their crimes they were punished. I ask you, — do you spare traitors?" Ivan then spoke of his grievances against Kurbski, and ended by promising "to observe the laws, to respect and even to extend the liberties and franchises of Poland."

The ambassador of France at Warsaw finally carried the day, and Henri de Valois, Duc d'Anjou, was proclaimed king. He did not stay long in Poland, and after his flight to the West a new Diet assembled, and the intrigues of the rival Courts began again.

Stephan Batory, voïevod of Transylvania, was elected king. He was a young, ambitious, and energetic prince, and no more formidable enemy to Ivan the Terrible in his old age could have been chosen. It was now not only a question of the conquest of Livonia which was pursued so laboriously in the face of so many obstacles, but, in placing the crown on his head, Batory had sworn to give back to Poland the towns conquered from it by the Muscovite princes. It was now a contest between the semi-barbarous army of Russia, its almost feudal soldiery, its Tatar cavalry, its tactics of routine, and its



HENRI DE VALOIS



feeble artillery, and a disciplined European army, a well-directed artillery, compact regiments of German mercenaries, and Hungarian veterans seasoned by many combats. Ivan awaited his enemy in Livonia, when suddenly Batory appeared before Polotsk and took it, in spite of a vigorous resistance. The Russian gunners hung themselves by their guns in despair. This and the following years were marked by the capture of many Russian fortresses. Batory, the hero of the North, the Charles the Twelfth of Ivan's age, seemed ready to annihilate the work of a long reign, and to check the first effort of Russia to escape from a state of barbarism. The Swedes on their side, commanded by De la Gardie, took Kexholm in Karelia, and invaded Esthonia. Old Pskovian and Novgorodian Russia was invaded. In fifteen hundred and eighty-one Batory besieged Pskof, whilst De la Gardie captured Narva, Ivangorod, Iam, and Koporié. But Pskof marked the limit of Batory's successes. This little town was defended with so much energy by Ivan Shuiski that, after a three months' siege and many assaults, Poles and Hungarians had to confess themselves vanquished.

Ivan had ceased to appear at the head of his troops, thinking that a prince who is not sure of his peers would be foolish if he risked himself in a battle, — a conclusion to which Louis the Eleventh had come at Montlhéry. His diplomatic relations still remained for him to direct. Threatened by Batory, he had recourse to an expedient. He implored the mediation of Pope Gregory the Thirteenth between the Catholic king and himself. The Pontiff sent to Moscow the Jesuit Antonio Possevino, with orders at the same time to negotiate the union with the two Churches. Possevino's account shows us Ivan the Terrible in his true light; almost free-thinking, inquisitive, and sometimes disposed to see the humorous side of things, with ideas of tolerance remarkable for his time. If the Pope's envoy failed in the religious part of his mission, he at least succeeded in concluding a truce between the two

sovereigns, in fifteen hundred and eighty-two, by which Ivan had to cede Polotsk and all Livonia. This bold enterprise for opening the Baltic Sea, which preceded by one hundred and fifty years that of Peter the Great, thus fell miserably to the ground. The fruit of thirty years' efforts and sacrifices was lost. ✓

#### THE ENGLISH IN RUSSIA.—CONQUEST OF SIBERIA.

Writers hostile to Ivan love to contrast the end of his reign — his personal government — with his early years, when Silvester and Adashef were in power. In the first period there was nothing but success; Kazan and Astrakhan were conquered. In the second period the Russians were vanquished by the Poles and Swedes; they were expelled from Livonia; they lost Polotsk, and saw Moscow burnt by the Khan of the Crimea. The meaning of these facts really is that the Russian arms were triumphant in the East against barbarians ignorant of the military art, and unfortunate in the West, where they had to contend with the artillery, the tactics, the discipline, and the troops of Europe. Ivan needed more wit to be defeated as he was in Livonia than to win as he did in Kazan. It is no dishonor for the Russia of the sixteenth century to have failed in this great undertaking, since Peter, with all his genius, spent twenty-five years in the same task. This unlucky period of the reign of Ivan was not without fruit for the grandeur and civilization of Russia. The Germans closed to it the Baltic, the English opened for it the White Sea.

Under Edward the Sixth a company of merchant venturers was formed for the discovery of "regions, kingdoms, islands, and places unknown and unvisited by the highway of the sea." Sebastian Cabot, chief pilot of England, was nominated governor for life. In fifteen hundred and fifty-three, three vessels, under the command of Sir Hugh Willoughby and Chancellor, set sail towards the northeast, towards that strange sea spoken of by Tacitus — "a sluggish mere and motionless — which

forms the girdle of the world, where you hear the sound of sun-rising!" That sea must lead, men thought, to China. On the coasts of Scandinavia, near Vardehuus, a frightful tempest arose and dispersed the squadron. Willoughby disappeared with the "Buona Speranza" and the "Buona Confidenza." Some fishermen afterwards found the two ships in a bay of the White Sea, where they had been nipped by the ice, and all the sailors who manned them were dead of cold and hunger. Chancellor, with the "Edward Bonaventura," succeeded in doubling Laponia and the Holy Cape, penetrated first into an unknown sea, and then into the mouth of a river near which was a monastery. The sea was the White Sea, the river the Dwina, the monastery that of Saint Nicholas. Chancellor learned with astonishment that he was on the territory of the Tsar of Moscow; he had found Russia beneath the North Pole. Farther off was the Monastery of Saint Michael, near which was afterwards built in this desert, chiefly by the energy of the English, the commercial city of Saint Michael the Archangel, usually called Arkhangel. Chancellor at once left for Moscow, and delivered to Ivan the Terrible the letters which Edward the Sixth, not knowing where his subjects might land, had addressed vaguely "to all the princes and lords, to all the judges of the earth, to their officers, to whoever possesses any high authority in all the regions under the vast sky." Ivan the Fourth admitted the English "to see his majesty and his eyes," feasted them in the Golden Palace, and gave them a letter for their king, in which he authorized the English to trade with his dominions, and made them promise to send ships to the Dwina.

Mary Tudor succeeded her brother, and shared the throne with her Spanish husband, Philip the Second. They confirmed the privileges of the company of merchant venturers, and in fifteen hundred and fifty-six Chancellor, accompanied by Richard Gray and George Killingworth, again set sail for the mouth of the Dwina, and arrived successfully at Moscow. This time

they obtained from the Tsar letters-patent formally authorizing the members of the company to establish themselves at Kholmogory and at Vologda, and to trade east and west. During this time Stephen Burroughs, in the "Searchthrift," navigated the east, gained the shores of the country of the Samoyedui, touched on the islands of Nova Zembla and Vaigats, and was only checked by the approach of the dark polar winter.

Chancellor's two vessels,—the "Edward Bonaventura" and the "Philip and Mary,"—which had discovered the missing ships of Willoughby, departed for England. The former had on board Osip Nepei, governor of Vologda, the first Russian ambassador that had been seen in England, accompanied by a suite of sixteen Russians, and carrying a letter and presents from Ivan the Fourth. A tempest scattered the fleet, sent the "Philip and Mary" as far as the coast of Norway, sunk the "Speranza" and the "Confidenza," and threw the "Bonaventura" on the inhospitable rocks of Inverness. Chancellor succeeded in saving the Russian envoy, but perished himself, with his son and nearly all the crew. The cargo and the presents of the Tsar were plundered by the savage natives of the country.

Twelve miles from London Osip Nepei was received by eighty merchants of the company, mounted on magnificent horses, and adorned with heavy chains of gold. He now became acquainted with "all the solid respectability of old England." His train was increased by new squadrons of merchants and gentlemen as they approached the town, and he made his triumphal entry on the twenty-eighth of February, fifteen hundred and fifty-seven. After having been harangued by the Lord Mayor, received by the Queen and the King, feasted by the corporation of drapers, he departed for Russia with letters-patent granting Russian merchants in England a reciprocity of privileges. England did not undertake many obligations.

Nepei this time was accompanied by Jenkinson, an admirable type of an English sailor, bold, indefatigable, ready for



TSAR KOLOKOL



anything ; a merchant, an administrator, a diplomat at need, who had already visited all the seas of Europe, and, in despair at England not being able to contest the Mediterranean with its Venetian rival, wished to secure it a new passage by Russia to the East. His open character and wide knowledge were wonderfully seductive to Ivan. He obtained from the Tsar a letter of recommendation to the Asiatic princes, descended the Volga, flew the first English flag on the Caspian, landed on the coast of Turkestan ; plunged with camels loaded with merchandise into regions infested with brigands and ravaged by the wars of the khans ; was very nearly massacred, reached Bokhara, and was lucky enough to return before the city was sacked by the Sultan of Samarcand in fifteen hundred and fifty-eight and fifteen hundred and fifty-nine. In another voyage, in fifteen hundred and sixty-two, he again crossed the Caspian, and presented specimens of English manufacture and the letters of Elizabeth to Shah Thamas, King of Persia, who, warned by the friends of the Turks and Venetians, received Jenkinson with an insulting mistrust and coldness. When he retired from the Court, a domestic followed him carrying a basin of sand, and scattered it to efface the impure footsteps of the "giaour" on the soil of the sacred palace. Jenkinson brought back to Ivan the Fourth messages from many small princes, notably from those of Shirvan and Georgia, who wished to place themselves under the Muscovite protection. The results of these voyages were negative. Seeing the instability of the Asiatic regions, the English were obliged at that time to confine themselves to trading in the territories of the Tsar. The latter, in acknowledgment of the services rendered him by Jenkinson, authorized them to trade on all the rivers of the north, from the Dwina to the Obi, and to establish themselves in the principal Russian towns,—Pskof, Novgorod, Nijni-Novgorod, Kazan, Astrakhan, and Narva, which had just fallen into the power of the Russians.

In fifteen hundred and sixty-eight Ivan wished to conclude

with Elizabeth a treaty of alliance, offensive and defensive, against Poland and Sweden. He offered her in exchange a monopoly of commerce with Russia, though this right, by his own showing, weighed more heavily on his empire than a tribute would have done. He also requested her to sign an engagement, reciprocal for the two sovereigns, to furnish each other with an asylum in the event of the success of an enemy, or the rebellion of their subjects, obliging them to fly from their states. Elizabeth declined the offer of alliance, and refused to accept for herself the offered asylum, "finding, by the grace of God, no dangers of the sort in her dominions." It was in fifteen hundred and seventy that she signed the treaty mentioned above, and had it countersigned by Bacon and the principal statesmen. This, however, was far from contenting Ivan, as Elizabeth persisted in declining a refuge in Russia. The discussion on this "great affair," as Ivan calls it in his letters, was prolonged for some time longer. Elizabeth sent Randolph, Jenkinson, and Daniel Silvester to Russia. Ivan was represented in London by Andrei Sovin, Pisemski, and the English merchant, Horsey.

The last envoy of England in Ivan's reign was Jerome Bowes, charged to explain to the Tsar the difficulties in the way of his project of marriage with Lady Mary Hastings, Elizabeth's cousin. Notwithstanding his heaviness and want of tact, Bowes obtained great credit with the Tsar, who sometimes said to him, "May it please God that my servants prove as faithful!" Bowes profited by his favor to get the privileges of the English increased, but he made himself many enemies at Court, and was severely maltreated during the reaction that followed Ivan's death. The relations were renewed in Feodor's reign by Horsey, and, above all, by Fletcher, author of a curious account of Russia.

French merchants had also brought to Ivan a letter of Henry the Third, and had settled themselves in Moscow. Other envoys arrived from Holland, Spain, and Italy, to try to rival

the English; but the latter, who had been the first to reach Russia, kept the pre-eminence.

In fifteen hundred and fifty-eight the Tsar granted Gregory Strogonof ninety-two miles of desert land on the banks of the Kama. Here the Strogonofs created many centres of population, and began to explore the mineral wealth of the Urals. Their colonists even passed the "mountain girdle," and came in contact with the kingdom of Siberia. The Strogonofs, as audacious as the Spaniards, dreamed of the conquest of this vast empire, and requested authority of the Tsar to take the offensive against the Tatars. To fight, an army was necessary. Russia was so full of vigor, that the most impure elements often became the agents of her security and progress. The Good Companions of the Don had more than once excited the Tsar's anger by pillaging the travellers and boats on the royal road of the Volga. They had not always respected the possessions of the Crown. One of these brigand chiefs, the Cossack Irmak Timoféevitch, obtained pardon from the Tsar, and took service with the Strogonofs. At the head of eight hundred and fifty men — Russians, Cossacks, Tatars, German and Polish prisoners of war — he crossed the Urals, terrified the natives by the novelty of firearms, traversed the immense untrodden forests of Tobol, defeated the Khan Kutsum in many battles, took Sibir, his capital, and made his cousin Mametkul prisoner. Then he subjugated the banks of the Irtysh and the Obi, and consoled the last years of the Tsar by the news that he had conquered him a new kingdom and added to all his other crowns that of Siberia. Ivan also sent bishops and priests into his new dominions. Irmak, after having finished his conquest and thrown open the communications with the rich Bokhara, survived Ivan only a short time. One day, in fifteen hundred and eighty-four, he allowed himself to be surprised by his enemies, and in trying to swim the Irtysh sank from the weight of the cuirass given him by the Tsar. This rival of Pizarro and Cortez, the conqueror of a new world,

was reckoned a hero by the people, and is honored as a saint by the Church. Miracles were accomplished at his tomb; epic songs celebrated his exploits. The Tatars have composed a whole legend about him.

If Adashef gave to Russia in fifteen hundred and fifty-one her first municipal liberties, Ivan had assembled in fifteen hundred and fifty-six the first States-general, composed of the three orders. The reformation of the Church under Silvester was completed by the Council of fifteen hundred and seventy-three, which forbade rich convents to acquire new lands; and, by the Council of fifteen hundred and eighty, extending the prohibition to all convents. The Church could no longer acquire property. Ivan the Terrible restrained an abuse which troubled all the public ceremonies, and more than once imperilled the success of battles. We know how powerful, in the Russia of the sixteenth century, was the constitution of the family. When a noble rose or fell, his whole family rose or fell with him; even the memory of his ancestors and the future of his youngest nephews were concerned. This is the reason why a Russian noble never consented to occupy an inferior place, if no precedents on the subject existed. Court and camp were constantly disturbed by the "quarrels of precedence." Neither the knout nor the executioner's axe could subdue their resistance. They would rather die than dishonor their ancestors. The "Books of Rank" were consulted on all occasions, to know the respective precedence of the different families. Ivan the Fourth forbade all disputes of rank to any noble who was not the head of his family. This was only to restrain the evil; it had yet to be extirpated.

Ivan the Terrible may be considered as the founder of the National Guard of the *streltsui*, or *strelitz*, who during two hundred years rendered great services to the empire. He also organized, on the frontiers threatened by the Tatars, a series of posts and camps where the soldiers of the country could come for service.

He gathered strangers about him. He authorized the minister Wettermann, of Dorpat, to preach at Moscow, listened to Eberfeld, and refused a discussion with Rosvita, saying that he would not "cast pearls before swine." He permitted the erection of the first Calvinist and Lutheran churches at Moscow, thus anticipating the toleration of the eighteenth century; but, on seeing the people's dislike to them, he had them removed two versts from the capital.

Ivan's character was a strange compound of greatness and barbarism. Cruel, dissolute, superstitious, we see him by turns yielding himself to the most shameful excesses with his favorites, or, covered with a monkish garment, heading them in processions and other pious exercises. Like Henry the Eighth, he had many wives. After Anastasia Romanof he married a barbarian, the Tcherkess Maria; next, two legitimate wives; then two more whose union the Church refused to sanction. By his seventh wife, Maria Nagoï, he had a son, another Dmitri. At the close of his days we see him seeking an alliance with foreigners, and asking first the sister of the King of Poland, and then a cousin of Elizabeth of England, in marriage. His brutal habits and the facility with which he used his iron staff had a tragic conclusion. In an altercation with his son Ivan he struck him, and the blow was mortal. Great and fierce was the sorrow of the Tsar. In slaying his beloved son, he had slain his own work. He had no longer a successor, since Feodor, the elder of his remaining sons, was feeble in body and mind; and the second Dmitri was only an infant. It was for successors foreign to his race — for one of the detested boyars — that, at the price of so much blood and so many perils, he had founded autocracy. He survived his son only three years, and died in fifteen hundred and eighty-four. Without allowing himself to be biassed by Ivan's numerous cruelties, the historian ought fairly to compare him with men of his own time. He ought not to forget that the sixteenth century is the century

of Henry the Eighth, of Ferdinand the Catholic, of Catherine de Medici, of the Inquisition, of Saint Bartholomew, and of strappados. Was the Europe of this era indeed so far advanced beyond Asiatic Russia, newly escaped from the Mongol yoke? Ivan the Terrible, in decimating, in suppressing, in tyrannizing over the aristocracy, at least put it out of their power to establish after him that lawless gentry, the hidden danger of Slav nations, which in Poland, under the name of *pospolit*, began by enfeebling royalty, and ended by enfeebling the nation.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### MUSCOVITE RUSSIA AND THE RENAISSANCE.

1533 - 1584.

THE MUSCOVITE GOVERNMENT. — THE KIN AND THE MEN OF THE TSAR.  
— THE PRIKAZUI. — RURAL CLASSES. — CITIZENS. — COMMERCE. —  
DOMESTIC SLAVERY. — SECLUSION OF WOMEN. — THE RENAISSANCE :  
LITERATURE, POPULAR SONGS, AND CATHEDRALS. — MOSCOW IN THE  
SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

---

THE MUSCOVITE GOVERNMENT. — THE KIN AND THE MEN  
OF THE TSAR. — THE PRIKAZUI.

THE Russia of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries is an Oriental state, almost without relations with Europe. The Livonian knights, the Poles, the Swedes, and the Danes, who understood that it was only the barbarism of the Russians which insured their inferiority to their weaker neighbors, took good care that neither the men, the arms, nor the sciences of the West should reach them. Sigismond threatened the English merchants of the Baltic with death. He did not intend that "the Muscovite, who is not only our present adversary, but the eternal enemy of all free states, should be provided with guns, bullets, and munitions; and, above all, with artisans who continue to make arms, hitherto unknown in this barbaric country." Moscow, thanks to those jealous precautions, thanks also to the hatred of the Russians for the "Mussulmans" and "heretics" of the West, remained an Asiatic Empire, as it had been made by the Tatar invasions. The patriarchal rule of ancient Slavonia and the example of the Oriental sovereigns contributed to maintain the despotic

principle in all its force. The Tsar was at once the father and the master of his subjects, more absolute than the Khan of the Tatars or the Sultan of Constantinople. The persons and the goods of his subjects were his property ; the greatest lords, the princes descended from Rurik, were only his slaves. "A petition" in Russian signifies a "beating of the forehead." The nobles of the empire signed their requests, not with their names, Ioann or Peter, but with a lackey's nickname, a servile diminutive, Vania or Petrushka. The Byzantine formula, "May I speak and live?" is exaggerated in the Russian, "Bid me not to be chastised ; bid me to speak a word." Men approached the Tsar in fear and trembling ; the people prostrated themselves before that terrible iron staff with which Ivan was always armed. He considered the empire as his private property ; he administered it with his own "people," who had succeeded to the *drujina* of former princes ; he governed it by the help of his own relations or those of his wife. The sons of the greatest lords gloried in serving him in the capacity of gentlemen of the bedchamber or of waiters at the royal table. These domestic functions led to the rank of boyars, or *okol-nitchi*, the surrounders of the prince. The principal boyars formed the council of the empire, assembled in the chamber of the prince, and were presided over by him. On solemn occasions the general assembly was convoked, which was composed of deputies from all the orders, and was a sort of States-general of ancient Russia. The proud Russian aristocracy did not allow itself tamely to be reduced to this state of dependence ; but the princes, scattered as provincial or municipal governors through Siberia, Kazan, or Astrakhan, or subjected in the capital to a rigorous surveillance, had become powerless. To insure the results of their cruel policy, the successors of Ivan the Fourth forbade those who bore certain too illustrious names to marry.

When the Tsar desired to marry, he addressed a circular to the governors of the towns and provinces, commanding them

to send to Moscow the most beautiful maidens of the empire, or at all events those of noble birth. Like Ahasuerus in the Bible, like the Emperor Theophilus in the chronicles of Byzantium, like Louis the Débonair in the narrative of the "Astronomer," he made his selection out of all these beauties. Fifteen hundred young girls were assembled for Vasili Ivanovitch to choose from ; after the first meeting, five hundred of these were sent to Moscow. The Grand Prince then made a fresh selection of three hundred, then of two hundred, then of one hundred, then of ten, who were examined by the doctors and midwives. The most beautiful and the healthiest became the Tsaritsa, and she took a new name, as a sign that she was going to begin a new existence. Her father, on becoming the Tsar's father-in-law, also changed his name ; her relations formed the prince's Court, became his companions, undertook the care of everything, and governed the empire like the house of their imperial relative. The dispossessed ministers and friends tried in secret to reconquer their lost power by putting the new empress to death, and did not hesitate to have recourse to magic and poison. Many of these imperial brides never survived their triumphs, and, suddenly attacked by mysterious maladies, died before their coronation-day. All the successors of Vasili Ivanovitch, even including Alexis Mikhaïlovitch, instituted these assemblages of beauty for the choice of their wives. It was the privilege of the sovereigns of Moscow and of the princes of their blood.

The men of the *drujina*, or the prince's followers, thought it beneath their dignity or above their power to serve him otherwise than in war or justice. The work of the pen had to be confided to the sons of the priests and merchants, the secretaries whose beginnings were as humble as those of the Capetian lawyers, seated at the feet of the peers of France ; like them, they ended by taking the place of the great lords. The administration of the state was intrusted to twenty or thirty *prikazui*, or bureaus, whose numbers and functions

varied at different times. There was notably the prikaz of provisions, that of drinks, and that of the pantry, which were all concerned with the commissariat of the Court. The duties were very heavy, as not only the Tsar, the Tsaritsa, and the princes of the blood kept an open table, but, in accordance with patriarchal and family ideas, the prince was supposed to feed from his own table the nobles and functionaries lodged outside of the palace. He was obliged to send them daily cooked meats, wines, and fruits. There was the prikaz of the gold and silver cup, that of the wardrobe, of pharmacy, of horses, of the falconry, of games, to which belonged comedians, buffoons, dwarfs, fools, keepers of bears and dogs ready to fight with the bears, the menagerie of rare animals, chess, cards, and in general everything that served to amuse the Tsar. The prikaz of the crown had under its control the manufactures fabricating the golden and silken stuffs, of which the prince had a monopoly, and the depot of the precious Siberian furs. It furnished the presents to be distributed among the clergy, the boyars, the ambassadors of foreign powers, and the Greek monks who came from Byzantium or Mount Athos to ask for alms. The prikazui of the great palace, of the quarter, of the revenue, and of the tax on liquors were concerned with the finances. There were also those of the imperial family, of secret affairs, of petitions, posts, and police; of the Tsar's buildings, slaves, monasteries, streletsi, embassies, and artillery. The prikazui of Ustiug, of Kazan, of Galitch, of Kostroma, of Little Russia, and Siberia, had a power of jurisdiction in affairs pertaining to the provinces. Usually the expenses of such and such a bureau were defrayed by the produce of taxes on a given town or province.

The state revenues were composed: of the income of the demesne, including thirty-six towns and their territory, the inhabitants of which paid their dues either in kind or in money; of the taglo, an annual impost on every sixty measures of corn; of the podat, a fixed tax on every dvor, or fire;

the produce of the custom-houses, and of the excess of the municipal dues ; the tax on the public baths ; the farming-out of the Crown taverns ; the fines, the expenses of justice, and the confiscations pronounced by the tribunal of the brigands. Fletcher, who visited Russia in the time of Boris Godunof, estimates the value of the whole of these revenues at one million two hundred and twenty-three thousand rubles of their money. Moreover, the Tsar annually received furs and other things from Siberia, Permian, and the Petchora ; he himself exchanged them with the Turkish, Persian, Armenian, Bokharian, or Western merchants, who came to the fairs or landed in the ports of the empire. Further, the Crown, after having allowed the officers to gorge themselves some time by extortions from the people, reserved to itself the power of calling them to justice, and of depriving them of part or the whole of their booty. The Tsar, who, like the ancient despots of Egypt and the East, had already monopolized certain branches of commerce, kept up an undignified rivalry with his own subjects. He sent agents into special provinces, who seized on all the productions of the country, furs, wax, and honey ; forced the proprietors to sell them at a low price, and then obliged the English of Arkhangel or the merchants of Asia to buy them at a high rate ; he even laid hands on the goods brought by these merchants, and made the Russian tradesmen pay dear for them, forbidding them to purchase from others till the Tsar's warehouses were emptied. Fletcher exposes many other means of extortion, to which the Tsar's government periodically had recourse.

The grades of courts of civil justice were three : the tribunals of the starosta of the district, and of the hundred-man, a magistrate established for every hundred ploughs ; the tribunal of the voievod, in the head-city of each province ; and the Supreme Court of Moscow. In spite of the Codes of Ivan the Third and Ivan the Fourth, the law was so confused and uncertain that Fletcher said of it, " There is no written law in

Russia." The mode of procedure was that of the Carolingian age; if a man could neither produce witnesses nor written proofs, the judge could take the oath of one of the parties. Often the value of an oath was confirmed by a judicial duel. The champions, says Herberstein, loaded themselves with arms and heavy armor. They were so embarrassed by all this weight of iron, that a Russian was invariably overcome by a foreigner, and Ivan the Third forbade foreigners to fight with his subjects. Often the parties had themselves represented by hired champions, and then the combat became a comedy, the mercenaries thinking only how to spare themselves.

The legislation in the matter of debts equalled in rigor that of the Roman law of the Twelve Tables. The insolvent debtor was subjected to the *praviozh*; that is, he was tied up half-naked on a public place, and beaten three hours a day. This punishment was repeated for thirty or forty days. If by that time no one was moved by his lamentations and cries to pay his debt for him, he was allowed to be sold, and his wife and children let out on hire; if he had none, he became the slave of the creditor. The penal legislation was frightful. In cases of accusation of theft, murder, or treason, the accused was subjected to tortures worthy of a Spanish Inquisitor. The punishments were infinitely varied: a man might be hung, beheaded, broken on the wheel, impaled, drowned under the ice, or knouted to death. A wife who had murdered her husband "was buried alive up to her neck"; heretics went to the stake; sorcerers were burned alive in an iron cage; counterfeiters had liquid metal poured down their throats. Nor must we forget the death of "ten thousand pieces," the torment in which the sides were torn away by iron hooks, and all the other varieties of mutilation. On the other hand, a noble who slew a muzhik was only fined or whipped. The noble who killed his slave suffered no penalty; he could do what he liked with his own.

Before the creation of the patriarchate, the highest dignity

in the Russian Church was that of the Metropolitan of Moscow. Then came the six Archbishops of Novgorod, Rostof, Smolensk, Kazan, Pskof, and Vologda; the six Bishops of Riazan, Tver, Kolomenskoé, Vladimir, Suzdal, and Krutiski, or Saraï, whose dioceses were immense. This Church was as dependent on the Tsar as that of Byzantium had been on the emperors; at the expense of a few formalities he could create a prelate or a new see. The bishops were selected from the Black Clergy; that is, the monks who had taken the vow of chastity. Their revenues were large and their ceremonies imposing. "As for exhorting or instructing their sheep," says Fletcher, "they have neither the habit of it nor the talent for it, for all the clergy are as profoundly ignorant of the Word of God as of all other learning." With the secular or White Clergy marriage was not only a right, but a duty. Their manners and education hardly distinguished them from the peasants, and, like them, they were sometimes subjected to the most degrading chastisements. The convents were numerous, very full, and very rich; that of Saint Sergius, at Troïtsa, possessed one hundred and ten thousand souls, that is, male peasants. All broken men took refuge there; on the other hand, the councils fulminated against the vagabond monks who infested the country. More than once the monasteries served as prisons for disgraced nobles, who there led a gay and noisy life, like the Frank nobles of other days in the cloisters of the Merovingian churches. Delicate meats were sent them from the table of the Tsar, sturgeons, sterlets, figs, dry raisins, oranges, pepper, and saffron.

In a letter to the monks of Saint Cyril on the White Lake, Ivan the Fourth blames with a mixture of severity and irony their lenity towards the imprisoned boyars. "In my youth," he writes, "when we were at Saint Cyril, if dinner happened to be late, and if the intendant asked a sterlet or any other fish of the cellarer, he would reply, 'I have no orders about it; I have only prepared what I was ordered. Now it is night,

and I can give you nothing ; I fear the sovereign, but I fear God more.' ” “ See,” continues Ivan, “ what was the severity of the rule. They fulfilled the word of the prophet : ‘ Speak the truth, and have no shame before the Tsar.’ To-day my boyar Sheremetief reigns in his cell like a Tsar ; my boyar Khabarof pays him visits with the monks. They drink as though they were of the world. Is it a wedding ? is it a baptism ? The captive treats them to fruit, jellies, cake, and sweetmeats. Beyond the monastery there is a house filled with provisions. Some say that strong drinks are beginning to be smuggled into the cell of Sheremetief. Now in monasteries it is against the rules to have foreign wines ; how much more, then, strong liquors ! ”

The orthodox faith, deprived of the stimulus of liberty and instruction, tended to become mere routine. Salvation was gained by hearing long liturgies, by multiplying Slavonic orisons, by making hundreds of prostrations and genuflexions, by telling rosaries, and by frequenting shrines. The most celebrated centres were the catacombs of Kief, where sleep the incorruptible bodies of the saints, and where dwell their successors without ever seeing the light of day ; the Monastery of Saint Cyril, on the White Lake ; of Saint Sergius, at Troïtsa ; and the Cathedral of Saint Sophia, at Novgorod. Men prostrated themselves at the tombs of Saint Peter and Saint Alexis of Moscow ; before the wonder-working virgins of Vladimir, Smolensk, Tikhvin, and Pskof. The most pious journeyed as far as the sacred Mount Athos, and the city of Constantinople, full of blessed relics, though polluted by the presence of the Turk ; nay, further still, to the tomb of Christ, to Golgotha, to Mount Sinai, wherever orthodox communities disputed possession with Catholic communities.

The national army was, like the Tatar army, chiefly composed of cavalry. The gentlemen of the bedchamber, the waiters at the royal table, and other young courtiers, formed an Imperial Guard of about eight thousand men. All the

gentlemen of the empire, nobles, or men-at-arms were confined to the mounted ranks ; the revenues of their lands were counted as pay for these men of service, the ancient distinction between the fiefs and the freeholds was almost abolished. It was like the régime of the fiefs of the West, or of the *ziams* and *timars* of Turkey. This noble cavalry could reckon eighty thousand horsemen ; with the levy of free peasants, it amounted to three hundred thousand. To this we must join the irregular cavalry, composed of the Cossacks of the Don and the Terek, of Tatars and Bashkirs. The national infantry was made up of the peasants of the monasteries, churches, and domains ; of the *streltsui*, free archers, or communal soldiers, organized in the time of Ivan the Fourth, and who, in Moscow alone, formed a body of twelve thousand men. Then came the artillery, and the soldiers detailed for service at the *guliaï-gorod*, the "city that walks," — movable ramparts of wood, which were used both in sieges and in the open country, where the Russian troops, if they were not protected, showed little firmness. In the fifteenth century foreign mercenaries began to be enlisted, — Poles, Hungarians, Greeks, Turks, Scotch, Scandinavians, armed and disciplined after the European fashion, and enrolled under the names of *ritters*, or riders, foot-soldiers, and dragoons. History has preserved the names of some of their leaders : Rosen the German, and Margeret the Frenchman, who has left us some curious memoirs of the False Dmitri.

The equipment of the national troops was thoroughly Oriental. They had long robes, high saddles, short stirrups, rich caparisons, scale or ring armor. The Tsar himself went into battle with his lance, bow, and quiver. The army was always divided into five divisions, — the main army, the right and left wings, the van and rear guards. Each was commanded by two voïevodui of unequal rank, without counting the voïevod of the artillery or of the movable camp, and the *atamans* of the *streltsui* and of the Cossacks. The grades of

the regular army were those of the *tuisatski*, or chiliarch, commander of one thousand, the centurion, or captain of one hundred, the commander of fifty, and the *deciatski*, or commander of ten. All obeyed the grand voïevod, or general-in-chief. Each soldier brought provisions for four months, and the Tsar furnished nothing, except occasionally some corn. The men lived almost entirely on biscuit, dried fish or bacon, and were capable of enduring much fatigue. The campaigns never lasted long, and only part of the army was permanent.

From this time Russia sought to enter into regular relations with foreign powers. Its diplomatic traditions were those of the East or Byzantium. Its first ambassadors were the Greek Demetrios Trakhaniotos, and the Italian Marco Ruffo, sent into Persia. They treated with most deference the neighboring states, not those which were most powerful. Whilst they sent a simple courier to the Emperor, and the kings of France, England, and Spain, they despatched boyars, accompanied by secretaries, to Sweden, Denmark, and Poland. The prikaz of the embassies, which had under its orders fifty translators and seventy interpreters of all languages, gave them their safe-conduct, detailed instructions, letters for the foreign sovereign, presents, two years' pay, and a certain number of furs or costly fabrics from the prikaz of the Crown, which they were to do their best to sell at a high price. The Russian ambassador, like those of the Greeks and Tatars, was also a commission agent for the Tsar's benefit. The envoys were recommended to avoid all insolence, and to watch their men, but to display the greatest luxury, to exact due payment of all honors, and, at the peril of their lives, never to suffer the Tsar's titles to be diminished, though the titles were rather complicated, as he enumerated all his subject states. The mercantile preoccupations of the Russian ambassadors, and their eternal quarrels about etiquette, rendered them unbearable at all the European courts. On their return they were summoned before the Tsar, gave him a detailed account of their

mission, and handed over to him the journal of their tour and the notes of all that they had observed in the distant countries. From the sixteenth century a shrewd and observant spirit is noticeable in their relations, which is not unworthy of the wisdom of their masters, the Byzantines.

When foreign ambassadors arrived in Russia, they were treated with magnificence and yet with distrust. From the time they crossed the frontier, they and their retinue were fed, housed, and provided with carriages, but a police inspector attached to their persons watched carefully that they obtained no interviews with the natives, nor information about the state of the country. They were taken through the richest and most populous provinces; the citizens were everywhere required to meet them on their route, dressed in their costliest clothes. At Moscow a palace of the Tsar was assigned them as a residence, and they were fed from his table. Their first interview took place with great pomp in the Palace of Facets. The walls of the hall were hung with magnificent tapestries; gold and silver vessels, of Asiatic form, shone on the dais. The Tsar, crown on head, sceptre in hand, seated on the throne of Solomon, supported by the mechanical lions, which roared loudly, surrounded by his life guard in long white caftans and armed with the great silver axe, by his sumptuously dressed boyars, and by his clergy in their simple costume, received their letters of credit. He asked the ambassador for news of his master, and how he had travelled. If the Tsar were not contented with him, the ambassadors' palace became a prison where no native was allowed to penetrate, and carefully studied humiliations were practised to extract from him concessions or to abridge his stay.

#### RURAL CLASSES. — CITIZENS. — COMMERCE.

The lower classes of Muscovy were composed of three elements: the slave, or *kholop*, properly so called, the man-

cipium of the Romans, a man taken in war, sold by himself or some one else, or the son of a kholop; the peasant fixed to the lands of a noble, corresponding to the colonus adscriptitius of the Roman Empire, whose person was legally free, but who was to be reduced by means of a more and more rigorous legislation to the condition of serf of the glebe; and the free cultivator, who lived like a farmer on the lands of another, and had the right to change his master, but who was soon to be mingled with the preceding class.

It was the inscribed peasants who constituted almost the whole of the rural population. In the ancient provinces the peasant might consider himself as the primitive inhabitant of the soil. He was made subject to the gentleman only in order to secure to the latter an income sufficient for military service; he therefore continued to look on himself as the true proprietor. In these rural masses the primitive features of the Slav organization were preserved in all their vigor. It was the commune, or *mir*, and not the individuals, who possessed the land; it was the commune that was responsible to the Tsar for the tax, for the statute labor and dues to the lord. This responsibility armed the commune with an enormous power over its members, and this power was embodied in the starosta, assisted by elders. In the bosom of the commune the family was not organized less severely, less tyrannically, than the *mir*. The father of the family had over his wife, his sons, married or single, and their wives, an authority almost as absolute as that of the starosta over the commune or the Tsar over the empire. The paternal authority became harder and more stern from the contact with serfage and the despotic rule. Ancient barbarism was still intact among these ignorant people; the graceful customs or the savage manners, the poetic or cruel superstitions of the early Slavs, were perpetuated by them. The Russian peasant remained a pagan under his veneer of orthodoxy. His funeral songs seem destitute of all Christian hope. His marriage songs preserve the

tradition of the purchase or capture of the bride. The sad lot of the rustic was destined to be made more and more burdensome during the three centuries of progress which the upper classes had still to accomplish. In the view of the state, as of the proprietor, he tended more and more to become a beast of burden, a productive force to be used and abused at pleasure.

The Russian towns were composed, first, of a fortress or kreml, generally built with wooden walls, into which at need a garrison of militia could be sent; next, of districts or wards inhabited by the citizens or merchants. They were governed by voievodui nominated by the prince, or by a *starosta*, or mayor, who was elected by an assembly of the inhabitants, nobles, priests, or citizens, but was always a gentleman. The starosta governed the town and the district depending on it. As the citizens paid the heaviest taxes, they were forbidden to quit the town; they were, as during the last days of the Roman Empire, bound to the city glebe. Alexis Mikhaïlovitch afterwards attached the pain of death to this prohibition. To assess the impost, the starosta convoked at once both the deputies of the town and those of the rural communes. The impost of the taglo was paid by the town collectively, in proportion to the number of fires, and all the people were collectively responsible for each other to the state.

In the burgess class may be counted the merchants, whose Russian name, signifying guests or strangers, shows how far commerce still was from being acclimatized in this land and under this régime. Muscovy produced in abundance the hides of cattle; furs from the blue and black fox, the zibeline, the beaver, and the ermine; wax, honey, hemp, tallow, oil from the seal, and dried fish. From China, Bokhara, and Persia came silks, tea, and spices. The Russian people are naturally intelligent and industrious, but still commerce languished. Fletcher, the Englishman, has assigned as the reason for this decay the insecurity created by anarchy and

despotism. The muzhik did not care either to save or to lay by. He pretended to be poor and miserable, to escape the exactions of the prince and the plunder of his agents. If he had money, he buried it, as one in fear of an invasion. "Often," says the English writer, "you will see them trembling with fear, lest a boyar should know what they have to sell. I have seen them at times, when they had spread out their wares so that you might make a better choice, look all round them, as if they feared an enemy would surprise them and lay hands on them. If I asked them the cause, they would say to me, 'I was afraid there might be a noble or one of the men-at-arms here; they would take away my merchandise by force.'" "The merchants and the citizens," says M. Leroy-Beaulieu, "could with difficulty become a powerful class in a country cut off from Europe and the sea, and cut off, too, from all great commercial routes by the Lithuanians, the Teutonic Order, and the Tatars." The citizen, like the inhabitant of the French towns of the fourteenth century, was only a sort of villain; he wore the costume of a peasant, and lived almost like him. The merchants were really what they were called by Ivan the Terrible,—the muzhiki of commerce.

#### DOMESTIC SLAVERY.—SECLUSION OF WOMEN.

Only two more facts were needed to give to Russian society the same Asiatic character which we noted already in the despotism of the Tsars and the communism of the people,—domestic slavery, and the seclusion of women.

Besides the peasants more or less attached to the glebe, all Russian proprietors kept in their castles, or in their town-houses at Moscow, a multitude of servants like those who encumbered the senators' palaces in imperial Rome. A great lord always gathered round him many hundreds of these domestic serfs, both men and women, bought or born in the house, whom he never paid, whom he fed badly, and who

served him badly in return, but whose numbers served to give an idea of the wealth of their master. The train of a noble on his way to the Kreml may be compared to that of a Japanese daimio. A long file of sledges or chariots, a hundred horses, outriders who made the people stand back by blows with their whips; a crowd of armed men, who escorted the noble; and last of all, a host of servants, often with naked feet beneath their magnificent liveries, filled the streets of the city with their stir and noise. These domestic slaves were subjected, without distinction of sex, to the most severe discipline, and were forced to submit to all the cruel or voluptuous caprices of their masters, and, like the slaves of antiquity, were exposed to the most frightful chastisements. Whilst the registered serf was attached to the land the slave could be sold, either by heads or by families, without compunction. Wives were separated from their husbands and children from their parents.

The custom of secluding women is older than the Tatar invasion. The Russian Slavs were Asiatics even before they were subdued by the Mongols. Byzantium had likewise far more influence than Kazan on Russian manners. Now, in ancient Athens, and in the Constantinople of the Middle Ages, the matron and the young girl were alike obliged to remain in the women's apartments, which became in Moscow the *terem*, or attic chamber. In Russia, as in the Rome of the Twelve Tables, the woman was always a minor. This was one consequence of the patriarchal organization of the family. She always remained under the guardianship of her father, her husband's father, an uncle, an elder brother, or a grandfather. The Russian monks translated for her use the sermons of the monks of the Lower Empire, which enjoined the wife "to obey her husband as the slave obeys his master"; to consider herself only as the "property of the man"; never to allow herself to be called mistress, but to look on her husband as her lord and master. The father of the family had the right to correct her,

like one of his children or slaves. The priest Silvester, in his "Domostroï," only advises him not to employ too thick sticks, or staves tipped with iron; nor humiliate her unduly by whipping her before his men, but, without anger or violence, to correct her moderately in private. No woman dared to object to this chastisement; the most robust would allow herself calmly to be beaten by a feeble husband.

The Russian proverb says, "I love thee like my soul, and I dust thee like my jacket." Herberstein mentions a Muscovite woman who, having married a foreigner, did not believe herself loved because he never beat her. At home the Russian woman was hid behind the curtains of the *terem*; in the street, by those of her litter. Over her face fell the *fata*, a sort of nun's veil. It was an outrage even to raise the eyes to the wife of a noble, and high treason to see the face of the Tsar's wife. A stranger might have thought himself at Stamboul or Ispahan. It appeared so highly necessary that this fragile being should remain at home, that she was allowed to dispense even with going to church. Her church was her own house, where she had to occupy herself with prayers, pious reading, prostrations, genuflexions, and alms, and was surrounded by beggars, monks, and nuns. The priest Silvester also wished her to superintend her house, be the first to rise, to watch over her men and maid servants, to distribute their tasks, and work with her own hands, like Lucretia of old or the wise woman of the Proverbs. In reality she had many other ways of occupying her time. The toilet of the Russian ladies was very complicated. "They paint themselves all colors," says Petreï; "not only their faces, but their eyes, neck, and hands. They lay on white, red, blue, and black. Black eyelashes they tint white, and white ones black, or some dark color, but they put on the paint so badly that it is visible to every one. At the time of my visit to Moscow the wife of an illustrious boyar, who was exceedingly beautiful, declined to paint herself, but she was an object of scorn to all

the other women. 'She despises our customs,' said they. They induced their husbands to complain to the Tsar, and obtained an imperial order to make her paint." Stoutness was the ideal of Turkish and Tatar beauty, so the Russians did all in their power to deform their slender figures, and, by means of idleness and drugs, managed to succeed. As to the men, they always wore a long beard and long dresses. To shave the beard like the European nations was, said Ivan the Terrible, "a sin that the blood of all the martyrs could not cleanse. Was it not to deface the image of man, created by God?"

The influence of Byzantine monachism is also to be found in the objection to all innocent amusements. Cards, and even chess, were forbidden; music and songs glorifying the ancient heroes of Russia were condemned as diabolic; the noble exercises of the chase and dancing were not allowed. "If they give themselves up at table," says the 'Domostroï,' "to filthy conversation; if they play the lute or the gusli; if they dance, or jump, or clap their hands, then, as smoke chases the bees, the angels of God are made to fly from that table by those devilish words, and demons take their place. Those who give themselves up to diabolic songs; those who play the lute, the tambourine, or the trumpet; those who amuse themselves with bears, dogs, and falcons, — with dice, chess, or backgammon, will together go to hell, and together will be damned."

Owing to the general ignorance, there was no intellectual life in Russia; owing to the seclusion of women, there was no society. Compared with the gallant and witty society of Poland, Russia seems a vast monastery. The devil lost nothing in the long run. The nobles, living in the midst of slaves subjected to their caprices, degraded themselves while they degraded their victims. Debauchery and drunkenness were the national sins. Rich and poor, young and old, women and children, often dropped down dead drunk in the streets, with-

out surprising any one. The priests, in their visits to their sheep, got theologically drunk. "Even at the houses of the great lords," says M. Zabiélin, "no feast was gay and joyous unless every one was drunk. It was precisely in drunkenness that the gayety consisted. The guests were never gay if they were not drunk." To this very day, "to be merry" signifies to have been drinking. The preachers, even, while attacking the national vice, touched it delicately. "My brothers," says one of them, "what is worse than drunkenness? You lose memory and reason, like a madman, who knows not what he does. Is this mirth, my friends, mirth according to the law and glory of God? The drunkard is senseless. He lies like a corpse. If you speak to him, he does not answer. He foams, he stinks, he grunts like a brute. Think of his poor soul which grows foul in its vile body, which is its prison. Drunkenness sends our guardian angels away, and makes the devil merry. To be drunk, is to perform sacrifices to Satan. The devil rejoices, and says, 'No; the sacrifices of the pagans never caused me half so much joy and happiness as the intoxication of a Christian.' Fly, then, my brothers, the curse of drunkenness. To drink is lawful, and is to the glory of God, who has given us wine to make us rejoice. The Fathers were far from forbidding wine, but we must never drink ourselves drunk."

Their only diversions were, in spite of the "Domostroï," the jests of the buffoons, who, like the writers of the French *fabliaux*, never spared Churchmen; the coarse pleasantries of male or female jesters, who were the inseparable companions of the great, and were to be found even in the monasteries; hunts with falcons and hounds, and bear-fights. All these festivities were accompanied with music, and sometimes a blind singer would come and celebrate the heroes of Old Russia. The rich never willingly went to sleep without being lulled by tales told by some popular story-teller. Ivan the Terrible always had three, who succeeded each other at his

bedside. Soon, under Alexis Mikhaïlovitch, theatrical representations in imitation of Europe were to begin.

All Western superstitions were current among the Russians, who also added follies of their own. The people believed in horoscopes, diviners, sorcery, magic, the miraculous virtues of certain herbs or certain formulæ, the evils produced by "lifting the footmarks" of an enemy, in bewitched swords, in love philters, in were-wolves, ghosts and vampires, which play such a terrible part in the popular tales of Russia. Their terror of sorcerers is shown by the horrible deaths they made them die. The most enlightened Tsars shared this weakness, and Boris Godunof made all his servants swear "never to have recourse to magicians, male or female, or to any other means of hurting the Tsar, the Tsaritsa, or their children; never to cast spells by the traces of their feet or of their carriages." They had more confidence in the receipts of a wise woman, in holy water in which the relics had been dipped, than in doctors, whom they regarded only as another variety of sorcerers. Nothing was more difficult and dangerous than the early exercise of this profession. If the doctor did not succeed in curing his patient, he was punished as a malicious magician. One of these unfortunate people, a Jew, was executed under Ivan the Third in a public place, for having allowed a Tsarévitch to die. Anton, another, a German by birth, was accused of having put a Tatar prince to death, and delivered up his relatives to suffer by the law of retaliation. He was stabbed. Towards the end of the sixteenth century the situation of doctors was somewhat ameliorated; but when a Tsaritsa or a great lady had to be attended, whose face they were never allowed to see, and whose pulse they might touch only through a muslin covering, what proper means had they of taking a diagnosis?

Such was ancient Russia, — that European China discovered and described by the European travellers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, by Herberstein, Mayerberg,

Cobenzel, envoys of Austria ; Chancellor, Jenkinson, and Fletcher, envoys of England ; the Venetians Contarini and Marco Foscarini ; the Roman merchant Barberini ; Ulfeld the Dane ; Petreï the Swede ; the Germans Heidenstein, Eric Lassota, Olearius ; Possevino the Jesuit ; the French captain Jacques Margeret ; the English doctor Collins, and others. It now remains to speak of literature and the arts.

THE RENAISSANCE: LITERATURE, POPULAR SONGS, AND CATHEDRALS.—MOSCOW IN THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

Ecclesiastical literature was chiefly composed of a collection of teachings borrowed from the Fathers, of "Readings for Every Day in the Year," called "Waves of Gold," "Months of Gold," and "Emeralds"; or of Lives of the Saints of the Greek or Russian Churches. The most considerable monument belonging to this last group is the "Tcheti-Minei," a vast compilation of the Metropolitan Macarius, one of the confessors of Ivan the Terrible. The chronicles continue to be written, among others the "Stepennaia Kniga," which contains the genealogy of the Russian princes from Rurik until Ivan Vasiliévitch. Besides the great legal collection of the "Code" and of the "Hundred Articles," we must mention the "Domostroï" of the Pope Silvester, Minister of Ivan the Fourth. This is a collection of precepts instructing readers in the arts of keeping house and securing salvation. It enumerates the days on which swans, cranes, capons, egg-pasties, and cheese are to be eaten. It gives receipts for making hydromel, kvas, beer, gruel, and sweetmeats. It gives bills of fare, and at the same time teaches the master of the house how he ought to govern his wife, his children, and his servants ; avoid the sin of wicked conversation ; please God, honor the Tsar, the princes, and all persons of rank ; how he should conduct himself well at table, — to blow his nose, and to spit without noise, taking care to turn away from the com-

pany, and put his foot over the place." The "Domostroï" gives the characteristics of the Russian civilization, as the *De Re Rusticâ* of the elder Cato gives those of the ancient Roman civilization. From Cato to Silvester there is an evident progress. Whilst the Roman advises that the old oxen, the old iron, and the old slaves should be sold, the Pope Silvester enjoins that "the old servants, who are no longer good for anything, be fed and clothed, in consideration of their former services: this ministers to the salvation of the soul, and we must fear the anger of God." "Masters," he says again, "ought to be benevolent towards their servants, and give them to eat and drink, and warm them properly; for, if they keep their domestics by force around them, and do not nourish them sufficiently, they turn them into bad servants, who lie, steal, are dissipated, spoil everything, and get drunk at the tavern. These foolish masters sin against God, are despised by their slaves, and contemned by their neighbors."

"When a man sends his servant to honest people, he should knock softly at the great door; when the slave comes to ask him what he wants, he should reply, 'I have nothing to do with thee, but with him to whom I am sent.' He should only say from whom he comes, so that the other may tell his master. On the threshold of the chamber he will wipe his feet in the straw; before entering he will blow his nose, spit, and say a prayer. If no one says amen to him, he will say a second prayer; if they still keep silence, a third prayer, in a louder voice than the preceding ones. If they still do not speak, he will knock at the door. On entering, he must bow before the holy images; then he will explain his mission to the master, and during this time he must take care not to touch his nose, nor to cough, nor spit; he must conduct himself with propriety, without looking to the right or the left. If he is left alone, he must examine nothing belonging to the master of the house, and touch nothing, neither to eat nor drink. If he is sent to carry anything, he

must not look to see what it is ; and if it should be eatable, neither his tongue nor his fingers are to know it."

At the head of the literary movement of the time Ivan the Terrible and his enemy Kurbski occupy a place of honor. They exchanged many letters, in which the one displayed a great knowledge of sacred and profane literature, close reasoning, and bitter irony ; the other an indignant and tragic eloquence. Besides these letters, Ivan addressed an admonition to the monks of Saint Cyril, full of vigor and mocking gravity. The same Kurbski wrote, in eight books, a passionate history of the Tsar who persecuted " the strong ones of Israel, the high-born heroes of Russia " ; in his exile in Lithuania he defended orthodoxy against the encroachments of Jesuitism and Protestantism, compiled the " History of the Council of Florence," and learned Latin in order to translate into Russian the Fathers of the Church.

Like his rival, Louis the Eleventh in France, Ivan the Terrible was in Russia the protector of printing, which was abhorred by the people as an impious art. Mstislavets and the deacon Feodorof printed the Acts of the Apostles and a " Book of Hours " ; but later they were obliged to fly into Lithuania to escape from accusations of heresy and the hate of the people.

There existed a literature which could do without the art of Gutenberg, and which at this time attained its most splendid development. This was the literature which from the earliest centuries of Russian history had been kept alive on the lips of the people, in the memory of the peasants, and which, perpetuated by passing from generation to generation, has at last been collected in our own day by many Russians interested in preserving the songs and traditions of the masses. The people had their lyric poetry, marriage-songs, funeral dirges, rural dance-songs, hymns for Christmas, Epiphany, Easter, and the Feasts of Saint George and Saint John, — hymns in which they celebrated the death of winter,

the birth of spring, the harvest, and preserved the recollections of the ancient religions and ancient Slav gods. There were epic songs which glorified the legendary exploits of the early heroes of Russia, the demigods of primitive paganism : Volga Vseslavitch, Sviatogor, Mikula Selianinovitch, Polkan, Dunai, and others. In these songs Vladimir, the " Beautiful Sun " of Kief, groups around him, like the Charlemagne of the *chansons de gestes* and the King Arthur of the Breton romances, a whole pleiad of heroes. They immortalize Ilia of Murom, the hero-peasant ; Dobruina Nikititch, the hero-boyar ; Alesha Popovitch, conqueror of the gigantic dragon, Tugarin ; Solovëi Budimirovitch, navigator of the falcon-ship Potuik, whom the perfidy of an enchantress caused to descend alive into the tomb ; Diuk Stépanovitch, who crossed the Dnieper at one leap of his horse ; Stavr Godinovitch, the warrior-musician, released by his wife's artifice from the prisons of Vladimir ; Thoma Ivanovitch, whom the Princess Apraxia calumniated like another Joseph, but for whom God worked a miracle ; Vasili, the hero-drunkard, who went from a tavern to save Russia ; Sadko, the rich merchant of Novgorod, whose maritime adventures form an Odyssey ; the Princess Apraxia, who is seated on the throne by the side of Vladimir, her husband ; the heroines Nastasia and Marina, the Penelope and Circe of the Russian spies ; Maria the White Swan, who belongs to the cycle of bird-women ; and Vasilisa, who passed herself off as a man, and beat all the athletes of Vladimir. Such were the heroes of Kief and Novgorod.

Historical heroes belong to the cycle of Moscow : Dmitri, the vanquisher of the Tatars ; Mikhail of Tchernigof, Alexander Nevski, and Ivan the Terrible, around whom are grouped the songs of the taking of Kazan, the conquest of Siberia, and the famous legends entitled " The Tsar wishes to kill his Son," " The Tsar sends the Tsaritsa to a Convent," and " How Treason was introduced into Russia." This epic current flows on up to the nineteenth century ; and others, born of

the shock of events on the popular imagination, celebrate the deeds of Skopin Shuiski, the wars of Peter the Great, the victories of Elisabeth and Catherine the Second; the campaigns of Suvorof, and even the invasion of Russia by the "King Napoleon."

Narratives, sometimes in prose and sometimes in poetry, glorify the heroes of the Eastern epopee: Akir of Nineveh, Solomon the Wise, Alexander of Macedon, and Ruslan Lazarevitch. Wonderful stories are told by the peasants of Helen the Fair, of the Tsar of the Sea, and of Vasilisa the Wise; of the Seven Simeons; of the adventures of Ivan, son of the King, and of the lovely Nastasia; of the Baba-Yaga, and of the King of the Serpents. There were religious verses, which were carried by the blind cripples, who sang the praises of the Russian saints from village to village, — Saint Iuri the Brave and Saint Dmitri of Solun, vanquishers of dragons and infidels; Boris and Gleb, sons of Vladimir the Baptist; Saint Theodosius, founder of the catacombs of Kief; Daniel the Pilgrim, who visited Jerusalem; and others who belong almost as much to the Slav mythology as to the Christian hagiography. Lastly, there are satirical tales, light and biting as French fables, turning into ridicule the greed of the popes and the selfish calculations of their wives.

Thanks to the Greeks who fled from Constantinople, and their pupils the Italians, Russia had a sort of artistic Renaissance from the fifteenth to the seventeenth century, under the same influences as the West. The revolution was, however, less complete in Muscovy than in the West; there was no need to substitute the round for the pointed arch, since Russia had no Gothic churches, and the Roman Byzantine style, borrowed in the eleventh century by Saint Sophia at Novgorod and Saint Sophia at Kief from Saint Sophia at Constantinople, was perpetuated, under the influence of religious ideas and unbroken traditions, as a legacy from Byzantium. There was no sort of change in painting; and even at the present

day, in the Russian convents, the custom of the church causes the saints and the Mother of God to be painted as they might have been painted by Pansélinos in the tenth century in the churches of Mount Athos. The Renaissance chiefly manifests itself by the number and magnificence of the orthodox churches with which Italian artists then illuminated Old Russia, and by the greater perfection of their modes of building. It was then that Moscow became worthy by its new monumental splendors to be the capital of a great empire; it was then that it became the Holy City, with forty times forty churches, with innumerable cupolas of gold, of silver, and of blue, which the Russian pilgrim, kneeling on the Hill of Prostrations, salutes from afar.

Moscow was at that time composed of the Kreml or Kremlin, a fortified enclosure in the form of a triangle, of which the smallest side rests on the Moskova, and the apex is turned towards the north; of the Kitai-gorod, not, as so many travellers translate it, the Chinese City, but perhaps derived from Kitai-gorod in Podolia, the birthplace of Helena, mother of Ivan the Fourth, who founded the Kitai-gorod of Moscow, which encloses the bazaars and the palaces of the nobles, and is separated from the Kreml by a vast space which is called the Red Place or Beautiful Place; of the Biélui-gorod, or White City, which surrounds this double centre of the Kreml and the Kitai-gorod as the outer skin of an almond encloses the two cotyledons; of the Zemliani-gorod, or City of the Earthen Ramparts, enveloping in its turn the White City, enclosing the suburbs, gardens, woods, lakes, and vast unimproved spaces, then occupied by the villages of the streletsui. Lastly, on the outer circle of Moscow, like detached forts, stood the fortified convents, with white walls, which more than once sustained the assault of the Poles and the Tatars. This huge Asiatic town was a city of contrasts. The buildings were grouped almost by accident along the wide, marshy, tortuous streets, which were scarcely laid out.

Hovels built of pine, like those of the Russian villages, stood by the side of the palaces of the nobles. The people either chose them ready made from the yards, or ordered them according to their measure. The carpenters built them in two days on the place pointed out; they cost only a few rubles.

Moscow is situated in that part of Russia which is totally lacking in stone, and where the forests were formerly thickest. In point of fact, it was a city of wood, which a spark might set on fire. It had been burned almost entirely under Dmitri Donskoï, and twice under Ivan the Terrible; it was to burn again during the Polish invasion of sixteen hundred and twelve and the French invasion of eighteen hundred and twelve. The decrees of the Tsars ordered certain precautions under the most severe penalties: all the fires had to be put out at nightfall; in summer it was absolutely forbidden to have lights in the houses, and cooking had to be done in the open air. There were no means of extinguishing the fires, and, when one broke out, the Muscovites showed themselves as passively fatalistic as the people of the East.

It was chiefly the Kreml that profited by the embellishments undertaken by the two Ivans and their successors. The enclosure, made of wood before the city was burnt by Tokhtamuish, was now of solid white stones, cut in facets, whence was derived the poetical name of "Holy mother Moscow with the white walls"; it was surmounted by high and narrow battlements in the form of teeth. Eighteen towers protected it, and five gates led into the interior. These five gates present much originality and variety. That of the Savior was built in fourteen hundred and ninety-one by Pietro Solario of Milan. It is the sacred gate, that cannot be entered covered; formerly obstinate people were forced to kneel down before it fifty times. Criminals were allowed to make their last prayer before the image of the Savior, and the new Emperor always made his entrance through it on

his way to his coronation at the Assumption. Another Italian built at the same date the gate of Saint Nicholas of Mojaïsk, avenger of perjury, before whose image the suitors made oath. That of the Trinity was built in the seventeenth century by Christopher Galloway.

The wall of the Kreml, like that of the old imperial palace of Byzantium, encloses a number of churches, palaces, and monasteries. The most celebrated of these churches is the Uspieski Sobor, or the Cathedral of the Assumption, in which since the fifteenth century the Tsars have always made a point of being crowned. It is their Cathedral of Rheims. Its architect was Alberto Fioraventi, surnamed Aristotele, who had already worked for Cosmo de Medici, Francis the First, Gian Galeazzo of Milan, Matthias Corvinus, and the Pope Sixtus the Fourth, and whom Tolbusin, ambassador of Ivan the Third, met at Venice, and engaged for the service of the Tsar. One can hardly believe that the Assumption is of the same date as the luminous churches of the Renaissance. The architect, or those who inspired him, has here tried to reproduce the mysterious obscurity of the old temples of Egypt and the East. The cathedral has no windows, but only close-barred shot-holes in the walls, which admit into the interior a doubtful light, like that which filters through the hole of a dungeon. This pale glow touches the massive pillars covered with burnished gold; gleams upon the magnificent yet gloomy background, from which stand out, severe and grave, the faces of saints and doctors; it dwells here and there on the projections of the golden altar partition, covered by miraculous images, sprinkled with diamonds and jewels; it hardly lights the representations of the "Last Judgment" and the "End of the World," painted on the walls of the church. All the upper part of the temple is enveloped in shadows, like the crypts of the Pharaohs; the pictures which cover the vault can hardly be distinguished. The artist has evidently made them for the eye of God, not

for that of man; for the eye of man can contemplate them only on the rare occasions, such as the Feast of the Assumption or a coronation-day, when the whole cathedral is illumined to its farthest corners by innumerable wax-tapers. It seems that Aristotele built this church according to a former plan of some other architect, but it is said that, finding that the constructions already begun were not sufficiently solid, with a battering-ram, perfected by himself, he overthrew the walls; then he caused new foundations to be laid; and, finally, he taught the Russians a better way of baking bricks. At the Assumption is the tomb of Saint Peter, the first Metropolitan of Moscow, and people come here to worship before the holy images of Vladimir and Iaroslav. The Cathedral of Saint Michael the Archangel, built in fifteen hundred and five, is the Saint Denis of the Tsars of Russia: here, in a coffin of pine, covered with red cloth, sleep Ivan the Terrible and his two sons. In the Church of the Annunciation, with the agate pavement, the marriages of the princes are celebrated. In that of the Ascension are the tombs of the sovereigns. The Tower of Ivan the Great was built in the year sixteen hundred by Boris Godunof. It is three hundred and twenty-five feet high, surmounted with a golden cupola, with Slavonic inscriptions in letters of gold which may be distinguished from afar, and it has a chime of thirty-four bells.

Of the imperial palace, built in fourteen hundred and eighty-seven, only a few fragments still remain: the little "Golden Palace," where the Tsaritsa received the members of the clergy; the "Palace of Facets," where the solemn audiences of ambassadors were held; the "Red Staircase," from the top of which the Tsar allowed the people to contemplate "the light of his eyes"; finally the "Terem," with the painted roof, in which we still find the dining-hall, the hall of council, and the hall of the oratory, — vaulted rooms of no great dimensions, where shine on golden backgrounds the

images of the saints who protect the Tsar. The Palace of Facets was begun in fourteen hundred and eighty-seven by the Italian Mario, and finished by Pietro Antonio. The other palaces are the work of the Milanese Aleviso. In the Tsarian apartments rarities imported from the West already began to find a place with the ancient Russian furniture. In fifteen hundred and ninety-four the German ambassador presented the Tsar Feodor with a gilt clock, on which were marked the planets and the calendar; and in fifteen hundred and ninety-seven with another clock, where little figures played on trumpets, Jews'-harps, and tambourines each time the hour struck.

The most curious edifice in Moscow is perhaps the Church of Vasili the Blessed, on the Red Place. It was built by Ivan the Terrible in fifteen hundred and fifty-four, in memory of the taking of Kazan, and is the work of an Italian artist. The legend declares that Ivan put out the eyes of the artist, to prevent his building a similar marvel for others. We must imagine a church surmounted by eight or ten cupolas, like bulbs, all of different heights and forms, "some," in the words of Gautier, "beaten into facets, others ribbed; these carved into diamond points, like pineapples, those striped in spirals; others, again, covered with overlapping scales, lozenge-shaped, or celled like a honeycomb." A powerful imagination has defied all symmetry. From the base to the summit the church is covered with colors, which are glaring, and even gaudy. This many-colored monster has the gift of stupefying the most hardened traveller. "You might take it," says Haxthausen, "for an immense dragon, with shining scales, crouching and asleep." Conceive the most brilliant bird of tropical forests suddenly taking the shape of a cathedral, and you have the Vasili-Blagennoï church.

It was not only architects that Russia owed to Italy. Fioraventi Aristotele coined money for Ivan the Third, built him a bridge of boats over the Volkhof during the expedition

to Novgorod, cast the cannons which thundered against Kazan, and organized his artillery. Paolo Bossio of Genoa cast for him the Tsarpushka, the king of guns, the giant piece of the Kreml. Pietro of Milan made him arquebuses. The art of the founder shed its greatest brilliancy under Boris Godunof, whose effigy adorns the monarch of bells, Tsar-kolokol, subsequently recast under Alexis and Anne Ivanovna, — the bronze Titan whose weight of two hundred and eighty-eight thousand pounds could be contained in no belfry, which broke every scaffolding, and rests voiceless like a pyramid of bronze on its pedestal of masonry, constructed in the beginning of this century by Montferrand.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### THE SUCCESSORS OF IVAN THE TERRIBLE: FEODOR IVANOVITCH AND BORIS GODUNOF.

1584 - 1605.

FEODOR IVANOVITCH (1584 - 1598). — THE PEASANT ATTACHED TO THE GLEBE. — THE PATRIARCHATE. — BORIS GODUNOF (1598 - 1605). — APPEARANCE OF THE FALSE DMITRI.

---

FEODOR IVANOVITCH. — THE PEASANT ATTACHED TO THE GLEBE. — THE PATRIARCHATE.

FEODOR, son of Ivan the Fourth and of Anastasia Romanof, was totally unlike his father. He had neither his instinctive love of cruelty and debauchery, nor his lively intelligence, nor his iron will. The throne of the Terrible came to be occupied by a saint, a monk. In the words of Ustrialof, "Feodor was distinguished for his excellent heart; he was of a sweet, philanthropic disposition and of boundless piety; he fulfilled with scrupulous fervor all the obligations of a perfect Christian, but he looked upon the world as simply frivolous, he avoided the onerous labors of government, and, though he had every virtue expected of a private citizen, he was a feeble monarch, especially in contrast to such an autocrat as Ivan the Terrible, and in the face of the troublous circumstances into which Russia was about to enter. His father, knowing his weakness, appointed for his aid an upper council of five distinguished nobles," — Prince Ivan Mstislavski, a descendant of Gedimin; Prince Ivan Shuiski, a descendant of Rurik, a member of a family disgraced in the early years of Ivan the

Fourth, but himself celebrated as the defender of Pskof; and Prince Bogdan Belski, another descendant of Rurik. After these three heads of princely families came two chiefs of boyar families. Both became sovereigns, and both owed their elevation to their wives. The importance of Nikita Romanof came from his sister, the first wife of Ivan the Fourth; Boris Godunof owed his to his sister Irena, wife of the Tsar Feodor. Minister of Ivan the Fourth, brother-in-law of the reigning Tsar, Godunof was devoured by an insatiable ambition. Sorcerers who had escaped from the persecutions of Ivan the Terrible are said to have prophesied that he should become Tsar, but that his reign was to last for only seven years. From that time his policy consisted in putting aside all rivals, in overcoming all the obstacles that lay between him and the throne.

The Tsar Feodor had a brother, Dmitri, son of Ivan's seventh wife. The council of boyars feared the intrigues of which this infant might be made the centre, and, by the advice of Godunof, sent him to his appanage Uglitch, with his mother and her relations, the Nagoïs. Prince Bogdan Belski, one of the five regents, an intelligent and ambitious man, irritated the people to such a degree that they besieged the Kreml, and demanded his head. Boris took advantage of such a good opportunity, and despatched this rival to Nijni-Novgorod. When Feodor, at his coronation, had placed on his head the crowns of Russia, Kazan, Astrakhan, and Siberia, it was his maternal uncle, Nikita Romanof, who governed in his name; but at his death the power passed naturally to Boris Godunof, who, by his relationship to the Tsar, was at the head of a new family clique. There still remained in the council two rivals to Boris. Mstislavski allowed himself to be implicated in a plot, and was forced to become a monk; Prince Shuïski, who had tried to make himself a party among the merchants, was accused of treason, arrested with his whole family, and all were banished to different distant towns. The



TSAR FEODOR



Metropolitan Dionysius, who had taken his part, was deposed, and replaced by Job, a man completely at the disposal of Godunof, who now was supreme. He induced his brother-in-law to grant him the title of Allied Chief Boyar, the vice-royalties of Kazan and Astrakhan, and immense territories on the Dwina and the Moskova. His revenues were enormous, and he is said to have been able to put a hundred thousand men in the field. Nothing could be obtained from the sovereign except through Boris; he was more powerful than ever Adashef had been, he had a whole army of clients. It was he who replied to the ambassadors, and who received the presents of the Emperor, of the Queen of England, and of the Khan of the Crimea. His enemies were treated as though they were the enemies of the prince. He lacked nothing that is royal but the title.

In foreign affairs, the regency of Godunof strengthened the prestige of Russia. Batory, King of Poland, who had never ceased to threaten revenge, died in fifteen hundred and eighty-six. A new danger appeared in this quarter. Sigismund, son of the King of Sweden, had schemed successfully for the suffrages of the Polish electors. It was to be feared that he would one day unite under the same sceptre the two nations which Russia had most cause to dread in Europe. Rodolph of Austria, the other candidate, was less dangerous. Austria and Russia had the same interests with regard to Turks and Tatars, and this identity was one day to result in the almost perpetual alliance between the two Powers. Boris put forward Feodor as a candidate for the crown of Poland, and the idea of the union of the two Slav monarchies under one prince. The Poles refused to obey any prince who was not a Catholic; they feared that, instead of a fraternal union, the Muscovite would only "join their monarchy to that of Moscow, like a sleeve to a coat." The interests of caste were added to national and religious prejudices; the nobles, who had in view only the weakening of the royal power, were not likely

to give themselves as master a sovereign as absolute as the Tsar of Muscovy. Finally, nothing could be done without money in the Polish Diets; Boris committed the mistake of sparing it. The negotiations fell to the ground, and the Prince of Sweden was elected.

The war with Sweden began again vigorously; Russia recaptured what had been taken from Ivan the Terrible, — Iam, Ivangorod, and Koporié. The Poles, who, since they had a Swedish king, did not care to augment the Swedish power, gave no assistance. Sigismund Vasa, on his father's death, in fifteen hundred and ninety-two, it is true, saw himself for a moment king of both countries; but his zeal for Catholicism, which made him dear to the Poles, caused him to be detested by the Swedes. The latter wished for a separate government, under the regency of Charles Vasa, and they soon after offered him the crown. This union, so much dreaded by the Russians, soon ended in a rupture. The Poles and Swedes had never before been such bitter enemies, and the hatred of the two peoples and the two religions was complicated still further by that of the two kings. The occasion was favorable for Russia to undertake the conquest of Livonia. Boris Godunof had never abandoned this great scheme of Ivan the Terrible, but he failed to take the proper means for realizing it. Instead of openly allying himself with Sweden against Poland, or with Poland against Sweden, he negotiated with both, tried to play off one against the other, and ended by alienating both equally. The former minister of Ivan the Terrible, the intriguing Grand Boyar, was too fond of hidden paths.

To clear his way to the throne, it was not sufficient for him to be master of the palace and the Court; he must create himself a strong party in the nation. Boris, who felt himself to be hated by the princes and boyars, sought the support of the small nobility and the clergy. Hence resulted two of the most important actions of the reign of Feodor, — the bind-

ing of the peasant to the soil, and the institution of the patriarchate.

The Russian peasant was in fact subjected to the will of his master. But in law he remained a free man, as he was allowed to pass from the service of one proprietor to that of another. This right brought with it an abuse. The large proprietors, who, being the richest, could also be the most generous, tried to attract to their lands the peasants of the smaller landowners, by insuring them privileges and immunities. We must remember that at this epoch the population was very scanty, and land had of itself no value. It was precious according to the number of laborers who could be induced to settle on it. Thus the lands of the smaller proprietors ran the risk of being depopulated for the benefit of the great lords; if they lost their laborers, the value of the land became proportionately depreciated. But the class of small landowners was at this period almost the only military class of Russia; the national cavalry was recruited almost entirely from it alone. If the source of their revenues were cut off, where would they get the money to equip themselves, to answer to the call of the Tsar, according to the text of the ordinances, "mounted, armed, and accompanied"? Their interest thus became confounded with that of the empire, which would soon become unable to support its armies. Boris Godunof found a way of saving the rights of the state, and at the same time gaining for himself the gratitude of a numerous and powerful class. The comfort of the peasant did not trouble any one at this epoch. He was an instrument of agriculture, a force, and nothing more. An edict of Feodor forbade the peasants henceforth to go from one estate to another. The free Russian peasant was now attached to the glebe, like the Western serf. In the name of the interest of the state and that of the military nobles, an immemorial right was extinguished. We must not think that these silent masses were insensible. Saint George's day, when, once a

year, the ancient laws permitted the peasant to pass from one domain to another, remained for centuries a day of bitter regret. He cursed for long the authors of this decree, and even protested when he had the opportunity; but his protestation took rather the form of flight than of revolt. The development of Cossack life has a close relation to the change in the rural régime; and the more men sought to bind the peasant to the soil, the more his spirit revolted, and the more the camps of the Don and the Dniester were filled. The Russian peasant never passively allowed the prescription of this new form of slavery to be established; in one way or another he has constantly resisted it. Boris Godunof afterwards partially repealed this ukas; while they were still forbidden to pass from the small to the great proprietor, they were allowed to change the service of one small landowner for that of another. The feeling of the time was not in favor of liberty; the more Russia tended to become a modern state, the more its expenses increased, and the more the government was conscious of the need of assuring the revenues by fixing to the soil the population which contributed money and performed statute labor. It was the crushed peasant who bore the weight of the reform, awaiting the day, still very distant, when he also would profit by the progress accomplished.

The other innovation made in the name of Feodor was the establishment of the patriarchate. The Russian ecclesiastics complained, with reason, of having to obey patriarchs who were themselves only slaves of the infidels. Ancient Rome was polluted by the Pope; Constantinople, the second Rome, was profaned by the Turk: had not Moscow, the third Rome, a right at least to independence? Boris encouraged these murmurs: it was his interest that at the death of the Tsar there should be a great ecclesiastical authority standing alone, and that this great authority should owe all to him. He profited by the arrival at Moscow of Jeremiah, Patriarch of Constantinople, to induce him to found the Russian patriarchate and

consecrate Archbishop Job, who was a tool of Boris. The latter had now a powerful friend.

Boris had need to create for himself a strong party. Many eyes began to turn towards Ivan's second son, Dmitri. His mother's kindred, the Nagoïs, from their exile at Uglitch, watched carefully all the variations in the health of the Tsar, and every movement of Boris. Feodor's death would give the throne to Dmitri, and power to his relatives, — power to avenge themselves for all that they had suffered. It would deliver Boris up to the reprisals of his enemies. He knew this only too well. In fifteen hundred and ninety-one it was suddenly announced that the young Dmitri had been slain. The story was that he was playing in the courtyard of his palace at Uglitch in open daylight with several of his young companions, when he was suddenly murdered by a son of Betiagovski who was superintendent of the palace, and in the pay of Boris. The sacristan of the cathedral, seeing the deed, gave the alarm; attendants appeared, and immediately put to death Betiagovski, his cousin and accomplice Katchalof, and others suspected. Public suspicion pointed to Boris as the real author of the deed. To stifle rumor he ordered an inquest, and his emissaries had the audacity to declare that the young prince cut his own throat in a fit of madness, and that the Nagoïs and the people of Uglitch had put to death innocent men as murderers. The result of the inquiry was that the dowager Tsaritsa was obliged to take the veil as a punishment for her carelessness, the Nagoïs were sent to different prisons, and the inhabitants of Uglitch were cruelly transported to the deserts of Siberia. Seven years after, the pious Feodor died, and in the person of this spiritless and virtuous sovereign the race of bloody and violent men of prey who had created Russia was extinguished. The dynasty of Andrei Bogoliubski had accomplished its mission; it had founded the Russian unity. The task of obtaining the entrance of this semi-Asiatic state into the society of civilized Europe was reserved for another dynasty.

## BORIS GODUNOF.—APPEARANCE OF THE FALSE DMITRI.

Boris Godunof reached the aim of his desires, — but at what a price! The murder of Dmitri, the last descendant of Saint Vladimir, of Monomakh, of Iuri and the Ivans, was no ordinary crime. Russia had seen many horrors, but never one like this. The Tsar might have put the Russian princes to death, but they were his enemies, they were often guilty, and then he was the Tsar. Now a simple boyar sacrificed to his own ambition the son of his benefactor, the heir of his master, the last descendant of the founders of Russia. It was one of those crimes which make a deep and lasting impression on the people. Boris vainly believed that he had buried all in the earth with the corpse of the Tsarévitch.

After the death of Feodor his widow Irena entered the Dievitchi monastery, and took the veil there, mourning her sterility, and lamenting that “by her the sovereign race had perished.” The nobles and the people took the oaths to her, so that there should be no interregnum. A woman had the crown at her disposal, and that woman was the sister of Godunof. As she refused to govern, the council had to take charge of affairs under the presidency of the Patriarch Job, who owed everything to Godunof. It was impossible that the throne should escape Boris; yet it seemed strange that a simple boyar, a creature of Ivan the Fourth, should take precedence of all the princes descended in direct line from Rurik. However, the Patriarch and his clergy, the boyars and citizens of Moscow, appeared before the Dievitchi monastery, in which Godunof had shut himself up with his sister. Job entreated him to accept the crown. Godunof refused, apparently from an excess of modesty; in reality, because he wished to receive it from the hands of the nation. The States-General were then assembled; the lesser nobility and the clergy, that is, the friends of Boris, formed the majority. After the despotism of Ivan, it was a strange sight to see this assembly dis-

pose of the crown. The Russia of Ivan the Terrible had, like Poland, its elective diet, but the lesson of obedience had been so well learned, that there was no fear of anarchy. They were told that Ivan the Fourth on his death-bed had confided to Boris his family and his empire, and that Feodor had put round his neck a chain of gold. Men made the most of the experience of government that he had acquired under two reigns; they boasted of his skilful dealings with Sweden, Poland, and the Crimea. The national voice decreed to him the crown, and the states sent him a deputation. He still feigned to hold back, and cast out "the tempters"; but his sister "blessed him for the throne," and thus consecrated the wish of the people. Boris reigned.

His reign was not without glory. He took up the designs of his master, Ivan the Fourth, on Livonia; and as the Terrible had his puppet king Magnus, Boris sought first a Swedish prince Gustaf, and then a Danish prince John, to play the part of King of Livonia. John was about to marry Xenia, daughter of the new Tsar, when he died suddenly. Denmark declared that he had been poisoned; and in the Russia of that date everything is conceivable. The Khan of the Crimea, who had vainly tried to make two incursions, and who had then a quarrel with the Turks, sought the friendship of Boris. Affairs in the Caucasus were in a less prosperous condition. Alexander, Prince of Kakhétia, who had acknowledged himself vassal of Boris, was assassinated, and succeeded by his son, who was on the side of Shah Abbas, King of Persia, and Islamism. In Daghestan a body of Russians sent to occupy the country were exterminated by the Turks. Russia had not yet approached near enough to the Black Sea to be able with assurance to take the field in those distant regions. In Siberia, Kutchum, the dethroned khan, was vanquished and driven far beyond the Irtysh; this battle decided the fate of Asian Siberia, though the two Russian voïevodui had only four hundred men, and Kutchum only five hun-

dred. The Russians took possession of many towns and built several important fortresses, and thus secured control of the country.

The firm rule of Boris gave confidence to the foreign governments which sought his friendship. The Powers of the West, especially Austria and England, continued to negotiate with him, and Sweden and Poland were in no condition to cause him injury. In sixteen hundred he sent Gregory Mikulin to Queen Elizabeth. "He had learned," says the Tsar's letter, "that the Queen had furnished help to the Turks against the Kaiser of Germany. We are astonished at it, as to act thus is not proper for Christian sovereigns; and you, our well-beloved sister, — you ought not for the future to enter into relationships of friendship with Mussulman princes, nor to help them in any way, whether by men or silver; but, on the contrary, should desire and insist that all the great Christian potentates should have a good understanding, union, and strong friendship, and make one against the Mussulmans, till the hand of the Christians rise, and that of the Mussulmans is abased."

Mikulin was received in London with great honors. In the audience given him by the Queen "she arose from her throne and advanced some distance" to listen to his compliments; after which she bowed her head and asked for news of the health of the Tsar, the Tsaritsa, Maria Gregorievna, and of the Tsarévitch Feodor Borisovitch. She received his credentials "with great joy," and, being seated, listened to Mikulin's message. She replied to the passage touching on her relations with Turkey by protestations of friendship and union with all the Christian princes, gave her hand to be kissed by the envoy and also by the secretary of the embassy, Ivan Zinovief, and sent them to talk over their affairs with Lord Robert Cecil. The commercial interests of the two peoples were guaranteed anew. During his visit to London, Mikulin was present at the revolt of sixteen hundred and one, led by

Essex, and saw the citizens rush through the streets armed with cuirasses and arquebuses to defend the Queen. He left London in May, sixteen hundred and one, and in his account he gives many curious details of the English Court at this epoch which was the most brilliant of Elizabeth's reign.

Boris surrounded himself with soldiers, learned men, and artists. With their help he raised monuments, built the tower of Ivan the Great in the Kreml, and had the Monarch of Bells cast. It was he who first sent young Russians to Lübeck, England, France, and Austria, to study European arts. The fashions of the West penetrated to Moscow, and some of the nobles began to shave their beards.

This prosperity was all unreal. His services, even his charities, turned against him. "He presented to the poor," says a contemporary, "in a vase of gold, the blood of the innocents. He fed them with unholy arms." When a dreadful famine, accompanied by pestilence, desolated Russia from sixteen hundred and one till sixteen hundred and four, Boris caused immense quantities of provisions and large sums of money to be distributed. Multitudes flocked to Moscow, and the misery was increased by the very concentration. Half a million people are said to have perished in the city; the dead lay by thousands in the streets. Parents devoured their own children, and cannibalism became rampant. The famine was attributed to the crimes of Boris Godunof. The oligarchic party, ashamed of obeying a simple boyar, were beginning to grow uneasy. After having pardoned his ancient rival Belski, Boris was obliged to throw him into prison. He acted with severity towards the Romanofs, who were exiled, many of them having been previously tortured. Feodor, the eldest, was forced to become a monk under the name of Philaret, and his wife took the veil under the name of Marfa. But from the son of this monk and this nun emperors were destined to spring.

Feeling himself surrounded by plots, Boris Godunof did not

hesitate to devise any means of security, and he received the denunciations of slaves against their masters. The peasants, driven to desperation by the famine, joined the servants of the disgraced nobles, and formed themselves into bands of brigands who infested the southern provinces, and even insulted the environs of Moscow. It was necessary to send a regular army against them. To these calamities was added the universal presentiment of others yet greater. The term of seven years assigned by the astrologers to the reign of Boris was approaching. The crime of Uglitch, still unexpiated, had left a strange uneasiness throughout Russia. Suddenly there arose a rumor that the murdered Dmitri was living, and with arms in his hands was making ready to assert his rights to the empire.

At the Monastery of the Miracle notice had been attracted to a young monk, Gregory Otrépief, who, after having for a long while wandered from convent to convent at his own pleasure, finally reached this monastery; and the Patriarch Job, discerning his intelligence, made him his secretary. In discharge of these functions he became acquainted with more than one state secret. "Do you know," he used to say to the other monks, "that I shall be one day Tsar of Moscow?" They spat in his face, and the Tsar Boris Godunof ordered him to be confined in the Monastery of the White Lake. He succeeded in escaping; again became a wandering monk, and, being well received at Novgorod-Severski, had the temerity to write to the inhabitants: "I am the Tsarévitch Dmitri, and I will not forget your kindness." Then he renounced his orders, enrolled himself among the Zaporoshtsui, and became a bold rider and a brave Cossack. He passed into the service of Adam Vishnevetski, a Polish noble; he fell ill, or feigned to do so, summoned a priest, and revealed to him, under the seal of the confessional, that he was the Tsarévitch Dmitri, who had escaped from the hands of the assassins at Uglitch, by another child being substituted and buried in his

place. He showed a cross, set with jewels, that hung round his neck, given him by Mstislavski, godfather of the Tsarévitch. The Jesuit did not dare to keep such a secret to himself. Otrépief was recognized by his master, Vishnevetski, as the son of Ivan the Terrible. Mnishek, voïevod of Sandomir, promised him his support and the hand of his daughter, Marina, who consented with joy to be Tsaritsa of Moscow. The strange news spread throughout the kingdom. The Pope's nuncio took the Tsarévitch under his protection, and presented him to King Sigismond. Were they really deceived? It is more probable that they saw in him a formidable instrument of agitation, which the king flattered himself he would be able to use against Russia, and the Jesuits against orthodoxy. Sigismond feared to take on himself the rupture of the truce he had concluded with Boris, and expose himself to Russian vengeance. He treated Otrépief as Tsarévitch, but only in private; he refused to put the royal troops at his disposal, but he authorized the nobles, who were touched by the prince's misfortune, to help him if they wished. The nobles did not need the royal authority; many of them, with the levity and love of adventure which characterized the Polish nobility, took up arms in favor of the Tsarévitch. Then Boris recognized, says Lévêque, that the weakest enemy can make a usurper tremble.

No revolution, even if it were the wisest and most necessary, could be accomplished without putting in motion the dregs of society, without the clashing of a mass of interests, and the gathering together of a multitude who are outcasts from all classes. The transformation which was then taking place in Russia for the formation of the modern united state, had engendered all these elements of disorder. The peasants, whom the laws of Boris had but recently attached to the glebe, were everywhere sullenly hostile. Many of them had escaped, and joined the bands of free Cossacks. The lesser nobility, for whose profit this law had been made, were

scarcely able to live on their lands; the Tsar's service had become ruinous, and many were inclined to supplement the insufficiency of their revenues by brigandage. The boyars and the great nobility were profoundly demoralized; they were ready for any treason. The warlike republics of the Cossacks of the Don and the Dnieper, the bands of serfs, of fugitive peasants, who infested the Russian territory, were waiting only for an opportunity to lay waste the country. The ignorance of the masses was profound, and their minds greedy of wonders and change; no other nation ever allowed itself to be deceived so often by the same fable, the sudden apparition of a prince who had been supposed to be dead. Adventures like those of Otrépief the false Dmitri, and of Pugatchef the false Peter the Third, could not have taken place in any other European country. These two adventurers rendered themselves particularly famous, but the secret archives show us that in the Russia of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries there were hundreds of impostors who falsely took the name of Dmitri, of Alexis, of Peter the Second, and of Peter the Third. We might almost think that the Russians, the most Asiatic of all European nations, had not renounced the Oriental dogma of re-incarnations and avatars. The government was powerless, in a country so utterly without communication, to put a stop to the most absurd rumors. Besides, the ignorant and superstitious masses were hostile to it, and delighted to allow themselves to be deceived. So many elements of rebellion required only to be set in motion by the hand of a skilful agitator. The entrance of the impostor into Russia was the signal of dissolution.

As long as the power lay in the hands of the clever and energetic Godunof, he was able to maintain order, to restrain the authors of revolt, and to discourage the false Dmitri. The Patriarch Job and Vasili Shuïski, who had conducted the inquest at Uglitch, made proclamations to the people affirming that Dmitri was really dead, and that the impostor was

none other than Otrépief. Similar declarations were sent to the King and the Diet of Poland. Finally, troops were put in marching order, and a line of communications established with the western frontier. But already the towns of Severia were revolting at the approach of the Tsarévitch, and the boyars publicly announced that it was hard to bear arms against their lawful sovereign. At Moscow the health of the Tsar Dmitri was drunk at feasts. In October, sixteen hundred and four, the impostor crossed the frontier with an army of Poles, Russians banished in the preceding reign, and German mercenaries. Severia at once rose, and Novgorod-Severski opened her gates to him. Prince Mstislavski tried to check his progress by a battle, but the soldiers were struck by the idea that the man whom they fought was the real Dmitri. "They had no hands to fight, but only feet to fly." Vasili Shuiski, Mstislavski's successor, did his best to rally their courage, and this time, in spite of his intrepidity, the impostor was defeated at Dobruinitchi. Boris believed the war finished; but in reality it had only begun. After Severia, the Ukraina rebelled, and four thousand Cossacks of the Don came to join the brigand. The inaction of the Muscovite voïevodui proved that the spirit of treason had already penetrated the nobility.

In sixteen hundred and five Boris died, commending his innocent son to the care of Basmanof, the boyars, the Patriarch, and the people of Moscow. But hardly had Basmanof taken the command of the army of Severia, than he understood that neither the soldiers nor the leaders were going to fight for a Godunof. Rather than be the victim of treason, he preferred being the author of it. The man in whom the dying Boris had placed all his confidence united with Galitsuin and Soltuikof, secret adherents of the impostor. He solemnly announced to the troops that Dmitri was in truth the son of Ivan the Terrible and the lawful master of Russia, and he was the first to throw himself at the feet of the Pretender, who

was at once proclaimed by the troops. Moscow followed the example of the army, and the result was that the whole people took oath to Dmitri, who marched from Putiol to the capitol, received everywhere with acclamations as the heir of Ivan the Terrible. Godunof's wife and his son Feodor were cruelly massacred. Such was the end of the dynasty which Boris had thought to found in the blood of a Tsarévitch !

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### THE TIME OF THE TROUBLES.

1605 - 1613.

MURDER OF THE FALSE DMITRI. — VASILI SHUIŖSKI. — THE BRIGAND OF TUSHINO. — VLADISLAS OF POLAND. — THE POLES AT THE KREML. — NATIONAL RISING. — MININ AND POJARSKI. — ELECTION OF MIKHAIL ROMANOF.

---

MURDER OF THE FALSE DMITRI. — VASILI SHUIŖSKI. — THE BRIGAND OF TUSHINO.

THE event that had taken place in Russia is one of the most extraordinary in the annals of the world. A runaway monk entered Moscow in triumph as the Tsar, among the joyful tears of the people, who thought they beheld a descendant of their long line of princes. Only one man had the courage to affirm that he had seen Dmitri assassinated, and that the new Tsar was an impostor. This was Vasili Shuiski, one of those who had directed the inquest at Uglitch, and who had defeated the Pretender at the battle of Dobruinitchi. Denounced by Basmanof, he was condemned to death by an assembly of the three orders, and his head was actually on the block, when he received a pardon from the Tsar. Men did not recognize the son of Ivan the Terrible in this act of clemency, and Otrépief had afterwards cause to repent of it. Job, the tool of Godunof, was replaced in the patriarchate by a favorite of the new prince, the Greek Ignatius. The Tsar had an interview with his pretended mother, Maria Nagoï, widow of Ivan the Fourth. Whether because she

wished to avenge her injuries, or merely to recover her honors, Maria recognized Otrépief as her son, and publicly embraced him. He loaded the Nagoïs, whom he regarded as his maternal relations, with favors ; the Romanofs were likewise recalled from exile, and Philaret made Metropolitan of Rostof.

The Tsar presided regularly at the council, where the boyars admired the clearness of his apprehension and the variety of his knowledge. As a monk he was a man of letters, and as a pupil of the Zaporoshtsui an accomplished horseman, bold and skilful in all bodily exercises. He was fond of foreigners, and even spoke of sending the Russian nobles to be educated in the West. This taste for strangers went hand in hand with openly expressed contempt for the national ignorance and grossness. He offended the boyars by his sarcastic raillery, and alienated the people and the clergy by his disdain of Russian customs and religious rites. He neglected to salute the images of the saints ; he ate veal, which was considered an unclean meat ; he dined without having the table blessed and sprinkled with holy water ; he often was impious enough to rise without washing his hands ; he never slept after dinner, but took that time to walk the streets almost unattended ; he borrowed money from the convents in order to pay his soldiers, turned the monks into ridicule, fought with bears ; he rode untamed horses at a furious speed, while it had always been the custom for the Tsar to ride slowly and with dignity ; he visited jewellers and foreign artisans familiarly ; and he took no heed of the severe Court etiquette. He pointed cannons with his own hand, organized sham fights between the national troops and the foreign mercenaries, was pleased to see the Russians beaten by the Germans, and surrounded himself by a European guard, with Margeret, Knutsen, and Van Dennen at its head. On his entry into Moscow a struggle took place between the clergy and the papal legate, and two bishops were exiled. He got no thanks for resist-

ing the Pope and the King of Poland, for declining to assist the former in the reconciliation of the two churches and refusing to cede to the latter an inch of Russian land. The arrival of his wife, the Catholic Marina Mnishek, with a suite of Polish gentlemen, who assumed an insolent demeanor towards the Russians, completed the irritation of the Muscovites. Less than thirty days after his entrance into the Kreml, men were ripe for a revolution.

Vasili Shuiski, who had been so magnanimously pardoned by Otrépief, was the head of the conspirators. The extreme confidence of the Tsar was his ruin. He felt that the soldiery were attached to him, and he felt secure against any movement on the part of the patient Russian populace. On the twenty-ninth of May, sixteen hundred and six, the boyars attacked the Kreml, which had been left guarded by only a small company of halberdiers. Otrépief, after a short resistance, in which he killed several of his assailants with his own hand, was thrown, or leaped, out of a window, and was stabbed in the court of the palace; Basmanof, who defended him, being killed by his side. They took the two corpses, and exposed them on the place of executions, with Otrépief's feet resting on Basmanof's breast. They threw over his face a ribald mask, said to have been found in the renegade's chamber in the place usually devoted to the holy images. A flute was thrust into his mouth, and a set of bagpipes was placed under his arms as a fitting mark for the Tsar who has disgraced his high position. Otrépief's widow and the Polish envoys sent to assist at the wedding narrowly escaped with their lives, and were kept prisoners by the boyars. To satisfy the popular superstition that he was a sort of vampire who would come to life again, the corpse of the heretic was burned, and a cannon was charged with his ashes, which were blown to the winds. Ustrialof thus speaks of the character of Otrépief: "He comprehended the immense greatness of Russia in comparison with the other European states, and since he was

the head of many tsardoms which had submitted to the Russian sceptre, not being satisfied with the title of Tsar he took the name of Emperor. He established the senate; he designed to give a better organization to the state; he formed a regular army; he began to care for the national education and the improvement of manners. He brought Russia into close relationship with Europe, and especially with France, whose king, Henry the Fourth, he seemed to appreciate better than did most of his contemporaries, and whose friendship he wished personally to gain. Finally, comprehending the real relations of Russia with the neighboring towns, he prepared vigorously for the campaign against the Turkish Sultan, as the enemy of the Christian faith, and consequently of the Russian fatherland, and for this purpose he employed his preponderating influence over the Khan of the Crimea and the other Tatar princes. But while he understood the necessities of the empire, he did not comprehend his own personal situation. He awoke against himself universal hatred, and the annals hint at unheard-of crimes, and call him by the name of bloodthirsty tyrant, renegade from the faith, and God-detested man."

It was now necessary to elect a new Tsar. Two candidates, two chiefs of princely families, presented themselves, — Vasili Shuïski and Vasili Galitsuin. Shuïski had signalized himself by his hatred of the usurper, had defeated him in battle, had been condemned by him to death, and had been foremost in the conspiracy. The boyars would have preferred assembling the States-General, as in fifteen hundred and ninety-eight, but Vasili would not await their decision. More impatient and less wise than Boris Godunof, he chose to owe his crown to the Muscovites alone, and not to the delegates of the whole nation. It was the original sin of the new administration. Vasili had on his side neither hereditary right, like the ancient Tsars, although he falsely claimed to be a descendant of Alexander Nevski, nor the vote of the three orders, like Boris.

His right to the throne thus remained open to doubt in times of the greatest disturbance. The Patriarch Ignatius, the nominee of the impostor, was replaced by Hermogenes, a prelate of undoubted orthodoxy, formerly Metropolitan of Kazan. Thus, at each change in the government, a corresponding change took place in the principal office of the Church.

On ascending the throne, Vasili swore a solemn oath to observe all the laws, to put no boyar to death without trial, not to confiscate the goods of criminals, and to chastise calumniators. True Russians felt profound sorrow when they saw the Tsar thus despoil himself of his sovereign rights, and alienate part of his autocratic power for the benefit of the boyars. He was entering, indeed, on the path of the *pacta conventa*, which, at every new election in Poland, deprived the king of some of his attributes, and led to the enfeebling of the crown, and the triumph of the aristocratic anarchy of the nobles.

The provinces were discontented at not being consulted in the choice of a sovereign. They heard almost at the same moment the news that Dmitri had regained the throne of his forefathers; then that Dmitri was an impostor, who had usurped the throne by the aid of the devil; finally, that a new Tsar was reigning over Russia. They did not know what to believe, or in whom to trust; everything seemed doubtful. The Russian conscience was greatly troubled, and, in the universal demoralization, adventurers found an easy road to success.

Vasili, who was fifty years old, wanted both energy and prestige. He had specially distinguished himself by his talents for intrigue, and even his partisans reproached him with avarice. The elements of disorder put in motion by the last two revolutions were not yet appeased. Neither ambitious boyars, nor felonious nobles, nor insurgent peasants, nor brigands, nor the Cossacks and Zaporoshtsui, nor the compa-

nies, nor the foreign mercenaries, were satisfied. In such a situation it was inevitable that a new impostor should take the place of the former, and again furnish the worst passions with an outlet. Instead of one, there were two pretenders: on one side a Cossack of Terek gave himself out to be the Tsarévitch Peter, a pretended son of the chaste Feodor; on the other, it was announced that Dmitri had, for the second time, escaped his murderers. The same transparent fable was always received with the same credulity, real or feigned. At Moscow the people recalled the fact that the face of the corpse exposed on the Red Place was covered with a mask. Some declared that the dead man had a beard, while Otrépief was known to be without one. Vasili tried in vain to disabuse the people; he was not more successful than Boris. Had not Boris overwhelmed the Muscovites and the King of Poland with evidence? At the head of the revolt in favor of the second false Dmitri was Prince Shakhovskoi, who had been a favorite with Otrépief and knew better than any one else the fact of his death. As voïevod of Putiol he sent letters throughout all southern Russia announcing the news of the safety of Ivan's son. Although more than a year elapsed before any one was found suitable to play the part of the Pretender, yet the letters had the desired effect. Severia and the turbulent cities of the South again rose; the discontented masses armed again for a new Otrépief against a new Godunof. In the South, a certain Bolotnikof, by birth a serf, belonging to Prince Teliatovski, called all the brigands, all fugitive slaves and peasants, to his standard, and began a servile war in the name of Dmitri. He began to march against Moscow, defeated two of the Tsar's voïevodui near Krom, and by his successes caused a revolt among the citizens of Riazan, where an army of nobles was organized, the principal leader of which was Prokopi Liapunof. On the banks of the Volga the Tatars and Finnish tribes, under pretext of sustaining the son of Ivan the Terrible, proclaimed their national

independence. The empire was menaced with total dissolution by the reaction of all the forces till then repressed by the strong hand of the Tsars.

The reappearance of the false Dmitri was announced throughout Russia. In reality no one had dared to take up this rôle; but the impostor was so absolutely necessary that he was everywhere recognized even before he existed. Bolotnikof and his peasants, by a second victory gained over the Tsar's army in front of the village of Troitska, opened the way to Moscow, threatened the capital, and agitated the lower classes. Under the very walls of the city he was joined by Prince Liapunof, and, establishing his camp in the village of Kolomenskoi, announced the fall of Shuiski. The Tsar seemed lost, when he was saved by the military talents of his nephew, Skopin Shuiski. Liapunof and two other noble leaders were disgusted with their popular allies, and afraid of them; they separated from Bolotnikof, offered to submit to the Tsar, and were received at Moscow with caresses. Bolotnikof, left alone, fell back on Tula, and was so closely pressed that he wrote to Mnishek that all was lost if he could not produce the false Dmitri. At last the man desired and expected by all the rebels appeared. His real name is undivulged; his origin is uncertain. He was by some said to be a Jew; others said he was the son of a priest, others still that he was a native of Sokol in White Russia; but he is mentioned only by the title of the "second false Dmitri." All we know of him is that he was a clever, intelligent man, tolerably educated, and very brutal. He came too late to save Tula. Bolotnikof was drowned, and the false Peter hanged.

Lisovski and Rojinski, two Polish nobles of great repute, soon came to the aid of the false Dmitri. The Zaporoshtsui and the Cossacks of the Don, under Zarutski, hastened to take part in the expected booty. It is a curious fact that there were in their ranks five or six impostors, who all gave themselves out as being sons or grandsons of Ivan the

Terrible. With all these forces the impostor marched on Moscow, defeated the detachments of the Tsar's army, and established himself twelve versts from the capital, at the village of Tushino. This encampment has remained celebrated in the history of the troubles; it has gained for this second impostor the surname of the brigand of Tushino, and for his Russian partisans the designation of Tushinists. Thus in face of the Tsar of Moscow — who owed his elevation to the Muscovites alone, and who hardly seemed the Tsar of Russia — stood the Tsar of Tushino. He, like his rival, had his Court, his army, his administration. He distributed titles and dignities; and, as evidence of profound popular degradation, an ambitious crowd was to be seen passing from one Court to the other, falling at the feet of both Tsars, receiving double pay, and, loaded with honors by Vasili, flying to Dmitri, to return again to Vasili. A nickname was invented to designate these refugees. They were called “birds of passage.”

While Tushino menaced and braved Moscow, Polish reinforcements flocked to the camp of the brigand, in spite of the promises and assurances of the perfidious Sigismund. The celebrated voievod, John Sapieha, came to join Lisovski, and they both tried to capture the Troïtsa monastery. This famous convent tempted them by its riches. With its ramparts and towers, it was a stronghold for the partisans of the Tsar; its monks were convinced that they knew how the country was to be saved, and did not cease to call all the neighboring cities to take up arms “for the faith and the Tsar.” These warlike monks, who were like the “Church militant” of the French league, — though they, to be sure, were defending at once the national and the orthodox cause, — repelled all the assaults of the Catholic adventurers. After a siege of sixteen months Sapieha had to acknowledge himself beaten. Abraham Palitsin, treasurer of the convent, has narrated the exploits of his brethren. Suzdal, Vladimir, Pereia-

slaf, Rostof, and eighteen other northern towns, not being able to decide which was the legitimate sovereign, opened their gates to the Tushinists. Shuiski was still disliked at Moscow, but they knew what they had to expect from the second false Dmitri. Honest people who dreaded the triumph of the brigand, and who saw no possible Tsar but Vasili, forced themselves to support him. What saved the capital was the bad discipline that reigned in the enemy's camp; new rebellions broke out against the rebel. Serfs and muzhiki threatened their masters and ravaged the country, and the brigand was forced to employ part of his forces to suppress this brigandage.

About this time the Tsar Shuiski turned for help to Sweden; he ceded the town of Karela to Charles the Ninth, contracted with him an offensive and defensive alliance against Poland, and received in return a body of five thousand Swedes, under the command of De la Gardie. With this reinforcement, Skopin Shuiski expelled the Tushinists from the cities of the North, advanced on Moscow, and obliged the brigand to evacuate Tushino. The perfidious policy of the Polish government, which armed the impostors against the Tsar and allowed their voievodui to attack a friendly country, amply justified Shuiski in seeking an ally in Sweden. But this foreign intervention gave rise to another: the King of Poland, affecting to think himself endangered by the Tsar's alliance with his worst enemy, decided to drop the mask and openly interfere. It was thus that under the most fatal auspices the long rivalry began between these two Slav nations, which statesmanship had once tried to unite under the same sceptre. Poland, governed by an instrument of the Jesuits, inflicted on Russia a frightful wrong. Sigismond disloyally affected zeal for a pretender whom he knew to be an impostor; he violated treaties and all the rights of nations, allowing Russia to be attacked by his armies all the while that he was asserting his peaceful disposition. His invasion of Russia filled up the

measure of his iniquities. This conduct necessarily left inefaceable memories in the hearts of the Russians.

By taking up arms Sigismond intended to assure to his son the throne of Russia, and restore to Poland the places she had lost in the fifteenth century. He besieged Smolensk, and wrote to announce to the inhabitants that he did not come to shed the blood of the Russians, but, on the contrary, to protect them; and that he was prepared to guarantee to them the maintenance of their worship and liberties. The people of Smolensk, who knew the ardor with which Sigismond persecuted orthodoxy in his own dominions, repelled all his advances, and the voïevod Sheïn made ready to defend the town to the last. Sigismond wrote from his camp at Smolensk to the Polish voïevodui who were serving under the impostor, with orders to abandon him. The Polish Tushinists obeyed with regret, complaining that the king would appropriate the reward of their toils; the Russian Tushinists, not knowing what to do, followed their allies, and, already accustomed to every sort of treason, made their submission to the king, and offered to recognize his son Vladislav as Tsar of Russia. At the head of these refugees were the boyar Mikhail Soltuikof and the currier Andronof.

Shuïski had now two enemies equally formidable, — the King of Poland and the false Dmitri, who, himself threatened by the ambition of his royal rival, had to retreat to the South. Vasili's nephew, Skopin, who had saved him by his victories, and won him popularity by his frank manners, died in the midst of his successes. The people then revived their old dislike of the Tsar, and accused him of poisoning his nephew. Another of the Shuïskis, the ambitious Dmitri, was also involved in the accusation. Dmitri Shuïski, as unpopular with the army as he was with the capital, was betrayed in battle by the foreign regiments, and this defeat completed Vasili's ruin. The people rose in Moscow; a great assembly of the populace and the boyars was held in the plains

of Serpukhof. The Tsar was "humbly requested" to vacate the throne, because he caused Christian blood to be shed, and was not successful in his government. The southern frontier towns also refused to obey him. Vasili Shuiski yielded, and abdicated; a short time afterwards he was forced to become a monk.

VLADISLAS OF POLAND. — THE POLES AT THE KREML.

Every one was obliged to take an oath of obedience to the council of boyars, who naturally seized the executive power during the interval before the election of a new Tsar. There were two candidates for the vacant throne, — Vladislas, son of the King of Poland, and the false Dmitri. But the latter was evidently an impostor. He ruled the upper and middle classes by terror alone, and had only the populace on his side. As they could not at once get rid of both the Poles and the brigand of Tushino, they chose the lesser of the two evils.

A Polish army, under the hetman Zolkiewski, had arrived at Mojaïsk: the impostor occupied Kolomenskoé. The boyars invited Zolkiewski to approach Moscow, and they began to negotiate. The hetman promised in the name of the young prince to maintain orthodoxy, the liberties and privileges of the orders, the partition of legislative power between the king and the council. No one was to be executed without a trial, nor deprived of his dignities without a reason; all Muscovites might go, if they wished, to be educated abroad. The Russians began to like the Polish system of the *pacta conventa*. The inhabitants of Moscow vowed fealty to the Tsar Vladislas. One point still remained to be decided: the Russians desired that Vladislas should embrace orthodoxy. Zolkiewski left the decision to the King of Poland. He induced the boyars to send ambassadors to Sigismond, and Prince Vasili Galitsuin and the Metropolitan Philaret Romanof immediately started for the camp at Smolensk. This terrible crisis seemed at the point of resulting in a way that was tolerably advantageous for

Russia. It was to have a foreign sovereign, but one already acquainted with Slav manners, and his being a foreigner was even a gage for the partisans of reforms and Western civilization. Poland and Russia, which might have united under Ivan and under Feodor, had another chance of doing so under a Polish prince. Such was the confidence of the boyars, that, finding the security of Moscow troubled by the neighborhood of the impostor, they proposed to Zolkiewski to enter into the town and even the Kreml. This unpatriotic resolution, dictated to the nobles by their mistrust of the lower classes, was to bring fatal consequences on Moscow. Zolkiewski wished to take his guaranties against the chiefs of the nation: Galitsuin and Philaret were already under Smolensk at the discretion of the king; he sent for the fallen Tsar also and his two brothers as hostages.

Sigismond meditated a new treachery against Russia. His object was to conquer Muscovy, not for his son, but for himself. He stipulated with the ambassadors that Smolensk should be ceded to Poland, but they courageously repelled this proposition. They demanded on their own part that Vladislav should leave immediately for Moscow, as being the only means for allaying the suspicions to which the conduct of the king had given rise. Sigismond refused. He wished to be Tsar himself. Since he had no hope of conquering the scruples of the two chief ambassadors, he addressed himself to their inferior colleagues. The Secretary Tomila, on being asked to open the gates of Smolensk, replied: "If I were to do it, not only would God and the Muscovites curse me, but the earth would open and swallow me. We are sent to negotiate in the interests of our country, not of ourselves." Not all the Russians showed this probity. The disgusting spectacle of the camp of Tushino was repeated at Smolensk. Men crowded round the king, as formerly around the brigand, to wring from him dignities, land, and money. Soltuikof, Mstislavski, and the currier Andronof especially distinguished them-

selves by their baseness. At Moscow the boyars denounced each other to the commandant of the Polish garrison. By the suggestion of Soltuikof they wrote to the king to beg him to make his entry into Moscow. The Patriarch Hermogenes refused to sign the letter, and the people, more patriotic than the boyars, supported the Patriarch. Some few nobles, like Andrei Galitsuin and Ivan Vorotinski, had the honor of being suspected by the Poles, and were arrested by Leo Sapieha, successor of Zolkiewski. By permitting the Poles to enter the towns, the oligarchs had put Russia in the power of the King of Poland.

About this time the second impostor died, assassinated by one of his private enemies. His death had important consequences. It healed misunderstandings, as, since the false Dmitri was dead, Sigismond had no longer any pretext for keeping his troops in Russia. The nobles had now no motive for distrusting the people, and could unite with them against the strangers. Whispers were heard in the streets of Moscow that it was necessary to combine against the Lithuanians. Soltuikof and Andronof denounced these generous intentions to the enemy. The Patriarch Hermogenes, suspected of patriotism, was thrown into prison, where he afterwards died of starvation. The provinces were agitated, and the inhabitants of Smolensk and Moscow wrote to all the towns entreating them not to accept the perfidious enemy of orthodoxy as their prince. The citizens did their part, the men-at-arms made their preparations for war, and Liapunof collected an army at Riazan. At his approach Moscow began to fill with reinforcements, and the Poles fortified the rampart of the Kreml. Suddenly a quarrel broke out between the people and the soldiers. In the first heat the Poles and Germans are said to have massacred seven thousand men; but resistance was organized in the streets of the Biélui-gorod, and the foreigners, repulsed by Prince Pojarski, had to intrench themselves in the Kreml and the Kitaï-gorod. To clear the neighborhood, the

Poles set fire to the neighboring streets. Moscow was almost entirely destroyed by the flames.

On hearing of the preparations of Liapunof and the revolt of Moscow, Sigismond caused the Muscovite ambassadors, Galitsuin and Philaret, to be arrested, and sent them prisoners to Marienburg, in Prussia. A short time afterwards Smolensk fell, after a resistance compared by the Poles themselves to that of Saguntum, though the king was not ashamed to torture the brave voïevod Sheïn, who had dared to resist him. He entered Warsaw in triumph, and the unhappy Vasili Shuïski, a Tsar of Russia, was dragged a prisoner through the streets in triumph. Liapunof was now reinforced by Prince Trubetskoï and Ivan Zarutski, at the head of the Cossacks of the Don. A hundred thousand men besieged the Poles, who were shut up in the Kreml, but the elements composing this large army were too conflicting and corrupt for the enterprise to succeed. The three leaders were mutually jealous of each other. Liapunof had committed more than one treason, Zarutski had been one of the first to declare for Otrépief, and the others were hardly more loyal. The soldiers of Liapunof hated the Cossacks, who on their part sought only occasions for pillage. The Poles managed to stir up the men of the Don, by inventing a pretended letter of Liapunof, saying, "Wherever you take them, slay them or drown them." A revolt broke out in the camp: Liapunof was assassinated, many of his adherents were murdered, and this great army was miserably dispersed.

Russia, a prey to civil war, as France in the sixteenth century was a prey to the wars of religion, suffered likewise from foreign intervention. In France, English and Spaniards watched the tides of party success, and profited by them all to gain some place or some province. Russia became the theatre of war for two rival powers, Catholic Poland and Lutheran Sweden. When Vladislav was proclaimed Tsar, Sweden considered itself offended, and acted as an enemy. De la Gardie took

the ports of the Baltic; and the boyars of Novgorod the Great, imitating those of Moscow, opened the gates to the foreigners. It was under the protection of Poland that the first two impostors had arisen in the west and south; under the protection of Sweden a third false Dmitri started up in the country of Pskof. Marina Mnishek on her side, who after the death of Otrépief had thrown herself into the arms of the brigand of Tushino, acknowledged the Cossack Zarutski as guardian of her son.

NATIONAL RISING.—MININ AND POJARSKI.—ELECTION OF MIKHAIL ROMANOF.

The situation of Russia, like that of France during the English wars, or the wars of the League, was frightful. The Tsar was prisoner, the Patriarch captive, the Swedes were at Novgorod the Great, the Poles at the Kreml, and the higher nobility bought by the strangers. Everywhere bands of brigands and highwaymen pillaged towns, tortured peasants, and desecrated churches. Famine increased: in certain districts men were driven to eat human flesh. This country, accustomed to be governed autocratically, had no longer any government. In its supreme need, who was to save Russia? It was the people, by a movement similar to that which in France produced Joan of Arc; it was the people, in the largest acceptation or the word, including the best of the nobility and the patriotic clergy. Already rumors of miracles showed the excitement that possessed all minds. At Nijni-Novgorod, at Vladimir, apparitions were seen. The monks of Troïtsa, with the superior Dionysius and treasurer-historian Palitsuin at their head, sent letters to all the Russian cities. The citizens of Kazan raised the distant Russia of the Kama. When the despatches from Troïtsa reached Nijni, and the protopope read them to the assembled people, a citizen of the town, the butcher Kozma Minin, rose and said, "If we wish to save the Muscovite Empire, we must spare neither our lands nor our goods; let us

sell our houses ; let us put our wives and children to service ; let us seek a man who will fight for the orthodox faith and lead us to battle." To give up all, and to take arms, such was the word that was handed round. Minin and others gave the third of their possessions ; one woman who had twelve thousand rubles gave ten thousand of them. Force was employed to make those contribute who hesitated. Minin accepted the office of treasurer of the insurrection only on condition that his fellow-citizens should place themselves absolutely at his discretion. A chief was necessary ; the people saw that he must be a noble. He took the title of The Elect of the Whole Muscovite Empire. Prince Dmitri Pojarski, still weak from wounds he had received in the revolt of Moscow, was at this time living at Starodub. Minin went to seek him, and besought him to take the command of the army. Their preparations then began, and they fasted and prayed. Russia was felt to be in a sinful condition ; so many oaths had been taken and violated, — to Godunof, to his son Feodor, to Otrépief, to Shuïski, to Vladislav. Three days of fast were commanded. Every one took part in it, even the infants at the breast. With the money collected they organized the streltsui and equipped the men-at-arms ; but they refused to admit those impure elements which had imperilled the national cause. They would have none of the help of Margeret, the mercenary who had perjured himself so many times, nor of the pillaging and murdering Cossacks. They remembered the assassination of Liapunof.

With the army marched the bishops and monks ; the holy images were borne at the head of the columns. This enthusiasm did not exclude political wisdom ; they wished at least to secure the support of Sweden against Poland, so they amused De la Gardie by negotiating for the election of a Swedish prince. When the troops had completely assembled at Iaroslavl, they marched on Moscow. The Cossacks of Zarutski and Trubetskoï were still encamped under its walls ;

but these two armies, though fighting for the same object, could not act together. An attempt to murder Pojarski had still more embittered the feelings of the army against the men of the Don. When, however, in August, sixteen hundred and twelve, the hetman Khotkiévitch tried to throw a detachment into Moscow, he was defeated on the left bank of the Moskova by Pojarski, on the right bank by the Cossacks. It is true that the latter, at the decisive moment, refused to fight; it needed the prayers of Abraham Palitsuin to bring them into line, and the intervention of Minin and his troops to decide the victory. The Polish garrison of the Kreml were then pressed so close that they were reduced to eat human flesh. They capitulated, on the twenty-second of October, on condition that they were to have their lives. They gave up their prisoners, among whom was young Mikhail Romanof.

The Kreml and the Kitai-gorod had just opened their gates, when the news came that Sigismond was advancing to the help of the Polish garrison. It was too late. At the news of these events he had to retrace his steps; the devotion of the people of Russia had freed their country. This year of sixteen hundred and twelve remained long in the memory of the nation; and when the invasion of eighteen hundred and twelve came to refresh their recollections, they raised on the Red Place a colossal monument to the two liberators, the butcher Minin and the Prince Pojarski.

Russia, once more its own master, could proceed freely to the election of a Tsar. A great National Assembly gathered at Moscow in sixteen hundred and thirteen. It was composed of the high ecclesiastical dignitaries, of delegates nominated by the nobles, by the men-at-arms, the merchants, the towns and districts. The delegates had to be furnished with special powers. It was agreed that no foreigner should be elected, neither Pole nor Swede. When it became a question of choosing among the Russians, scheming and rivalry commenced; but one name was pronounced which gained all the votes, that

of Mikhail Romanof. He was elected not for his own sake, for he was then only fifteen years old, but for that of his ancestors the Romanofs, and his father, the Metropolitan Philaret, then prisoner at Marienburg. The name of Romanof, of the kin of Ivan the Fourth, was the highest expression of the national feeling.

The new dynasty had better chances of stability than that of Godunof or that of Shuiski. There were no crimes with which to reproach it; it had its origin in a national movement, it dated from the liberation, and recalled only glorious memories. No phantom, no recollection, no regret of the past, stood before it. The house of Ivan the Terrible had been the cause or the occasion of too much suffering to Russia; the false Dmitris had stifled the regrets for the true. The accession of the Romanofs coincided with a powerful awakening of patriotism, with the passion for unity, with a universal longing for order and peace. Already they inspired the same devotion as the oldest dynasty. It is said that the Poles, on hearing of the election of Mikhail, sent armed men to seize him in Kostroma. A peasant, Ivan Sossanin, misled the Poles through deep woods in the darkness of the night, and died under their blows, in order to save his prince. This is the subject of the beautiful opera by Glinka, of "Life for the Tsar." The time of troubles had ended.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### THE ROMANOFFS: MIKHAIL FEODOROVITCH AND THE PATRIARCH PHILARET.

1613 - 1645.

RESTORATIVE MEASURES. — END OF THE POLISH WAR. — RELATIONS  
WITH EUROPE. — THE STATES-GENERAL.

---

RESTORATIVE MEASURES. — END OF THE POLISH WAR.

RUSSIA had at last a sovereign, but it was in the situation in which Henri the Fourth found France at his accession. The great civil and foreign war was finished, but it had left everywhere its evil traces. Henri the Fourth, when he became king, had been obliged to reconquer all his kingdom, province by province, town by town, half by arms and half by negotiations, to win it from chiefs of the bands, leaguers, great governors who had become independent, and foreigners. In the same way, in Russia, Zarutski, having tried in vain to raise the Don Cossacks, had seized upon Astrakhan, with Marina and the son she had borne to the brigand of Tushino; the polish partisan Lisovski was ravaging the country of the southwest; the Zaporozh Cossacks were infesting the regions of the Dwina: scarce a province but was a prey to some robber-band. To be sure, the Poles had been expelled from the Kreml as the Spaniards were expelled from reconquered Paris, but an offensive movement of the enemy might be expected; moreover, they still retained many places, notably the important town of Smolensk. Sweden had profited by

the state of Russia to lay hands on the cities of Karelia and on Novgorod the Great. In the interior of the country the towns and cities were in ruins, the population diminished and impoverished, and brigandage had become a universal plague. At the Court, the Russian lords had learned to disobey, and were not less turbulent than the Leaguers who surrounded Henri the Fourth. What Russia needed was a reign of restoration.

Mikhail Romanof had not the genius of the restorer of France. He was almost a child, and the boyars turned his authority against himself: the silent and bloody intrigues that Ivan the Fourth had restrained only by capital punishment broke forth again, and the ferocious depravity of the nobles was the shame of Russia. Quiet men and foreigners regretted Ivan the Terrible. "Oh that God would open the eyes of the Tsar as he opened those of Ivan!" wrote a Dutchman at this time; "otherwise Muscovy is lost." Happily the good-will of the nation was equal to every emergency. The day of the coronation the men-at-arms presented a request for pay, as their devastated fiefs no longer gave them any revenue. The Tsar and the clergy sent letters to the Russian towns to entreat them to help the state to pay the troops, and to aid it with men and money against the foes within and without. Zarutski was the first who was attacked. He had been defeated by the Tsar's army near Voronezh before he seized upon Astrakhan. Then he proclaimed Marina the rightful Tsaritsa, but the inhabitants, outraged by his barbarities, had revolted, and he was driven out of the city by Prince Odoevski, pursued by superior forces, and in July, sixteen hundred and fourteen, he was captured on the banks of the Iaik and sent to Moscow. Then he was condemned to be impaled; the three-year-old Ivan, son of the brigand of Tushino, in spite of his youth, was hung, and his mother, Marina the Pole, died in prison. By the punishment of Zarutski the turbulent Don was quieted; by the imprisonment of Marina an end was put to the claims

of all impostors. The Cossacks of the Don and Little Russia and the runaway serfs retired to their cities and villages. Order was restored in Southern Russia. By the advice of the clergy and the boyars the Tsar tried to negotiate with Baloven, another brigand chief, who, by way of answer, attacked Moscow, but was defeated and his band destroyed. The people of the Dwina themselves executed justice on the Zaporoshtsui. Lisovski was eagerly pursued by Pojarski, but this clever partisan outwitted all the efforts of the liberator. Peace with Poland had to be concluded before he could be quieted.

In sixteen hundred and fifteen a congress assembled beneath the walls of Smolensk, under the mediation of Erasmus Handelius, envoy of the Emperor of Germany. It was impossible to come to an understanding: the Poles refused to admit the election of Mikhail Romanof, and wished to recognize Vladislav as Tsar of Russia. "You might as well," said Handelius, "try to reconcile fire and water." The negotiations were broken off. With Sweden, however, they were more successful; here the mediators, England and Holland, showed more zeal and energy than the house of Austria had done. The troubles and the impoverished state of Muscovy reacted on their commerce. By pacifying the North, they hoped to reopen Russia to their merchants, and secure for themselves greater advantages.

In May, sixteen hundred and fourteen, Ushakof and Zaborovski had been sent to ask help from Holland in men and money. The Dutch gave them a thousand gulden, but said that they had themselves only lately ended a great war, that they could give the Tsar no substantial aid, but would do their utmost to induce the King of Sweden to make peace. Alexis Ziusin had been despatched to London in June, sixteen hundred and thirteen; he was ordered to narrate all the excesses committed by the Poles in Moscow, and to say to King James, "After the destruction of Moscow, the Lithuanians seized your merchants, — Mark the Englishman, and all the

others, — took away all their wares, subjected them to a rigorous imprisonment, and ended by massacring them.” If by chance he discovered that the English were aware that it was not the Poles, but the Cossacks and the lower classes who had put Mark to death and seized on the merchandise, he was to have other excuses ready. The Tsar entreated help in money to pay the men-at-arms, and not in soldiers, as he could give them no pay. They would think themselves happy if the King of England would send the Tsar money, provisions, powder, lead, sulphur, and other munitions, to the value of about one hundred thousand rubles ; but would content themselves with seventy thousand rubles’ worth, or, in case of absolute necessity, with fifty thousand. James received the envoy and his suite courteously, informed them that he was aware of the wrongs the Poles and the Swedes had inflicted on them, and ordered them three times in succession to cover themselves. The Russians declined to do this. “ When we see thy fraternal love and lively friendship for our sovereign, when we hear thy royal words which glorify our prince, and contemplate thine eyes thus close at hand, how can we, slaves as we are, put our hats on our heads at such a moment ? ” In August, sixteen hundred and fourteen, the year following this embassy, there appeared at Moscow John Merrick, who had long traded with the holy city, but who came this time as ambassador from James the First, qualified with full powers, as prince, knight, and gentleman of the bedchamber. In an interview with Prince Ivan Kurakin he began by demanding, on the part of the English merchants, a direct communication with India by the Obi, and with Persia by the Volga and Astrakhan. Kurakin alleged that this route was unsafe, that Astrakhan had only lately been delivered from Zarutski, and that numerous brigands still infested the Volga. When security should be established, they would open the question with King James. They then passed to the subject of mediation. John Merrick declared that the King of England had assembled his Parlia-

ment to consider the best means of helping the Tsar, but that the Parliament had as yet decided nothing, and that he had no instructions on this head. "But," said Kurakin, "can you not assure us that your sovereign will send us help in the spring?" "How can I guarantee it? The journey is long, and there is no way save that by Sweden. . . . I believe, however, he will give you aid." Merrick, having contented himself with causing the Russians to hope, returned to commercial matters: liberty of trade by the Obi and the Volga, concessions of iron and jet mines on the Sukhona, grants of territory about Vologda, for new establishments, and other concessions. The Russian boyars continued to expatiate on the difficulty of the situation, and John Merrick went to Novgorod to negotiate with the Swedes, where he was joined by the envoys of Holland. Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, had obtained some successes over the voïevodui, but he had not contented the Novgorodians, nor been able to take Pskof. The Kings of Denmark and Poland were his enemies, and he may have felt a presentiment of the splendid career that awaited him in Germany. He consented to open a congress, and in sixteen hundred and seventeen concluded with Russia the Peace of Stolbovo, by which he received an indemnity of twenty thousand rubles, equivalent to more than ten times as much at present valuation, and kept Ivangorod, Iam, Koporié, and Oréshek or Schlüsselburg, but ceded Novgorod, Rusa, Ladoga, and some smaller places.

Russia was now able to concentrate all its forces against its worst enemy, the instigator of all its troubles. Before the conclusion of the treaty of Stolbovo, the diet of Warsaw, at the urgent entreaty of Sigismond, had determined to send an army against Russia for the purpose of establishing Vladislas on the throne of Moscow by force of arms. Vladislas in person took the chief command of the Polish forces, with the hope of attracting the fidelity of the Russians from their legal sovereign. Dorogobuzh and Viazma were surrendered by the

treachery or weakness of their voïevodui; but Mojaïsk and Kaluga, the latter defended by Pojarski, resisted and arrested the progress of the enemy. Vladislas, who had all the instincts of a soldier, resolved in sixteen hundred and eighteen to march on Moscow. Mikhail Romanof, like Ivan the Terrible, dreaded treason more than the arms of the enemy, and determined to exact a new oath of allegiance from his subjects. He assembled the Estates, and informed them that he was ready once more to suffer hunger in besieged Moscow, and to fight Lithuania, but he asked in return that the nobles should do as much for him, and that they should resist the seductions of the king's son. Every one made the required promise, and fresh letters went out from Moscow, calling all the towns to a holy war. Vladislas, however, had stopped at Tushino, where the hetman of Little Russia, after having ravaged the frontiers of the southwest, had joined him with his Cossacks. The days of the second impostor and of Tushinism seemed to have come back. The Poles, having been defeated in an attack on Moscow, proposed a congress, which met in December, sixteen hundred and eighteen, at the village of Deulino, not far from the Troïtsa monastery, which during this campaign had been forced to withstand another siege. A truce of fourteen years and six months was agreed on. The terms of the treaty were, that all hostile operations should cease; that Vladislas should renounce his claim to the title of Tsar, and Mikhail his claim to Livonia, Tchernigof, and Smolensk, which, together with Severia, were ceded to Poland. Such a peace was only an armistice; there was, however, an exchange of prisoners: the brave voïevod Sheïn and the Metropolitan Philaret, who had been a captive nine years, returned to Russia, and the latter was at once made Patriarch.

By the return of his father the young Tsar obtained the counsellor his inexperience had hitherto needed, and even more than a counsellor, — a colleague, and almost a master. Philaret was in some sort associated with the throne. The

empire had two chief nobles, two sovereigns, the Tsar of all the Russias and the Patriarch of all the Russias. They figured together in all public acts, and together received the reports of the boyars and foreign ambassadors. It was time that a master was given to the boyars. The Soltuikofs, Mikhail's favorites, had distributed the empire among their partisans, and plundered the treasury and the nation. They were charged with having falsely accused Mikhail's first bride, who was expelled from the palace, and with having poisoned the second. This was a common practice with the nobles of Muscovy, those who were in favor fearing a new Tsaritsa above everything. They shrank from no means of removing her from their path; and their reputation on this head was so firmly established that the King of Denmark had refused Mikhail the hand of his niece, because, "in the reign of Boris Godunof, his brother, the betrothed of the Princess Xenia, had been poisoned; and this would also be the fate of this young girl." Philaret made the boyars feel the weight of the Tsar's hand, and exiled the most guilty.

#### RELATIONS WITH EUROPE. — THE STATES-GENERAL.

Russia had begun at last to be a European nation. Its political or commercial alliance was sought from all quarters. Gustavus Adolphus, who was making preparations to play his part as the champion of Protestantism in Germany, wished to assure himself of the friendship of Russia against Poland. He represented to Mikhail, with much truth, that the Catholic League of the Pope, the King of Poland, and the house of Hapsburg were as dangerous to Russia as to Sweden; that if Protestantism succumbed the turn of orthodoxy would follow, and that the Swedish army was the outpost of Russian security. "When your neighbor's house is on fire," writes the King, "you must bring water and try to extinguish it, to guarantee your own safety. I beg your Tsarian majesty to help your neighbors in order to protect yourself." The terrible events

of late years had only too well justified these remarks. The intrigues of the Jesuits with the false Dmitri, and the burning of Moscow by the Poles, were always present to the memory of the Russians. A treaty of peace and commerce was concluded with Sweden, and a Swedish ambassador appeared at the Court.

England had rendered more than one service to Russia. In her pressing need James the First had lent her twenty thousand rubles, and British mediation had led to the Peace of Stolbovo. John Merrick considered he had the right to demand that Russia should open to English commerce the route to Persia by the Volga, and to Hindostan by Siberia. The Tsar consulted the merchants of Moscow. They unanimously replied that such a concession would be their ruin, for they could never hope to rival the wealthier and more enterprising English. They were, however, ready to sacrifice their interests to those of the empire, if the dues paid by the foreigners were essential to the treasury. John Merrick declined to pay any dues, and the negotiation was broken off. They paid him, however, the twenty thousand rubles, as he assured them the King had need of them for the help of his son-in-law, the Elector Palatine.

In sixteen hundred and fifteen the Tsar sent an envoy into France, to announce to Louis the Thirteenth his accession to the throne, and to ask his aid against Poland and Sweden. In sixteen hundred and twenty-nine there appeared at Moscow the ambassador Duguay-Cormenin, who was commissioned to solicit for French commerce what had been refused to English trade, — free passage into Persia. He also spoke of a political alliance. "His Tsarian majesty," he said, "is the head of Eastern countries and the orthodox faith; Louis, King of France, is the head of Southern countries; and the Tsar, by contracting a friendship and alliance with him, will get the better of his enemies. As the Emperor is closely allied to the King of Poland, the Tsar must be allied to the King of

France. These two princes are everywhere glorious ; they have no equals either in strength or power ; their subjects obey them blindly, while the English and the men of Brabant are obedient only when they choose. The latter buy their wares in Spain, and sell them to the Russians at a high price, but the French will furnish them with everything at a reasonable rate." This negotiation for the first Franco-Russian treaty spoken of in history had no result. As to the route to Persia, it was refused by the boyars, who said that the French might buy the Persian merchandise from the Russians.

Another ally against Poland offered itself to Muscovy. The Sultan Osman sent to Moscow the Prince Thomas Cantacuzen, to announce that Turkey had already declared war against the king. The Russians asked no more than to help him, and Philaret and Mikhail assembled the States-General. The deputies "beat their foreheads" to the sovereigns, beseeching them to "hold themselves firm against the enemy for the holy churches of God, for their Tsarian honor, and for their own country. The men-at-arms were ready to fight, and the merchants to give money." The troops were already assembling when news was received that Turkey had been defeated, and war was postponed. The preparations had revealed certain faults existing in the national army, and it was decided to enlist foreign mercenaries, and instruct the native soldiers in Western tactics. Orders were accordingly given to buy arms, and to attract into Russia gun-founders and artillerymen. The Russia of Mikhail and Philaret already announced the Russia of Peter the Great ; the era of reform had begun. Each day Muscovy strengthened itself against its European enemies, by turning against them the weapon of their own civilization.

Russia remained quiet for eight years. In sixteen hundred and thirty-two Sigismund the Third died, and the Elective Diet assembled at Warsaw. Mikhail was determined not to let this opportunity slip, and the second war with Poland began. It did not turn out as well as had been hoped. The

vices of the old organization and institutions showed themselves anew. The two voïevodui commanding the army suddenly became possessed with the old mania of disputing precedence. They were deprived of their command, and replaced by Sheïn and Ismailof, who crossed the frontier with thirty-two thousand men and one hundred and fifty-eight guns. Twenty-three towns surrendered to the Muscovites, but Smolensk held out for eight months, and, just as it showed signs of capitulating, the Polish army under Vladislas, now King of Poland, made its appearance. On the rumor of a Tatar invasion in the south, part of the Russian nobles at once hastened to the defence of their own lands, and Sheïn, thus enfeebled, was attacked by the king, and cut off from communications. Famine obliged him to surrender in the open field, and he obtained leave to retreat, though forced to abandon both his baggage and his artillery. His only fault lay in not understanding as well as his Western adversaries the strategy of modern warfare. He was guilty only of being a Russian of unreformed Russia. His enemies, however, accused him of treason in a council of war, and he was condemned with his colleague to be beheaded. Philaret was no longer there to force the boyars to live at peace with each other. He died in sixteen hundred and thirty-three. Vladislas, successful at Smolensk, was defeated at Bielaïa, and a congress was held on the Polianka. The conditions of the truce of Deulino were confirmed. The Russians paid twenty thousand rubles, and Vladislas renounced all claim to the throne of Moscow, and recognized for the first time the right of the Grand Princes to the title of Tsar.

Shortly after there arose a new occasion for war. In spite of the treaties of peace concluded by Poland and Russia with Turkey, the Cossacks of the Dnieper, who were subjects of Poland, and the Cossacks of the Don, who were subjects of Russia, still continued to fight against Islam. To them, besides being a holy war, it was the means of procuring frocks

or wide trousers of a beautiful scarlet cloth. Determined partisans and pirates, both on land and sea, they were thorns in the sides of the Khan of the Crimea and the Grand Turk, attacking with their light boats the heavy Ottoman galleys, and insulting the coasts of the Bosphorus and Anatolia. They were disavowed by their respective governments, and were the subjects of perpetual recrimination between the Porte and the two Slav states. They were the brigands and corsairs of Christianity, as the Tatars were of Islamism.

In sixteen hundred and twenty-seven, four thousand four hundred Cossacks of the Don, aided by one thousand Zaporoshtsui of the Dnieper, surprised Azof, and offered to make a gift of it to the Tsar of Moscow. The acquisition of such an important place, which would secure the command of the mouth of the Don and access to the Black Sea, was very tempting to Russia. Again Mikhail Romanof assembled his Estates. We must observe that since Ivan the Fourth first assembled them the meetings had become more and more frequent. The parliamentary history of Russia dates from the reign of "the Terrible." This time the nobles declared themselves ready to fight if they had money given them for their equipment, and begged the Tsar to exact it from the clergy and merchants. The latter alleged that the robberies of the public functionaries, the prolongation of the wars, and the rivalry with the Germans and Persians, had ruined them. The officers sent by the Tsar to Azof reported that it was in too bad a state for defence. In fact, the conquest of Azof, like that of the Crimea in the time of Ivan, was premature, Russian colonization not having as yet extended itself sufficiently towards the South. The Tsar gave orders accordingly to the Don Cossacks for its evacuation, and they did not leave one stone upon another.

Western influence made considerable progress during this reign. The merchants entreated that access into the interior might be forbidden to those strangers whose rivalry was their

ruin ; but the latter were, on the contrary, so necessary to the state and to the general progress that they had to be invited into the country by all possible means. Under Mikhail, more foreigners than ever came into Russia. Vinius the Dutchman established foundries at Tula for guns, bullets, and other iron weapons. Marselein the German opened similar ones on the Vaga, the Kostroma, and the Sheksna. Privileges were granted to other foreign merchants or artisans, and the only condition imposed on them was not to conceal the secrets of their industries from the inhabitants of the countries. This is another point of resemblance between this reign of reform and that of Henri the Fourth, who also summoned to his kingdom Flemish, English, and Venetian artisans. One European import did not, however, find favor in Russia, — the use of tobacco was forbidden, and snuff-takers had their noses cut off.

Learned men were also sought from Europe. Adam Olearius of Holstein, a celebrated astronomer, geographer, and geometer, was invited to Moscow. Already the Academy of Sciences of Peter the Great was foreshadowed. A cosmographical treatise was translated from Latin into Russian. The Patriarch Philaret had established at Moscow an academy where Greek and Latin, the languages of the Renaissance, were taught. The Archimandrite Dionysius of Troïtsa, who had distinguished himself in the struggle with the Poles, undertook to correct the text of the Slavonian books, — a hazardous enterprise, which cost Dionysius himself a short period of persecution. Native historians continued to re-edit their chronicles, and Abraham Palitsui, cellarer of Troïtsa, narrated the famous siege of the convent.

## CHAPTER XX.

### WESTERN RUSSIA IN THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

1569 - 1645.

THE POLITICAL UNION OF LUBLIN (1569) AND THE RELIGIOUS UNION (1595). — COMPLAINTS OF WHITE RUSSIA. — RISINGS IN LITTLE RUSSIA.

---

#### POLITICAL UNION OF LUBLIN AND THE RELIGIOUS UNION.

SPAIN in the sixteenth century had taken a large share in the troubles of France ; France in the seventeenth century dismembered the Spanish Empire. In like manner Poland expiated the part it had played in the civil wars of Russia. After the reforming reign of Mikhail Romanof, his son Alexis was to inaugurate the era of reprisals. Russia had almost fallen before Poland, like France before Burgundy or Austria, but it now grew strong at Poland's expense, and on the ruins of Poland its own greatness was to be founded. A glance at the constitution of the Polish Empire will show us what internal difficulties prepared the way for the external enemy, — the Muscovite, the *Moskal*, as he was called by the men of the West.

White Russia and Little Russia had been conquered by the Lithuanians, and formed with them part of the Polo-Lithuanian state. They kept, however, for a long time their Russian manners and habits. The Russian language was used in the acts of legislation till the sixteenth, and even till the seventeenth century. For a short time, under the early Iagellons,

it had even been the language of the Court. Soon, however, Polish influence predominated in the ruling class. The Russo-Lithuanian nobility were divided, like the Polish nobility, into the magnates, who possessed large territories and occupied the high offices, and the lesser nobles, who formed the retainers and almost the servants of the magnates. The military class assembled in the diets and diétines. The king's officers bore the titles of voïevod, castellan, and starosta. The Russo-Lithuanian towns, like those of Poland, received what was called "the law of Magdeburg." They were governed by a bailiff of the king, who administered justice, assisted by the burgomaster and by counsellors. The trading classes organized themselves, after the German fashion, into unions or corporations.

Up to that time Russo-Lithuania and Poland had formed two states, distinct in law; and at the extinction of the Jagellons, who had always maintained them in a personal union, it was feared they would again separate. Ivan the Fourth founded great hopes on this expected separation, but the Poles in the reign of Sigismond made a great effort to accomplish a definite union. A diet was held at Lublin. The Russo-Lithuanian aristocracy were much averse to the union; difference of religion, national pride, and interests arising from separate existence, created a barrier between them and Poland. The government shrank from no means of overcoming their resistance. It threatened not to defend Lithuania against the incursions of the Tsar, and to resume the Crown lands held by the refractory nobles. In spite of all these efforts, the Polish party were almost checkmated; rather than yield, the Lithuanian deputies left the diet in a body. At last the king contrived to gain two of the most influential members, — Konstantin Ostrojski, voïevod of Kief, and Alexander Tchar-toruiski, voïevod of Volhynia. Nikolai Radzivil, who had so long held the Polish tendencies in check, and who was the last representative of independent Lithuania, was dead. The

king managed also to win over the Little Russian nobility, who were less hostile to Catholic Poland than the Protestant nobility of Lithuania. The Union of Lublin provided that the two crowns should be united on the same head, with equal rights; that there should be only one general diet and one senate; that they should sit at Warsaw, a Mazovian town, which was to become the capital of the new state; and that Poland and Lithuania should preserve each its great dignitaries, — chancellor, vice-chancellor, marshals, and hetmans, — each its own army and laws. The Russian countries, properly so called, underwent a fresh dismemberment. Little Russia was specially united to Poland.

The natural result of the Union of Lublin was the growth of Polish influence in the Russian territory. On one side, the Polish nobles had obtained the right of acquiring lands and holding offices in Lithuania; on the other, the Russian nobility, by mingling more completely with the nobility of the neighboring country, adopted its ideas, habits, fashions, and even its language. It began to be Polonized, thus widening the breach that separated it from the masses of the people, who were profoundly attached to their tongue and their nationality. The division between the aristocracy and the people increased still further, when the nobility of the Russian territory became more and more permeated with Roman Catholicism.

A special article of the Union of Lublin insured respect to the orthodox religion. Poland and Lithuania had not, however, been able to escape from the great religious struggles which at that time were dividing Western Europe, the effects of which were felt even in Poland. A certain number of lords had embraced Protestantism, in such forms as Lutheranism, Calvinism, and Socinianism. The Jesuits, who were everywhere at the head of the reaction against reform, and whose hand may be traced in all the civil wars of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, soon made their appearance in Poland.

Protestantism had taken only a feeble root in the country, consequently it did not occupy them long ; they then turned their attention to orthodoxy, the real national religion of the Russo-Lithuanian provinces. They employed the same means by which they had hitherto succeeded everywhere in Europe : they founded colleges, obtained a hold on the young people, insinuated themselves into the confidence of the women, gained the ear of the kings, and made far greater use of their cleverness in worldly matters than of the purely ecclesiastical means of preaching, confession, and pilgrimages. The brave Batory, who specially occupied himself with all that concerned the public peace and national greatness, kept them at a distance. They found a monarch more to their taste in Sigismond the Third, a feeble copy of the Philips of Spain and the Ferdinands of Austria, and well fitted to draw on the East the calamities that desolated Germany and the West. He protected the Jesuits, and exhausted all the influence and seductions that the throne put at his disposal, to convert the orthodox nobility of his Oriental provinces to Catholicism. In order to enlarge the field of conversions, the Jesuits invented a compromise, which was to obtain from the Russian clergy and people their submission to the Holy See, while their Slavonic liturgy and special usages were guaranteed them ; this is what is called the Union of the two Churches. In fact, the union once obtained, they thought it but a step to unity, and even uniformity. Peter Skarga the Jesuit, who published the book of "The Unity of the Church of God," wished to exclude the teaching of Slavonic, and admit only that of Greek and Latin. In order to make their plan more easily accepted by government, they represented to it that the effect of their religious union would be to strengthen the political union of Lublin, and that a true Polish Estate would not exist till all the subjects held the same faith as their prince.

At first, when orthodoxy was menaced by the King of Poland, it found a powerful support in the Russian princes, the

descendants of Rurik and Gedimin. We have seen Prince Kurbski in the time of Ivan the Fourth, and later, Konstantin Ostrojski, defending the faith of their fathers by pen, word, and influence, and translating, compiling, and disseminating books in favor of orthodoxy. Little by little, however, the nobles yielded to the influence of the Court, and in their struggle with the Roman religion the people saw themselves abandoned almost entirely by their natural chiefs, and even by their bishops. The king filled the Lithuanian sees with prelates who were great princes, wholly indifferent to theological questions, and proud of their immense riches, of their numerous villages, and their strong castles bristling with artillery. Still the people did not give up all hope. From Novgorod the Great, from Pskof, from Germany, the principle of association had spread widely among the cities of Western Russia. Societies were formed for mutual assistance, which had their roots in the most distant Slavonic, German, or Scandinavian past; they were at the same time religious confraternities, and took an energetic part in the strife with the Jesuits. They had their elected chiefs, their common treasury, and they began to found schools, to establish printing-presses, and to disseminate polemical and pious books. They entered into friendly relations with each other, and formed ties with the patriarchs of the East; they used the power of a democracy in opposition to the bishops appointed by the king, keeping a strict watch upon them, reprimanding them and denouncing to orthodox Christendom the carelessness of their manners and religion. The most celebrated of these confraternities were those of Lemberg in Gallicia, of Vilna in Lithuania, of Lutsk in Volhynia. The one in Kief founded the great ecclesiastical academy of Little Russia.

Under the stimulus of these popular societies the orthodox bishops could not long remain in a state of indifference. They were obliged to take their position at the head of the orthodox believers or pass over to the ranks of the enemy. Conse-

quently they were in a very difficult situation ; by remaining orthodox they incurred the disgrace of the government, and at the same time they were harassed by their factious orthodox agitators on account of their lack of fervor.

In fifteen hundred and eighty-nine Jeremiah, Patriarch of Constantinople, visited Western Russia on his return from Moscow. The laity were not slow in bringing before him loud complaints about the disorders caused in the church by the misdemeanors and indifference of the bishops. In deference to these complaints, the Patriarch removed the chief prelate, Onisephoras, Metropolitan of Kief, and at the recommendation of the laity consecrated Mikhail Ragoza in his stead. Mikhail was in reality a man of irreproachable life, but weak, lacking character, and incapable of filling the chief place in such stormy times. The most active, shrewd, witty, and learned prelate of Western Russia at this period was Kirill Terletski, Bishop of Lutsk, but he was rather an able steward of the church domains than a priest. In his mode of living, in his habit of capricious violence and brutal expedients, he resembled a temporal lord of those days rather than a Christian bishop. Nevertheless, the Patriarch appointed Terletski his exarch or deputy, with the duty of superintending the bishops and removing those who proved themselves unworthy. This duty, which was transferred from the Metropolitan, diminished Ragoza's importance, and made him feel great displeasure at the Patriarch. Thus, instead of order being restored, fresh elements of disorder were brought into the church. The Metropolitan was annoyed at the foundation of the exarchy in Terletski's interest ; Terletski was annoyed because, notwithstanding his office of deputy, he did not enjoy the full confidence of the Patriarch, who received the complaints of the other prelates against him. Finally, Terletski was engaged in a quarrel with the chief pillar of orthodoxy, Prince Konstantin Ostrojski, and at the same time was exposed to a violent persecution from the Catholic party, headed by

the bailiff of Lutsk, who had lately been converted. Terletski was taken, imprisoned, and reduced almost to starvation in his dungeon. He complained, but no heed was paid to an orthodox bishop. Then Terletski and certain other prelates resolved to free themselves from trouble both from within and without, and thus escape all humiliation, disarm the Catholics, and enjoy the revenues of their bishoprics in peace. This freedom could be obtained in only one way, — a way long pointed out by the Jesuits; it was to join the Union. The bishops wrote a letter to King Sigismond the Third, in which they consented to submit to the Church of Rome on condition that the Russian Church should preserve in its integrity all its rites and ceremonies and its service in the Slavonic tongue. Sigismond received these first defections with joy. Terletski soon gained a powerful ally in Ipatî Potieï, who had been Castellán of Brest, and was now Bishop of Vladimir-in-Volhynia. Potieï showed himself a great ascetic, was devoted to temperance and fasting, was rigorously watchful over the church interests, and kept himself aloof from the vanities of the world; but he was very ignorant of ecclesiastical duties, indifferent to the questions which divided the churches, and so easily inclined to the Union that the friends of orthodoxy, and especially Prince Ostrojski, desired to forestall his defection by a union among the Eastern churches. Potieï felt this to be impracticable, and joined Terletski in the furtherance of his plans. They laid their design before the Metropolitan Mikhail Ragoza. With his usual weakness of character, he began to balance advantages; on the one hand, he feared his opposition would irritate the king; on the other, he feared the anger of the orthodox and the indignation of the prelates if he, without their knowledge, entered the Union; consequently, he began to play a double game. All the time that he was pretending to be in sympathy with the king's plans, and had even accepted from Terletski and Potieï the promise of preferment in the United Church, he was writing to the orthodox lords and

confraternities that he did not approve of the Union, and did not take any part in it. He deceived Terletski and Potieï by not joining them at the time appointed for deliberation. But it was impossible for him long to play his double game. Prince Ostrojski sent a circular to all the orthodox, in which he attacked in vigorous terms the Metropolitan and the bishops, accusing them of their apostasy.

In fifteen hundred and ninety-five Terletski and Potieï left for Rome, and there, on the part of the Metropolitan and their brethren the bishops, they placed the Russian Church at the feet of Clement the Eighth. The Pope celebrated this success by pompous solemnities; but the projected union could not be realized without the consent of all the Russian bishops, of whom only three, the Metropolitan and the two Volhynians, were as yet gained over. Balaban, Bishop of Lemberg, who, although he was having a scandalous conflict with the confraternity, had not sacrificed the national cause to his private enmity, remained with Konstantin Ostrojski, the soul of orthodoxy. At Warsaw, in the diet of fifteen hundred and ninety-six, Ostrojski and other deputies demanded the removal of the bishops who had deserted the Orthodox Church, and without authority surrendered it to the Church of Rome. Finally, in October, a council was held at Brest, in Lithuania, under the presidency of Nikephoros, envoy of the Patriarch of Constantinople. Three times the dissidents were summoned, but they refused to attend. Then the bishops formulated the sentence of excommunication and deposition. The Uniates hastened to retaliate by publishing an anathema against those who clung to orthodoxy, but their attempt in favor of the cause of Rome failed piteously. The people everywhere declared against them. At Vilna Bishop Potieï narrowly escaped assassination at the hands of the citizens. At Vitepsk, Bishop Kuntsévitch, who, from a renegade, had become a persecutor, raised a terrible riot; he was stabbed and thrown into the Dwina. Many of the citizens were punished, and the city

deprived of the law of Magdeburg. The Uniates fished the prelate's body out of the Dwina, and his tomb shortly became famous for its reputed miracles. At Kief, Veniamin Rutski, a successor of Ragoza, reorganized the convents on the model of Latin monasteries; the monks took the name of Basilians. They did not gain in popularity. A Little Russian saying attributes to them the following catechism: "Wherefore did God create thee and put thee in the world?" "To do the lords' dirty work."

The Eastern Church did not allow itself to be defeated so easily as the Jesuits had hoped. It opposed schools with schools, propaganda with propaganda; it preached and it printed. The Uniate Rutski was replaced even at Kief by Peter Mohila, a zealous partisan of orthodoxy. He was a rough prelate, such as was needed in those hard times, and an old soldier, ready to meet force with force. A monastery of the diocese resisted his authority; he marched to it instantly with troops and guns, and chastised the rebels. In sixteen hundred and thirty-three he made into a college, like those of the Jesuits, the school which had been founded by the confraternity; instituted professors of Latin, Greek, and philosophy, and made it the intellectual centre of Western Russia, and one of the points of departure of the Russian Renaissance.

#### COMPLAINTS OF WHITE RUSSIA.—RISINGS IN LITTLE RUSSIA.

In the diets of Warsaw the complaints of the orthodox clergy and of the country people, who were more completely enslaved, more cruelly oppressed, since they no longer held the religion of their masters, did not remain without an echo. A deputy from Volhynia, Lavrenti Drevninski, exclaimed at the Diet of sixteen hundred and twenty: "When your Majesty makes war on Turkey, from whom do you obtain the greater part of your troops? From the Russian nation, which holds

the orthodox faith; from that nation which, if it does not receive relief from its sufferings and an answer to its prayers, can no longer continue to make itself a rampart for your kingdom. How can you beg it to sacrifice all to secure for the country the blessings of peace, when in its homes there is no peace? Every one sees clearly the persecutions that the old Russian nation suffers for its religion. In the large towns our churches are sealed up, and the church domains are pillaged; from the monasteries the monks have departed, and cattle in their stead are quartered within them. Children die without baptism; the remains of the dead, deprived of the prayers of the Church, are carried out of the city like dead beasts; men and women live together without the benediction of the priest; they die without confession, without communion. Is not this to offend God himself, and will not God avenge these crimes? At Lemberg no one except a Uniate can live in the city, trade freely, and become a member of the union of artisans. . . . For twenty years in each diétine, in each diet, we have asked for our rights and liberties with bitter tears, and for twenty years we have not been able to obtain them. We shall have to cry with the prophet, ‘O God, judge me, and judge my actions.’” The situation of the serfs had become specially intolerable: besides the Polish or Polonized lord, besides the Latin missionary, they suffered from a third scourge, the Jew, whom the noble had made steward of his lands, and to whom he had given the right of life and death over his subjects, and farmed out the fishing and hunting, the roads and taverns, even the orthodox Church, so completely, that the peasant could neither marry nor baptize his child without having bought from this miscreant the right to approach the sanctuary.

The populations of White Russia had suffered, and were still to suffer long, without rebellion. But this was not the case with the Little Russian populations of the Ukraina. They had colonized the steppes of the south, and reconquered

the desert from the Tatars. To attract emigrants to fill the royal grants, the Polish lords offered twenty or thirty years of absolute liberty. Owing to this, the desert was peopled with wonderful rapidity, and on this virgin soil a new nation was formed, which was ignorant of slavery, which would not listen to the idea of only thirty years' liberty, but dreamed of perpetual freedom. The King of Poland favored this race of hardy pioneers, these intrepid soldiers. The Ukraina was for him a sort of military frontier, a strong rampart for Poland against the Tatar and the Turk.

These warlike populations were organized in twenty *polki*, or regiments, of Cossacks, those of Pereiaslaf, Tcherkask, Mirgorod, Poltava, and others. Each polk had its *polkovnik*, or colonel: all obeyed one supreme chief, the hetman of Little Russia, nominated by the king, who presided over the *starshina*, or council of elders. The *starshina* was composed of the *obozone*, the head of the baggage department; of the judge; of the *pisar*, the secretary or chancellor; of the *esaul*, or captain; of the standard-bearer; of the *polkovniki*; of the *thetsotniki*, or centurions; of the atamans. When the king invested the hetman, he handed to him the *buntchuk*, or banner, like a horse's tail, the stick or mace, and the seal. In time the Cossacks became formidable to the King of Poland himself; they incessantly embroiled him with his dangerous neighbor, the Ottoman Empire. Batory was forced to punish with death more than one Cossack chief for having violated a truce or a treaty of peace, and he also limited the number of the military population, recognizing as Cossacks only those who were inscribed on the register, to the number of six thousand, condemning the others to the cultivation of the soil, that is, to serfage. But the Cossacks would have nothing to do with the labor due the Polish lords, nor would they admit the limitations of the king. Notwithstanding the register, they remained under arms, a formidable force, who in the religious struggle were all enlisted on the side of orthodoxy, and who

caused royalty and the Uniate hierarchy and aristocracy to tremble.

Besides the Cossacks of the sedentary populations, or the Cossacks of the towns, there were also the Zaporoshtsui, the men from beyond the *porogi*, the rapids or cataracts of the Dnieper. They stood in the same relation to the Little Russian Cossacks as the latter did to the Russo-Lithuanian population; they were the vanguard of the vanguard, the advanced sentry of the Russian nationality. They had intrenched themselves in the Veliki Luki, or "Large Meadows," a fortified island of the Dnieper, and had built a fort, surrounded by a palisade. They recognized no authority; like the Knights of Rhodes and Malta, they encamped on the land wrested from the Mussulmans, and continued the holy war with Turk and Tatar, when Christendom was at peace with them. They neither gave nor asked quarter, existed on the plunder of the infidel, courted dangers and martyrdom, and received no women in their camp. They were a race of warrior-monks, a Church militant, the Templars and Hospitallers of the Dnieper. More than one Polish noble of high rank came to join them in their life of adventure and heroic poverty, and learned from them lessons of courage and chivalry. All were equal, all brothers, and ate like the Spartans at a common table; the offices of the ataman of the camp, and of the ten atamans of the *kuren*, or Cossack village, were obtained by election. They had intimate relations with the Cossacks of the Don, and on land and sea were the scourge of Islamism, — the Barbary Christians of the Black Sea.

The ill-feeling between the aristocratic government of Poland and the orthodox population of Little Russia continued to increase. When the Polish nobles wished to treat the free husbandmen as serfs they deserted in crowds to the countries of the Ukraina; the boldest went to reinforce the hordes of the Dnieper Cossacks or the camp of the Zaporoshtsui. Their blind bards hastened from village to village, singing the song of

justice: "In this world there is no justice, justice is not to be found here; now justice lives under the laws of injustice. To-day justice is imprisoned by the nobles; injustice is seated at her ease by the noble lords in the hall of honor. To-day justice stands near the threshold, and injustice is throned with the noble lords, and hydromel is poured out into cups for injustice. O justice! our mother with the wings of an eagle, where shall we find thee? May God send the man who will perform justice, — may God send days of prosperity!" These wandering poets sang so persistently, that the villages were emptied for the benefit of the Cossack camps, and justice ended by spreading her "eagle's wings," and the men "who were to perform justice" showed themselves openly.

The orthodox religion persecuted by the Uniates, the threatened serfage, the insolence of the nobles, the robberies of the Jews, the register and its limitation, gave rise in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries to a series of revolts in which the Zaporoshtsui, who were always zealous adherents of orthodoxy, in spite of their brigandage, played a great part. Specially distinguished among the Cossack chiefs were Nalivaïko, Pavliuk, Ostranitsa, and many others, whose memory has been retained by the wandering singers of the Ukraina. The government wished after each victory to give satisfaction to the Little Russians, but their authority was not sufficient to restrain either the demands of the lords or the intolerance of the Jesuits. To the horrible atrocities perpetrated on the insurgents, the latter retaliated at each insurrection by atrocities still greater. Each time the government was victorious, and after each defeat the yoke pressed more heavily on Little Russia. From these successes sprang a new danger for Poland. The eyes of the oppressed turned towards an orthodox sovereign, — the Tsar of Russia; the democratic populations of the Ukraina overcame their repugnance to authority when they saw the lawlessness and violence produced by Polish liberties. The Cossacks imagined they could conquer if they had an ally, and this ally was to be found only at Moscow.

## CHAPTER XXI.

### ALEXIS MIKHAÏLOVITCH AND HIS SON FEODOR.

1645 - 1682.

EARLY YEARS OF ALEXIS. — SEDITIONS. — KHMELNITSKI. — CONQUEST OF SMOLENSK AND EASTERN UKRAINA. — STENKO RAZIN. — ECCLESIASTICAL REFORMS OF NIKON. — THE PRECURSORS OF PETER THE GREAT. — REIGN OF FEODOR ALEXIÉVITCH (1676 - 1682).

---

#### EARLY YEARS OF ALEXIS. — SEDITIONS.

THE reign of Alexis Mikhaïlovitch may be summed up in three facts : the reaction against Poland and the union with Little Russia ; the struggle between the empire and the Cossacks ; the first attempt at religious reform and the growth of European influence.

The new Tsar, the son of Mikhail and Evdokia Streshnef, was good and easy, like his father. In his most violent fits of passion, say the contemporary writers, he never allowed himself to go beyond kicks and cuffs. Though his mind was quicker than his father's, he gave himself up to any one who took the trouble to influence him, even to the point of permitting himself to be ruled entirely, — unlike Ivan the Terrible, who, as we have seen, never long retained the same favorites. The extreme good-nature of the prince towards his relations had grave consequences. The people were oppressed with impunity, and were allowed to make no complaint. Alexis gave all his confidence to the boyar Morozof, who had taken charge of his education, and who for thirty years had never



TSAR ALEXIS



left him. Morozof was proud, ambitious, and unscrupulous ; but learned, intelligent, and full of shrewdness. He excelled above all in disentangling the diplomatic complications bequeathed to him by the last reign. When in January, sixteen hundred and forty-eight, Alexis determined to marry, Morozof naturally was not disturbed at seeing the young bride, Maria Ilyinitchna Miloslavski, arrive with a whole new dynasty of relations and "men of the time," because the choice had resulted from his manipulations, and he knew that the Miloslavski family were subservient to his interests. Instead of conspiring, therefore, as was usual, against the health or beauty of the Tsaritsa, he preferred to associate her family with his power, and thus secure his position. Only ten days after the Tsar's unostentatious wedding, he married Anna, a younger sister of Maria Ilyinitchna, and became the brother-in-law of his sovereign. He thus added to the old title of favorite the new one of a kinsman by his wife, and was strengthened in his power instead of being ejected from it. His influence with his master was greater than Richelieu's with Louis the Thirteenth, and he had the honor of beginning the revenge for the civil wars, — the war with Poland.

Affairs in the interior were always too complicated for Alexis to be able to act very energetically in his relations with foreign powers. The Russian people in the "time of the troubles" had unlearned the passive and resigned obedience that had formerly distinguished them ; they knew no longer how to suffer uncomplainingly, and complaint soon led to revolt. We must also recognize the fact that they suffered more than formerly. Russia had come out of its civil wars exhausted ; its agriculture and commerce were ruined, and its population diminished by emigrations and the flight of the peasants into the Cossack country. The state, which was already beginning to feel the heavy expenses of a modern empire, which had to keep up an army, foreign troops, all the machinery of war, diplomacy, and an administration, saw itself

forced to increase the taxes, which fell more and more heavily in proportion as the population decreased in numbers. The Russian government united the vices of the past with those of modern times ; the corruption of its agents, the impunity of the favorites and their creatures, and the defective organization of justice, tried to the utmost the diminished patience of the people.

The year sixteen hundred and forty-eight, which saw the breaking out of the Fronde in France, witnessed a terrible revolt in Moscow. Miloslavski, a man of great arrogance and avarice, had taken advantage of his new position to put his relatives into places of profit, which they abused. The indignation of the people became boundless, and, after ineffectual protests, as the Tsar was returning to his palace from the cathedral, on the first of June, they stopped him and demanded righteous judges and the destruction of the monopoly held by Miloslavski's relatives. Alexis, powerless to stem the torrent, had to deliver the judge, Pleshtchéef, over to the people, who dealt him summary justice, together with Nasar Tchistoi, the clerk of the council, who by his monopoly had enormously increased the price of salt, thus affecting the consumption of fish, which was the staple food of the poor. Then they plundered Morozof's house and those of many other wealthy and influential men. On the same day a terrible conflagration devastated Moscow, and that was followed by a new sedition. The people demanded the officer of the crown, Trakhaniotof, who was likewise handed over to them ; then, finally, their fury turned against Morozof himself, but the Tsar aided his brother-in-law to escape ; he took refuge in the convent of Saint Cyril, in Biélozersk, whence he emerged quietly, like another Mazarin, when the public excitement was calmed. Though the revolts which were instigated in Moscow by certain malcontents were thus easily appeased, in several other Russian cities the people gave more trouble. At Pskof an insurrection broke out because the Tsar paid in corn from the imperial granaries

of that city the indemnity of forty thousand rubles due the Swedish government for those who emigrated from the Russian provinces which had been ceded to Sweden. This was in accordance with the stipulations of a treaty subsequent to that of Stolbovo, but the rumor spread among the people that the traitor Morozof was sending money and corn to the Germans, who would soon make their appearance in Pskof and Novgorod. Lewin Nummens of Narva, a Swedish merchant, who had come with considerable money from Moscow in February, sixteen hundred and fifty, was seized by the populace, tortured, and put in prison; the Tsar's envoys, the voïevod Nikophor Sabakin and Prince Volkonski, were also imprisoned, and narrowly escaped with their lives; and Archbishop Makari was twice put in chains. From Pskof the revolt spread to Novgorod, where the German merchants were first attacked. A Novgorodian named Wolk forewarned them that they were in danger, and many of them had fled with their possessions from the city. But Wolk, after receiving a reward from the Germans, began to instigate the inhabitants against the foreigners as traitors and friends of Morozof, who used them as spies. The houses of the Germans were assaulted and plundered; the Danish ambassador, on the pretence that he was forwarding money to the Germans, was attacked by the people and left dead in the street. Archbishop Nikon, who tried to quell the rebellion by spiritual arms, was met by blows; the streltsui made common cause with the people, and even some of the nobles refused to assist Feodor Khilkof, the voïevod, in the discharge of his duty. Novgorod submitted only at the approach of Prince Khovanski, on the twentieth of April, at the head of his troops. The ringleaders were handed over to the Tsar's officers, but only Wolk was put to death in expiation of the murder of the Danish ambassador. Ivan Sheglof and ten others received the knout, and were sent to Siberia. The three hundred remaining were either slightly punished or set free unconditionally. Khovanski's troops were

insufficient for the reduction of Pskof, which, behind its tried ramparts, with abundant supplies of provisions, prepared to resist the Muscovites, as it had resisted the Poles. Although the Pskovians made many unsuccessful sorties, they held out until the middle of August, and capitulated only under the promise of a general amnesty, which was brought by a deputation of nobles and merchants from Moscow. The Pskovians then acknowledged their fault, and voluntarily surrendered the instigators of the insurrection.

While these seditions and revolts were in progress, an adventurer by the name of Timoshka Ankudinof, the son of a linen-drapeer in Ukraina, determined to play the part of another false Dmitri. By the connivance of a Polish nobleman he proclaimed himself the son of the Tsar Vasili Shuiski, using for proof certain mysterious marks which were imprinted on his body. A Greek priest interpreted them in accordance with this theory. He was received with some distinction at the Court of Vladislav, was sent to Constantinople with letters of recommendation, but being refused by the Sultan he went to Vienna, thence to Stockholm, and was finally delivered over to the Tsar in sixteen hundred and fifty-four, by the Duke Friedrich of Holstein, and was quartered alive. The old trick of imposture had become too palpable to have any effect upon even the credulous masses.

It was now time to turn against external enemies the spirit of turbulence that the civil war had left in the masses. Happily for Russia, Poland was still more profoundly agitated, and a revolt more considerable than those of Moscow, Pskof, or Novgorod was to open to the Muscovite armies the entrance into the Ukraina.

**KHMELNITSKI. — CONQUEST OF SMOLENSK AND EASTERN UKRAINA. — STENKO RAZIN.**

We have seen that Little Russia, after many partial risings, was waiting only for a chief to break out into a general insur-

rection. This chief was found in Bogdan Khmelnitski, — a brave, clever, energetic, and even educated Cossack. His father had been a Polish noble, and for some crime had taken refuge with the Cossacks, married a Cossack maiden, and had been considered a famous warrior. His only son, Bogdan Khmelnitski, after a training in Kief and probably in a Jesuit college, was advanced to the position of Notary of the Cossacks, and as a reward for his faithful services received the estate of Subotovo, about a mile from Tchigirin, the principal city of the Cossacks, situated near the Rapids. The Pole Tchaplinski, under-bailiff of Tchigirin, envious of Bogdan's good fortune, on the pretext that Subotovo belonged to the bailiff, managed to drive him from the estate, seduced his wife, while he was in Warsaw seeking justice, and also seized his son, a boy of ten years, and had him whipped in the public market-place by his men. Khmelnitski could obtain neither redress for himself nor help for his countrymen against the Jews and the taxes. But King Vladislas is said to have told him that the senators would not obey their king, and, drawing a sword on paper, he handed it to Bogdan, observing, "This is the sign royal : if you have arms at your sides, resist those who insult and rob you ; revenge your wrongs with your swords, and when the time comes you will help me against the pagans and the rebels of my kingdom." In the Polish anarchy of that date it is quite possible that the king may have held this language, and himself placed the sword in the hands of those whom he could not protect. Vladislas then gave Bogdan the staff and colors of a Cossack hetman, and in return Bogdan promised him the following year a body of twelve thousand men.

The royal field-marshal Konetspoliski, one of the richest landholders of Poland, in sixteen hundred and thirty-five caused the French engineer Beauplan to build a strong fortress on the first of the rapids above Kief. Hardly was the new work completed before Soliman, the Cossack commander, on

his return from an expedition, attacked it and cut off the garrison. But soon after he was seized by Konetspolski, sent to Warsaw, and executed. Two years later eighteen thousand Cossacks seized their arms and deposed the royal hetman, but were defeated by Nikolai Pototski, and a third of their number were left dead on the field. Thereupon the Diet still further reduced the privileges of the Cossacks, and in all respects they were treated like slaves. Consequently, when Bogdan Khmelnitski informed them of the secret stipulations of the king, they acknowledged him as their hetman in sixteen hundred and forty-eight, and were ready to unite with a Mussulman army against the hated Polish nobility. Bogdan then passed over to the Khan of the Crimea, who, when he found that the Cossacks were in earnest, furnished him with forces. To Tatars and Zaporoshtsui were soon added all the malcontents of Little Russia. Cossacks and people were alike determined to finish with it. When Nikolai Pototski learned from the Jewish tax-gatherers the news of the commotions among the Cossacks, he sent against them his son Stephan with an army of five thousand men, of whom thirty-five hundred were registered Cossacks, who immediately deserted to Khmelnitski at the battle of the "Yellow Waters." Bogdan was then reinforced by an army of forty thousand men under Tohaibeg, and Stephan Pototski and his whole force were taken prisoners. Finally, he defeated Nikolai Pototski at Kersun, and captured eight thousand men and forty-one guns. The generals were given to the Tatars as a reward, and one of them, Sienavski, was ransomed for twenty thousand ducats. This double victory was the signal of a general insurrection. The orthodox clergy everywhere preached a crusade against the Jesuits and Uniates, and everywhere the peasants rose against the Polish or Polonized nobles. The castles were demolished, the governors put to death. The Jews were in a sad strait. According to a popular song, they only asked one thing, — to be allowed "to escape in their shirts beyond the Vistula,

abandoning their wealth to the Cossacks, and promising to teach their children to live honestly, and to covet no more the land of the Ukraina."

Khmelnitski now thought that he had attained all the advantage that was necessary, and in June, eighteen hundred and forty-eight, he wrote the king a letter, explaining how the Cossacks, after vainly asking for their rights, had been obliged to use force in order to bring their Polish oppressors to terms. He went on to say that they were ready to take an oath of faithful allegiance so soon as their grievances should be redressed. The king never received this letter, for at this critical moment for Poland he died, in consequence of a cold caught while on a hunting expedition in Lithuania, and the Diet met at Warsaw for the election of a new king, with all its accustomed turbulence. At this news the revolt in Little Russia increased. Wherever the nobles could defend themselves, they gave back cruelty for cruelty. Ieremia Vishnevetski, a powerful Polonized Russian lord, assaulted a town belonging to him, and took vengeance in the most horrible manner upon those who had revolted from him. "Make them suffer," he cried to the executioners, "they must be made to feel death"; and his prisoners were impaled. The Cossacks, who, now that Vladislav was dead, had no one to whom they could look for justice, broke out more violently than ever; they felt that they were fighting for life or death, that there was for them no choice but between total extinction and absolute liberty. Khmelnitski pursued his course of success; he defeated the Poles near Pilava, and penetrated into Gallicia as far as Lvof, or Lemberg, a rich, half-Jewish city, which had to pay a war indemnity. He was besieging Zamostié when he learned that Ian Kasimir was elected in the place of his brother Vladislav. The new king at once sent envoys to bring about an understanding. Adam Kiesel, Maximilian Brsovski, Castellan of Kief, and other Poles of high rank, met Khmelnitski in Pereiaslavl in February, sixteen hundred and forty-nine. They

brought him from the king the commission of hetman, the hetman's staff set with sapphires, and a red flag decorated with the white eagle and the king's name. Khmelnitski appeared in rich clothing, and poured out brandy into golden cups for the commissioners. His wife, decked with diamonds and precious stones, filled their pipes. But he refused to treat with them except openly in the market-place. The commissioners promised them the free use of their religion, and that all the Cossacks should have their former rights and privileges; but they demanded that all the insurgent peasants should forthwith return to their ploughs and herds. "Let the Cossacks alone bear arms," said the Poles. A universal shout of indignation arose at these terms. Bogdan then broke up the assembly, and when, five days later, the commissioners were about to withdraw, he offered them terms of peace which they in turn rejected. Bogdan could abandon neither the Cossacks, who would not hear of the register, nor the peasants, whose revolt had given him the victory. "The time for negotiations is past," he said to the commissioners; "I must free the whole Russian nation from the yoke of the Poles. At first I took up arms to avenge my own injuries; now I am fighting for the orthodox faith. The people, as far as Lublin, as far as Cracow, will stand by me. I will not betray them." The war then began anew. Khmelnitski's army consisted of more than two hundred thousand Cossacks and armed peasants, and in addition the Khan of the Crimea sent him one hundred and sixty thousand Tatar cavalry. The Polish forces, strongly intrenched at Zbarash, were entirely surrounded, but they held out from the tenth of July until the fifteenth of August, when the king arrived in person with reinforcements. Ian Kasimir found himself at Zborovo surrounded by the innumerable cavalry of the enemy. It would have been all over with him had he not purchased the defection of the Khan of the Crimea by a large sum, and the promise of an annual tribute. The Khan then retired, assuring his ally that the king pardoned

the Cossacks, and was ready to take their commander into his favor. Under these circumstances a treaty was brought about ; the Cossacks were restored to their former privileges ; and, though the register was re-established, the number of Cossacks enrolled was raised to forty thousand ; Bogdan was recognized hetman of Little Russia, and the town of Tchigirin assigned to him as a residence. It was agreed that there should be neither Crown troops nor Jews in the localities inhabited by the Cossacks, and no Jesuits where orthodox schools existed. The Metropolitan of Kief was to have a seat in the senate of Warsaw.

What Bogdan had foreseen when he refused to come to terms really happened ; the treaty could not be executed. The number of fighting men who had taken part in the election exceeded forty thousand, — were those in excess to be relegated to the work of the fields, to forced labor for the lords ? The people had helped the Cossacks, — were they then to be surrendered to their masters who would not be likely to show themselves very cordial to those who had deserted from them ? Bogdan soon found himself involved in inextricable difficulties : on one side he was violating the treaty to enroll more than forty thousand men in his register ; on the other hand, if he executed it, he would have to begin by inflicting death on those who refused to submit. He was wearing out his popularity in performing this ungrateful task. His subjects grew rebellious, and sent him a deputation who said that if he were playing the traitor to them, he must be prepared to see a successor take his place. He preferred to resume warlike operations, with the excuse that the Poles had broken certain clauses of the treaty. This war was less successful than the first ; the Khan of the Crimea, who a second time came to the aid of the Cossacks, by his cowardice a second time betrayed them, and the Cossacks were beaten at Berestetchko. The conditions of the Peace concluded at the village of Biélaia Tserkov, or White Church, were more severe

than those of the first treaty. The number of registered Cossacks was reduced to twenty thousand; and twenty thousand more, thus finding themselves excluded from the army, were thrown back upon the people. Being restricted to the vicinity of Kief and unable to find the means of subsistence, the greater part chose rather to emigrate to Russian soil, to wander to the Don, or to live by brigandage on the Volga.

A peace such as this was only a truce, and the Cossacks were certain to break it as soon as they could find an ally. Bogdan wrote to entreat the Tsar to take Little Russia under his protection. The government of Alexis had been seeking for some time a pretext for rupture with Poland. The Polish government, in writing to the Tsar, had not used the full royal title. Moscow never missed an opportunity for remonstrance; Warsaw assured them that it was pure inadvertence. "Then," said the Russians, "an example must be made of the guilty." No example was made, and the diminution of title was used at every interchange of notes. The Court of Russia had been keeping up this excuse for war, and was waiting for a moment to profit by it; this was found in the appeal of Khmelnitzki. The Estates were convoked, and to them were reported the repeated insults to his Tsarian Majesty, and the persecution of the true faith in Little Russia. It was added, that the Little Russians, if the Tsar refused to come to their aid, would have to place themselves under the protection of the Sultan. On this occasion the Estates declared for war. Alexis sent the boyar Buturlin to receive the oath of the hetman, the army, and the people of Little Russia.

It was time for the Tsar to decide. Bogdan, betrayed a third time by the Khan, had been defeated at Ivanets on the Dniester, but on receipt of the news from Moscow, in January, sixteen hundred and fifty-four, he called the General Assembly at Pereiaslavl to announce to them the fact. "Noble colonels, captains, and centurions, and you army of Zaporoshtsui, and you orthodox Christians," cried the hetman, "you see it is no

longer possible to live without a prince. Now we have four to choose from : the Sultan of Turkey ; the Khan of the Crimea ; the King of Poland ; and the Tsar of orthodox Great Russia, whom for six years we have not ceased to entreat to become our Tsar and lord. The Sultan is a Mussulman ; we know what our brethren the orthodox Greeks suffered at his hands. The Khan is also a Mussulman, and our alliances with him have brought us nothing but trouble. It is needless to remind you of what the Polish nobles have made us endure. But the orthodox Christian Tsar is of the same religion as ourselves. We shall not find a better support than his. Whoever thinks otherwise may go where he likes, the way is open." The air rang with applause ; the multitude cried out with one voice, " We will go with the Eastern Tsar " ; the oath demanded by Buturlin was taken ; and an embassy set out for Moscow, to ask the maintenance of Ukrainian liberties. The Tsar freely granted all their conditions : the army was to be raised permanently to the number of sixty thousand ; the Cossacks were to elect their hetman ; the rights of their nobility and the towns were to be maintained ; the administration of the towns and the imposition of taxes were to be intrusted to the natives ; the hetman was to have the right of receiving foreign ambassadors, but was to signify the fact to the Tsar ; and he was forbidden, without special leave, to receive the envoys of Turkey and Poland.

In May, sixteen hundred and fifty-four, the Tsar Alexis solemnly announced in the <sup>ZEMSKY</sup> Uspenski Sobor, the Cathedral of the Assumption, that he had resolved to march in person against his enemy, the King of Poland. He commanded that in this campaign no occasion should be given for the generals to dispute precedence. The Polish voïevodui affirm that on this occasion " Moscow made war in quite a new way, and conquered the people by the clemency and gentleness of the Tsar." This humanity, so well-timed in a war of deliverance, contributed greatly to the success of the Muscovites. Polotsk,

Mohilef, and all the towns of White Russia, in sixteen hundred and fifty-four, opened their gates, one after the other; and Smolensk, strongly fortified and garrisoned, resisted only five weeks, and its final surrender was attributed to the treason of its commander. The following year the Prince Tcherkasski defeated the hetman Radzivil, and began the conquest of Lithuania proper; Vilna, the capital, Grodno, and Kovno, fell successively. During this time Khmelnitski and the Muscovites invaded Southwestern Poland and took Lublin. All the East resounded with the Russian victories: it was said at Moscow that the Greeks prayed for the Tsar and refused obedience to any but an orthodox emperor, and that the Hospodars of Valakhia and Moldavia implored Alexis to take them under his protection.

Poland seemed reduced to the last extremity; and there was still a third enemy to fall on her. Charles the Tenth, King of Sweden, dissatisfied with the conquests of Alexis, arrived and captured Poznania, Warsaw, and Cracow, the three Polish capitals. The King Jan Kasimir saved himself only by escaping from Cracow to Silesia. This conflict of ambitions was, however, the salvation of the country; the Swede threatened the Russian conquests, and claimed Lithuania. He entered into relations with Khmelnitski, who forgot the oath he had taken; it was the situation of Charles the Twelfth and Mazeppa half a century before their day. The Tsar Alexis feared that he had shaken Poland only to strengthen Sweden, and would not risk the reunion of these two formidable monarchies under the same sceptre. He hastened to negotiate with the Poles, who promised to elect him after the death of their present king; then he turned his arms against Sweden. On the Baltic, the latter was the heir of the Livonian Order. Alexis trod in the steps of Ivan the Terrible; like him, his successes were rapid, but they as rapidly vanished in smoke. He took Dünaburg and Kokenhusen, two old castles of the Knights; but the Russians besieged Riga in vain, and succeeded no

better at Oréshek or Kexholm. The occupation of Dorpat in sixteen hundred and fifty-six terminated the first campaign; after that, hostilities languished, and Alexis concluded a truce of twenty years, which secured him Dorpat and a part of his conquests. The affairs of Poland and Little Russia became, however, so terribly complicated in sixteen hundred and sixty-one, that the truce became the Peace of Kardis, by which Alexis abandoned all Livonia.

The hetman Khmelnitski had more than once given his new sovereign cause for discontent. In spite of his oath, he had negotiated with Sweden and Poland. In fact, now that he had got rid of his former master, he did not want to become the vassal of a new sovereign, but to create a third Slav state between Poland and Russia, and to remain its independent sovereign. This hope was shared by the Cossacks. They had revolted against Poland because the king was weak and could not make himself respected by the aristocracy; they feared the Tsar of Muscovy would be only too strong. All government, all authority, was a burden to the free Cossack.

Bogdan, however, kept up the appearances of submission. His death, in July, sixteen hundred and fifty-seven, was the signal for disorder. His son Iuri was only sixteen years of age, but the assembly of the people, in honor of his father, elected him hetman. Ivan Vigovski, chancellor of the Cossack army, was chosen to be his guardian. Vigovski, however, desired to have exclusive command, and he himself took the mace of the hetman; but Martin Pushkar, the *polkovnik*, or colonel, of Poltava, and the Zaporoshtsui, refused to recognize him. Vigovski, Pushkar, and the Zaporozh ataman denounced each other at Moscow. Vigovski caused Pushkar to be assassinated, and made advances to Poland, to secure himself an ally against the Tsar; he also applied to the Khan of the Crimea, and with his assistance defeated Prince Trubetskoï at Konotop; but after the Khan had retired from Little Russia the majority of the Cossacks declared for Moscow, and obliged Vigovski to

fly to Poland. Iuri Khmelnitski placed himself at the head of those who were dissatisfied, and was again elected hetman, in sixteen hundred and fifty-nine, and took the oath of allegiance to the Tsar.

Meanwhile the troubles of Little Russia revived the courage of the Poles. They succeeded in expelling the Swedes, and refused to execute the treaty of Moscow. The war began afresh, and the Russians were unsuccessful. The very extremity of their misfortunes seemed to have bound the Poles together. After some slight successes one Russian army under Prince Khovanski was defeated at Polonka by the voïevod Tcharnetski, the conqueror of the Swedes; in the south the boyar Sheremetief had made an agreement with the hetman Iuri Khmelnitski to march by two different routes against Lemberg and there reunite. But Khmelnitski was unexpectedly attacked by the Poles and forced to capitulate, and the whole army of the enemy, including twenty thousand Tatars, turned its attention to Sheremetief, who was completely surrounded in his camp at Tchudново. Sheremetief was forced to surrender, rather by hunger, thirst, and sickness than by the efforts of the Polish commander, Stanislas Pototski. On the twenty-first of September, sixteen hundred and sixty-one, he was allowed to lay down his arms on the condition of paying sixty thousand dollars, evacuating the Ukraina, renouncing the Russian right to protect the country, and remaining a prisoner, with all his staff officers, until Kief, Tchernigof, and Pereiaslavl were opened to the Poles. But hardly had the Poles approached Kief, when the commandant of the city, Prince Boratinski, declared that he was not bound by Sheremetief's promises, and would suffer no Poles to enter. Thereupon the Tatars sent the Russian officers to the Crimea, and took the whole army as prisoners with them. So the Tsar lost in the Ukraina even more than in the north, where Vilna and Lithuania were taken from him.

After his defeat by Liubomirski near Tchudново, Khmelnitski

had deserted the Russian cause and had been placed in command of Hadiatch and Mirgorod, while Somka took his place as hetman, and tried to drive the Poles again from the Ukraina. Somka, with the aid of Romodanovski, completely defeated Khmelnitski at Kanief, in July, sixteen hundred and sixty-two, and the latter resigned his office of hetman and entered a monastery at Korsun. Teteria, his successor, had done homage to the king; but the country on the left bank of the Dnieper refused to recognize him as hetman, and elected Briukhovetski, who was devoted to Russia. Ian Kasimir crossed the river, and was on the point of reconquering the whole Ukraina; but having been repulsed at the siege of Glukhof, he lost all his best troops through hunger and cold in the steppes of the desert. The two empires were exhausted by a war which had already lasted ten years. The whole of Poland had been overrun by Swedes, Russians, and Cossacks. Russia had no longer money with which to pay its army, and had recourse to a forced currency, by which a bronze coinage was given the fictitious value of silver. Everywhere were heard bitter complaints of the famine. At Moscow a riot broke out against the Miloslavskis, the kinsmen of the Tsaritsa, and the multitude marched to the palace of Kolomenskoé to drag them out by force. The soldiers had to fire on the rebels, and seven thousand of them were killed or taken.

Notwithstanding all this, neither the Poles nor the Russians would lay down arms without being assured the possession of all that they had conquered with so many sacrifices. Poland, in sixteen hundred and sixty-four, was attacked by two new misfortunes, — the revolt of Prince Lubomirski, who, having gained the ill-will of the court, and of the queen especially, was declared a traitor, with confiscation of his property; and the death of Teteria, whose successor, Doroshenko, went over to the Sultan, and by so doing involved the government in a war with both Turks and Tatars. It was necessary to treat with Russia, and a truce of thirteen years and six months was

concluded in sixteen hundred and sixty-seven at Andrusovo. Alexis renounced Lithuania, but kept Smolensk and Kief on the right bank of the Dnieper, and all the Little Russian left bank.

The treaty with Poland did not give peace to Little Russia. Neither the Dnieper Cossacks nor the Don Cossacks could become reconciled to the obedience and regularity essential to a modern state. The more Russia became civilized and centralized, the more it became separated from the men of the Steppe; the further the frontier of this civilized Russia advanced to the south, the nearer approached the inevitable conflict. The reign of Alexis, troubled at first by the revolts of the Muscovite cities, was now vexed by the revolts of the Cossacks.

The hetman Briukhovetski was a devoted adherent of Russia, but he was surrounded by many malcontents. As usual, the people had not gained all they had hoped by the revolution; he saw, however, in the absolute authority of the Tsar, a bulwark against the Little Russian oligarchy of the starshina and the polkovniki, and against the turbulence of the Cossacks. He said to the latter, "God has delivered us from you; you can no longer pillage and devastate our houses." The Cossacks and the starshina, or, in other words, the military and aristocratic party, were still more displeased to see the Muscovite voievodui establish themselves in the towns. The Republic of the Zaporoshtsui already feared that it had given itself a master. Mefodi, Metropolitan of Kief, encouraged the resistance of a party of the clergy who wished to remain subject to the Patriarch of Constantinople, and not to be transferred to the Patriarch of Moscow. It was Mefodi who organized the rebellion; he made advances to the hetman, who opened a negotiation with Doroshenko, the ataman of the right bank, who promised to resign his office and to recognize as chief of Little Russia the man who would be its deliverer. The weak Briukhovetski allowed himself to be persuaded, and at the

Assembly of Hadiatch, in sixteen hundred and sixty-eight, it was decided to revolt against the Tsar, and to take the oath to the Sultan, as the men of the right bank had already done. Two voïevodui and one hundred and twenty Muscovites were put to death. A short time after, Briukhovetski was slain by order of Doroshenko, who became hetman of both banks. Two parties divided Little Russia,—the party of independence, or the Polish and Turkish party, and the party favorable to Moscow; the latter was predominant on the left bank. It did not hesitate to make terms with the Tsar, and, at the price of a few concessions, a second time submitted to him entirely. Mnogogreshnui, the new hetman, took up his abode at Baturin.

The right bank had no reason to pride itself on the policy to which it was committed by Doroshenko. It became the theatre of a terrible war between Turkey and Poland, and was cruelly ravaged by Mahomet the Fourth with a force of one hundred and fifty thousand men. The Khan of the Crimea and Doroshenko joined with the Sultan, and Kamieniets, the capital of the southern frontier, was captured. In sixteen hundred and seventy-two, Ian Kasimir's weak successor, King Mikhail Vishnevetski, concluded a disgraceful truce with Mahomet, and agreed to abandon the Cossacks and Kamieniets and pay an annual tribute. But Mikhail died in the following year, and Ian Sobieski, after gaining a glorious victory over the Turks at Khotsim, was recalled, and elected king by a majority over his rival, the tsarevitch Feodor, who had been nominated. Meanwhile the left, or Muscovite, bank had less to suffer, although the Sultan claimed it equally as his own possession, but the inhabitants had to fight with only their old enemies the Tatars.

The Cossacks of the Don at this period were, on the whole, tolerably quiet; but one of their number, Stephan or Stenko Razin, overturned all Eastern Russia. The immigration of the Cossacks of the Dnieper, expelled from their native land by war, had created a great famine in these barren plains of

the Don. Stenko assembled some of these starved adventurers, and formed a scheme for the capture of Azof; but, on being hindered by the starshina of the Dontsui, he turned towards the East, towards the Volga and the Iaïk, now called the Ural. His reputation was wide-spread; he was said to be a magician, against whom neither sabre, balls, nor bullets could prevail, and the brigands of all the country crowded to his banner. He swept the Caspian, and ravaged the shores of Persia. The Russian government, powerless to crush him, offered him a pardon if he would surrender his guns and boats stolen from the Crown. He accepted the offer; but his exploits, his wealth acquired by pillage, and his princely liberality created him an immense party among the lower classes, and among the Cossacks and even the streltsui of the towns. The lands of the Volga were always ready for a social revolution; hence the success of Razin, and later of Pugatchef. There brigands were popular and respected; honest merchants, who came to the Don for trading purposes, and learned that Stenko had begun the career of a pirate, did not hesitate to join him.

In sixteen hundred and seventy, Stenko, having spent all the money he had gained by pillage, went up the Don with an army of vagabonds, and thence crossed to the Volga. All the country rose on the approach of a chief already so famous. The inhabitants of Tsaritsuin opened their gates to him. A flotilla was sent against him, but the sailors and the streltsui surrendered, and betrayed to him their commanders. Astrakhan revolted, and delivered up its two voïevodui, one of whom, Prince Prozorovski, was thrown from the top of a bell-tower, and his son was barbarously murdered. Ascending the Volga, he took Saratof and Samara, and raised the country of Nijni-Novgorod, Tambof, and Penza. Everywhere in the Russia of the Volga the serfs revolted against their masters, — the Tatars, Tchuvashi, Mordva, and Tcheremisa against the domination of Russia. It was a fearful revolution. In sixteen hundred and seventy-one Stenko Razin was defeated,

near Simbirsk, by Prince Iuri Boriatinski. His prestige was lost; he was pursued into the steppes, arrested on the Don, and sent to Moscow, where he was executed in sixteen hundred and seventy-one.

His death did not immediately check the rebellion. The brigands still continued to hold the country. At Astrakhan Vasili Us governed despotically, and threw the archbishop Iosiph from a belfry. Finally, however, all these imitators of Razin were killed or captured, the Volga freed, and the Don became as peaceful as the Dnieper.

#### ECCLESIASTICAL REFORMS OF NIKON.—THE PRECURSORS OF PETER THE GREAT.

If Alexis, father of Peter the Great, was not himself a reformer, his whole reign was a preparation for reform. Who can tell how much Peter owed to the example of his father, — and of his mother Natalia, the pupil of Matvéef, — to the ideas of Nikon, Polotski, and Nashtchokin? Nikon was the son of a simple peasant of the government of Nijni-Novgorod. His baptismal name was Nikita; as a child he was devoted to the reading of ecclesiastical books, and he spent a portion of his youth with a worthy monk in the monastery of Saint Makari, about sixty versts from Nijni-Novgorod. But his father objected to his becoming a priest, and at the death of the latter, by the advice of his relatives, he married and went to Moscow. After ten years of secular priesthood the husband and wife agreed to separate, each to serve God in religious orders. Nikita betook himself to the Anzerskoi Hermitage, on an island in the White Sea. Each of the twelve cells was separate on the shore, and the recluse held no conversation with his brethren, but spent his time in prayer and meditation, or in service at the church, which was situated in the centre of the island. Here Nikita assumed the name of Nikon. After three years of this seclusion he was chosen abbot of the Kosheozerskoi Monastuir, and after another three years he

returned to Moscow, where he became known to the Tsar, and was made archimandrite of the Novospasski Monastuir; he was at last, in sixteen hundred and forty-eight, nominated Metropolitan of Novgorod, where we have seen him quell a sedition at the peril of his life. The Tsar loved and admired him, and made him Patriarch, and allowed him to take the title of Veliki Hosudar, Chief Noble and Sovereign, once borne by Philaret. A man who had raised himself to such a height from such a depth was not capable of mastering his ambition. Proud and imperious, he made himself a multitude of enemies among the clergy and the nobles, and despised them.

Nikon took up the correction of the holy books begun by Dionisi of Troïtsa. A number of gross mistakes, and even interpolations, had slipped into the Slavonic manuscripts, and thence passed into print. On being informed of these mistakes by some Greek prelates who had come to Moscow, Nikon assembled a council, where it was decided that the printed books must be corrected according to the ancient Slavonic or Greek manuscripts. Nikon collected these texts from all parts, and, with the help of learned ecclesiastics, set to work in sixteen hundred and fifty-four. This attempt, which denotes a truly modern and scientific spirit, was the cause of a schism. To the people, and to a large party of the clergy and monks, everything in the holy books, even including the mistakes of the copyists, was sacred. Certain altered or interpolated texts had in their turn consecrated usages opposed to those generally followed by the Church. The sectaries relying on these texts forbade the beard to be shaven under the penalty of committing a mortal sin, and ordered the sign of the cross to be made with two fingers and not with three, and the liturgy with seven wafers and not with five. Fanatics were ready to die sooner than read *Iisus* instead of *Isus* for the name of Christ. Besides those whom an excessive respect for ancient texts and customs drove into schism, we must reckon the genuine heretics, who adopted falsified or apocryphal renderings, and who, after hav-

ing been long hidden and ignored in the bosom of the orthodox Church, were all at once unmasked. Thus the reforms of Nikon brought to light the *raskol*, or heresy, latent in the Russian Church, with all its multiplicity of sects, — Old Believers, Drinkers of Milk, Champions of the Spirit, Flagellants, Skoptsui, or voluntary eunuchs, and many others, whose origin may be traced to Alexandrine Gnosticism, Persian Manichæism, and perhaps even to Hindu Pantheism.

The Tsar energetically supported his Patriarch. He diligently sought out the religious madmen, and the wandering prophets who led the people astray, disgraced the men and women of his Court who persisted in crossing themselves with two fingers, imprisoned rebellious monks and ecclesiastics, and hunted down assemblies of nonconformists. One of Nikon's enemies was burnt alive. The most curious episode of this religious war was the revolt of the holy monasteries of the White Sea. The monks, passionately attached to their ancient customs, won over the *streltsui* and the men-at-arms who formed the garrison of the fortified convent of Solovetski. The Archimandrite of Moscow was sent to them with a letter from the Tsar; but they replied that they were obedient to the Great Lord of Russia in all things, but they would not accept the revised Scriptures. An army had to be sent against them in sixteen hundred and sixty-eight, but the monastery only capitulated after a siege of eight years. It was then taken by assault, and the rebels hung.

At the same time that Alexis enabled Nikon to subdue his religious foes, he delivered him up to his political enemies. The proud and imperious character of the Patriarch had at last rendered him insupportable to the Tsar. It was a reproduction of the rivalry of the Byzantine Patriarch Keroularios and the Emperor Isaac Comnenus in the eleventh century. The courtiers did their best to encourage the Tsar in his coldness. Nikon, instead of resisting his enemies, would not lower himself by employing their underhand arts, nor did he take any

pains to do away with the misunderstanding between himself and Alexis. On the contrary, he absented himself from Moscow in order personally to superintend the building of his three favorite monasteries. Meanwhile his enemies took advantage of his absence to insure his fall. In sixteen hundred and fifty-eight, Teimuras, Tsar of Georgia or Gruzia, came to Moscow to implore the help of Alexis against the Turks and Persians. He was received with great courtesies, and Nikon expected to take part. But the Tsar's officer detailed to entertain Teimuras insulted Nikon openly, and refused satisfaction. Nikon then arranged a service at which he hoped that the Tsar would be present, and that an understanding would be the result. But Alexis was hindered from attending, and in his place came Prince Romadonovski to the Uspienski Sobor, and reproached him for his arrogance and his assumption of the title of Veliki Hosudar. This title Nikon had never claimed, and his patience came to an end at this public insult. After the mass and the sermon he turned to the people and humbly apologized for his faults, renounced his patriarchate, and amid the tears of the people he solemnly placed his pontifical insignia on the altar, and retired to a convent which he had founded near Moscow, and called New Jerusalem. This was to relinquish the field of battle to his adversaries. He expected that the Tsar would beseech him to resume his office, but the Tsar did not trouble himself about his old favorite. His voluntary exile lasted eight years, from sixteen hundred and fifty-eight until sixteen hundred and sixty-six, when a council was assembled on the occasion of the arrival of the Patriarchs of Antioch and Alexandria at Moscow. The council was held in the Tsar's palace in the Kreml, and was composed of two Patriarchs, four Russian and six Greek Metropolitans, six Russian archbishops, the Archbishops of Mount Siniai and Valakhia, innumerable bishops, archimandrites, and priests of all ranks. Nikon was three times examined by the council, which approved of his reforms and his corrections of the Sacred

Books; but for his voluntary desertion of the patriarchate, his unwillingness to have a successor appointed, his audacious attacks on the Tsar and the bishops, his avarice, his arrogance, and the abuse of his power over the inferior clergy, he was condemned to be deprived of his dignities and to be imprisoned for life. He was removed from the council to the police court by an insulting throng of officers, and on the next day he was sent to the Hermitage of Ferapontof, about thirty versts from the White Lake. At first he was subjected to harsh treatment, but gradually his imprisonment was lightened, and the Tsar Feodor finally allowed him to return to his favorite monastery Voskresenski, near Moscow, where ~~he died on the~~ *he died on his way there* the seventeenth of August, sixteen hundred and eighty-one, and was buried with all the honors of a patriarch.

By the side of Nikon, among the reformers, we must mention Simeon Polotski, tutor of the sons of Alexis, who, in sixteen hundred and sixty-eight, published against the raskolniki, the "Rod of Government"; wrote light verses, panegyrics, sermons, dramatic compositions the subjects of which were drawn from the Scriptures, maxims, and examples translated from ancient and modern writers and put into verse in order to attract the reader. In one of his poems he called to the Tsar's mind the example of a French king. "There was once," he wrote, "a King of France called Francis the First. As he loved literature and science, though his ancestors did not love them, and lived in ignorance like barbarians, the sons of illustrious families sought instruction, in order to please the monarch. Thus knowledge spread through the country, for it is the custom of subjects to imitate the prince; all love what he loves. Happy is the kingdom whose king gives a good example to all!" Simeon was a White Russian; others, like the monks Slavnetski and Satanovski, who were commissioned by Nikon with the translation of foreign books, were natives of Little Russia, of Kief the learned. These two western divisions of Russia served as a link between Muscovy and Europe.

Two writers of this epoch merit special mention. Gregory Kotoshikhin, under-secretary of the Prikaz of Embassies, was obliged, in consequence of a quarrel with the voïevod Dolgoruki, to fly first into Poland and then into Sweden, where he wrote a curious treatise, called "Russia under the Reign of Alexis Mikhaïlovitch," which appeared about sixteen hundred and sixty-six. He does not concern himself either with the clergy or the inferior classes, but gives a frightful picture of the ignorance, sensuality, and brutality of the boyars and nobles. So graphic is it that, as Polévoï remarks, we are forced involuntarily to ask, "In what state could the lower orders have been?" He speaks with horror and disgust of the administration of justice, compares foreign institutions with those of his own country to the advantage of the former, and regrets that his compatriots did not send their sons to be educated abroad.

Iuri Krijanitch, a Servian by birth and a Catholic priest, was one of those learned Slavs who now came into Russia to seek employment for their talents. He had proposed to himself three aims in coming to Moscow: First, to elevate the Slavonic tongue by compiling a grammar and a lexicon, so that the Slavs might learn to speak and write correctly; and to place a larger number of words and phrases at their disposal, so that they might be able to express all the thoughts common to the human mind, and also political and general ideas. Secondly, to write the history of the Slavs, and to refute the falsehoods and calumnies of the Germans. And lastly, to unmask the tricks and sophisms made use of by foreign nations to deceive the Slavs. In his work entitled "The Russian Empire in the middle of the Seventeenth Century," dedicated to Alexis Mikhaïlovitch, and lately republished by M. Bezsonof, he touches on all points of manners and customs, politics, and political economy. Like Kotoshikhin, he attacks ignorance and barbarism, and advocates instruction, study, and civilization as being the only remedies for the misfortunes of Russia.

Krijanitch is the first of the Slavophiles, or the Pan-Slavists, as they are at present called. He appeals to all the Slav nations, — “Boristhenites, or Little Russians, Poles, Lithuanians, and Serbs.” He advises the Russians to mistrust Germans and Greeks alike. It was probably his philippics against the Greek clergy established in Russia that caused him in sixteen hundred and sixty to be exiled to Tobolsk.

Aphanasi Ordin-Nashtchokin, son of a gentleman of Pskof, had long been known as a brave voïevod, and as a man particularly skilled in conducting diplomatic conferences ; but he so distinguished himself in the successful negotiations for the Peace of Andrusovo, which gave Kief and Smolensk to Russia, that he was summoned to take part in the councils of the Tsar. He applied his activity to all branches of the administration : to the army, which was in need of reform ; to commerce, which needed to be freed from the interference of the voïevodui ; to diplomacy, for which men skilled in languages, representatives worthy of the Court of Russia, had to be found. His object was to make Muscovy the centre of Asiatic and European trade ; he made an agreement with an Armenian Company, in accordance with which all Persian silks obtained by this company should be sent to Russia ; he originated the idea of building fleets on the Caspian, and on the Oka constructed the first Russian vessel. He had extracts from foreign newspapers regularly translated for the enlightenment of the sovereign, and thus founded, though for the Tsar’s benefit alone, the Russian press.

As he had necessarily to praise the usages of foreign countries, and to find fault with those of Russia, Nashtchokin could not but make himself many enemies. His morality was equal to his talent: incorruptible, indefatigable, and self-controlled, he was the first great European that Russia had produced. But while praising Europe he still remained a Russian. In his old age he became a monk.

When Nashtchokin, by the machinations of his enemies, lost

the Tsar's favor and was obliged to leave his post, the boyar Matvéef, a familiar friend of Alexis, was appointed his successor. One day, when the Tsar was dining with Matvéef, he noticed a young girl who was serving at table, and who pleased him by her modest and intelligent air. This was a motherless girl, Natalia Naruishkin, to whom her uncle Matvéef had been a second father. "I have found a husband for her," said the Tsar to Matvéef some days after. This husband was the Tsar himself. The marriage drew closer still the ties that bound him to Matvéef. But the latter was, like Nashtchokin, full of European ideas. His house was furnished and ornamented according to Western notions. His chosen guests did not give themselves up to the orgies authorized by national custom; they behaved as courteously as if they were in a French salon. His Scotch wife, a Hamilton by birth, was the only lady of the Court who did not paint herself, and, instead of keeping herself secluded in her apartments, took part in the conversation of men. We may conceive the influence of the boyar and his wife on their adopted daughter; and it is not surprising that Natalia was the first Russian princess who drew back the curtains of her litter, and allowed her face to be seen by her subjects. Matvéef protected foreign artists, — "masters in perspective writings," as they were called. In the German Slobod of Moscow he established a sort of dramatic academy, where twenty-five merchants' sons learned to act comedies. The Tsar acquired a taste for theatrical entertainments. Likatchof, his envoy at the Court of Florence, wrote to his sovereign enthusiastic letters full of the marvels which he had seen at the opera, — of palaces which appeared and disappeared, of a sea that rose and fell and was filled with fish, of men who rode on monsters of the deep, or pursued each other into the clouds. Moscow undertook to rival Florence. In a wooden theatre, ballets and dramas, adapted from the Bible, were represented before the Tsar: "Joseph sold by his Brethren," "The Prodigal Son," and a drama of "Esther,"

which preceded that of Racine by seventeen years. At Moscow, as at Saint Cyr, the piece gave scope to many allusions. Here Esther was Natalia Naruishkin ; Mordecai was Matvéef, the protector of her youth ; and the vrémianshtchik Haman, who was hung at the petition of Queen Esther, was, no doubt, Khitrovo, the former favorite. These pieces were enlivened by somewhat rough pleasantries. In "Holofernes," when Judith has cut off the head of the Assyrian voïevod, the servant cries, "Here is a poor man who will be much astonished, on awaking, to find his head carried away !"

In sixteen hundred and forty-five, Alexis sent Gerasim Dokturof to notify the King of England, Charles the First, of his accession. The Russian envoy arrived in England in the midst of the Revolution. Being received at Gravesend with great honors and the firing of guns by the company of merchants that traded with Russia, he at once inquired where the king was. They replied, they did not know exactly where he was, because for three or four years there had been a great civil war, and instead of the king they had now the Parliament, composed of deputies from all the orders, who governed London as well as the kingdoms of England and Scotland.

But the Russian envoy recognized the king only, and persisted, according to the text of his instructions, in trying to deliver his letters of credit to the king himself. "Hast thou a letter from thy sovereign, and a mission to the Parliament?" they asked him. He replied, "I have neither a letter nor a mission to the Parliament. Let the Parliament send me immediately before the king, and give me an escort, carriages, and provisions. Let the Parliament present me to him, — it is to him that I will speak." His demand was naturally refused, and he wished instantly to leave for Holland ; but this was not allowed.

The following year, Charles the First was brought a prisoner into London. Dokturof insisted on being presented to him.

His request was ill-timed. "You cannot be brought before him," they said to him; "he no longer governs anything."

Dokturof was summoned before the House of Lords on the thirteenth of June. At his entrance all the "boyars" took off their hats, and Lord Manchester, the "chief boyar," rose. Then Dokturof, to the general consternation, made the following speech: "I am sent by my sovereign to your king, Charles, King of England. I have been sent as a courier to negotiate important affairs of state, which offer great advantages to both sovereigns and to all Christendom, and may help to maintain peace and concord. It is the thirteenth of June, and, since I arrived in London on the twenty-sixth of November last, I have never ceased to show you the letter of the Tsar, and to beg you to allow me to go before the king. You have kept me in London without permitting me either to have an interview with the king or to return to the Tsar; and yet in all the neighboring countries the route is free to all ambassadors, envoys, and couriers of the Tsar."

Manchester replied that they would explain to the Tsar by letter their reasons for acting thus. They gave him a chair, and the English "boyars" likewise seated themselves; and he began to look about the House, of which he gives a minute description in his report. He was then conducted to the House of Commons, and the dignitaries came to meet him, preceded by the royal sceptre. He renewed his declarations, and then retired ceremoniously. In June, sixteen hundred and forty-six, he left England, much discontented. Alexis could no more understand the English Revolution than his envoy. He maintained, like Catherine the Second, the cause of kings against the liberty of the subjects. In May, sixteen hundred and forty-seven, he received at Moscow Nawtingall, envoy of Charles the First, who denounced the captivity of the king, and said Charles would see with pleasure the English Company deprived of its privileges, and every one allowed to trade freely with Russia. Alexis listened to his request, and

granted him, as aid to the king, thirty thousand *tchetvertui*, or quarters, of corn, out of the three hundred thousand that were asked of him. But the English merchants settled in Russia accused Nawtingall of imposture, saying that the king's letter was apocryphal, and that the dog he had brought as a present to Alexis had never been bought by Charles the First. Nawtingall was expelled in disgrace, and avenged himself by accusing his compatriots of a project of attacking Arkhangel, and of pillaging the Russian merchants. His honors as ambassador were then given back to him, but he quitted Russia.

When Alexis heard of the execution of Charles the First, he published the ukas of June, sixteen hundred and forty-nine, which, as a punishment to the regicides, forbade the English merchants to live in the cities of the interior, and confined them to Arkhangel. The Tsar furnished help in money and corn to Charles, Prince of Wales, who in sixteen hundred and sixty became Charles the Second, and resumed relations with him when he ascended the throne of the Stuarts.

At the opening of the war with Poland it occurred to Alexis to notify the fact to the sovereigns of the West. In sixteen hundred and fifty-three he sent to Louis the Fourteenth a certain Matchékin, who was also presented to Anne of Austria. In sixteen hundred and sixty-eight, just after the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, Peter Potemkin was accredited first to the Court of Spain and then to the Court of France. The object of the embassy was to induce Louis the Fourteenth to enter into regular relations with Russia, and to send French vessels to Arkhangel. Potemkin had conferences with Colbert and the six merchant guilds of Paris. But the results of this embassy were hardly greater than those of the preceding one.

#### REIGN OF FEODOR ALEXIÉVITCH.

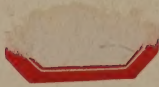
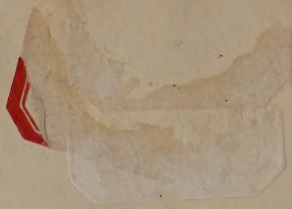
On the death of Alexis, in January, sixteen hundred and seventy-six, his eldest son Feodor ~~the~~ succeeded to the crown.

The Miloslavskis, Feodor's maternal relatives, profited by his accession to ruin their enemy Matvéef, who was accused of magic, deprived of his property and his title of boyar, and banished to Pustozersk. In this reign the Little Russian question received a solution. The hetman Samoïlovitch and Prince Romodanovski defeated Doroshenko, and obliged him to resign the office of ataman. They then had to fight the Turks and Tatars, who twice invaded the Ukraina and advanced to Tchigirin.

The country, according to a contemporary account, was covered with ruined towns and castles, and heaps of human bones that whitened in the sun. Finally, the Sultan concluded at Bakhtchi-Seraï a truce of twenty years, which ceded to Russia Zaporogia and the Ukraina. In sixteen hundred and eighty-one Feodor sent a new embassy to Louis the Fourteenth; his envoy being the son of the old Potemkin, who managed, according to the diplomatic historian Flassans, to give by his own wisdom and learning a favorable idea of the nation which he represented.

In order to defend the orthodox Church against the heresies of the West, and to connect it more closely with the Eastern Church, Feodor founded the Slavo-Græco-Latin Academy of Moscow. Greek and Latin, Christian philosophy and theology, were taught there. The brothers Likhoudi were brought from Greece to be professors there. This school, although ecclesiastical, was an advance on all other establishments of the kind in Russia, and produced some brilliant pupils. Among them we may mention the mathematician Magnitski under Peter the Great, and the historian Bantuish-Kamenski and the Metropolitan Plato under Catherine the Second. The school was afterwards transferred to the Monastery of Troïtsa.







UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS-URBANA



3 0112 056086991